The initial years (126-145) of al-Mansur's reign presented several significant challenges to nascent 'Abbasid hegemony, and the resulting confrontations constitute the central focus of this section of Tabari's Tarikh. After Abū Ja'far succeeded his brother Abū al-'Abbas as caliph, the second of the 'Abbasid dynasty, he moved against his recalcitrant uncle, 'Abdallah b. 'Ali, and against the potential threat that he perceived in the person of the commander in Khurāsān, Abū Muslim. Eliminating the latter and containing the former freed the caliph to address a series of other onslaughts and insurrections.

Starting with the year 144, however, Tabari turned to this volume's principal preoccupation, to which half of the book is devoted. Judging by the attention given to it, he clearly perceived the Hasanid rebellions of Muhammad b. 'Abdallāh (the Pure Soul) and of his brother Ibrāhīm to be the most substantial attack on 'Abbasid authority to arise in the first years of that dynasty. Tabari's description of the prolonged search for Muhammad and Ibrāhīm and of the caliphal vengeance visited upon their father and family provides an extended prelude to the vivid battle and death scenes in Medina and Bākhamrā. Yet, elaboration of these events does not eclipse mention of all other 'Abbasid activity. To bridge the account of Muhammad's defeat and that of Ibrāhīm's uprising, Tabari inserted a narrative interlude depicting the site selection and preliminary construction of al-Mansur's most celebrated achievement, the City of Peace, Baghdad.

SUNY Series in Near Eastern Studies
Said Amir Arjomand, Editor

The State University of New York Press
www.sunypress.edu
The History of al-Ṭabarī

Editorial Board
Ihsan Abbas, University of Jordan, Amman
C. E. Bosworth, The University of Manchester
Franz Rosenthal, Yale University
Everett K. Rowson, The University of Pennsylvania
Ehsan Yar-Shater, Columbia University (General Editor)

Estelle Whelan, Editorial Coordinator

Center for Iranian Studies
Columbia University

SUNY
SERIES IN NEAR EASTERN STUDIES
Said Amir Arjomand, Editor

The preparation of this volume was made possible in part by a grant from the National Endowment for the Humanities, an independent federal agency.
Bibliotheca Persica
Edited by Ehsan Yar-Shater

The History of al-Ṭabarī
(Taʾrīkh al-rusul waʾl-mulūk)

Volume xxviii

ʿAbbāsid Authority Affirmed
translated and annotated by

Jane Dammen McAuliffe

University of Toronto

State University of New York Press
`Abbāsid authority affirmed: the early years of al-Mansūr / translated and annotated by Jane Dammen McAuliffe.


Includes bibliographical references (p. ) and index.


For my children
Preface

The History of Prophets and Kings (Taʾrīkh al-rusul waʾl-mulūk) by Abū Jaʿfar Muḥammad b. Jaʿrīr al-Ṭabari (839–923), here rendered as the History of al-Ṭabarī, is by common consent the most important universal history produced in the world of Islam. It has been translated here in its entirety for the first time for the benefit of non-Arabists, with historical and philological notes for those interested in the particulars of the text.

Al-Ṭabarī’s monumental work explores the history of the ancient nations, with special emphasis on biblical peoples and prophets, the legendary and factual history of ancient Iran, and, in great detail, the rise of Islam, the life of the Prophet Muḥammad, and the history of the Islamic world down to the year 915. The first volume of this translation contains a biography of al-Ṭabarī and a discussion of the method, scope, and value of his work. It also provides information on some of the technical considerations that have guided the work of the translators.

The History has been divided here into 39 volumes, each of which covers about two hundred pages of the original Arabic text in the Leiden edition. An attempt has been made to draw the dividing lines between the individual volumes in such a way that each is to some degree independent and can be read as such. The page numbers of the Leiden edition appear in the margins of the translated volumes.

Al-Tabari very often quotes his sources verbatim and traces the chain of transmission (iṣnād) to an original source. The chains of
transmitters are, for the sake of brevity, rendered by only a dash (—) between the individual links in the chain. Thus, "According to Ibn Ḥumayd—Salamah—Ibn Ishaq" means that al-Ṭabari received the report from Ibn Ḥumayd, who said that he was told by Salamah, who said that he was told by Ibn Ishaq, and so on. The numerous subtle and important differences in the original Arabic wording have been disregarded.

The table of contents at the beginning of each volume gives a brief survey of the topics dealt with in that particular volume. It also includes the headings and subheadings as they appear in al-Ṭabari's text, as well as those occasionally introduced by the translator.

Well-known place names, such as, for instance, Mecca, Baghdad, Jerusalem, Damascus, and the Yemen, are given in their English spellings. Less common place names, which are the vast majority, are transliterated. Biblical figures appear in the accepted English spelling. Iranian names are usually transcribed according to their Arabic forms, and the presumed Iranian forms are often discussed in the footnotes.

Technical terms have been translated wherever possible, but some, such as dirham and imām, have been retained in Arabic forms. Others that cannot be translated with sufficient precision have been retained and italicized, as well as footnoted.

The annotation aims chiefly at clarifying difficult passages, identifying individuals and place names, and discussing textual difficulties. Much leeway has been left to the translators to include in the footnotes whatever they consider necessary and helpful.

The bibliographies list all the sources mentioned in the annotation.

The index in each volume contains all the names of persons and places referred to in the text, as well as those mentioned in the notes as far as they refer to the medieval period. It does not include the names of modern scholars. A general index, it is hoped, will appear after all the volumes have been published.

For further details concerning the series and acknowledgments, see Preface to Volume I.

Ehsan Yar-Shater
Contents

Preface / vii
Abbreviations / xi
Translator’s Foreword / xiii

The Caliphate of Abū Ja‘far al-Manṣūr

The Events of the Year 136 (cont’d) (753–754) / 1
The Events of the Year 137 (754–755) / 7
An Account of Abū Muslim’s Murder and the Reason for It / 18
The Episode of Sunbādh / 44

The Events of the Year 138 (755–756) / 48
The Reason Jahwar Turned against al-Manṣūr / 49
How al-Mulabbid Came to Be Killed / 50

The Events of the Year 139 (756–757) / 54
The Arrest of ‘Abdallāh b. ‘Alī / 57

The Events of the Year 140 (757–758) / 59
The Death of the Governor of Khurāsān and What Brought It About / 59
The Events of the Year 141 (758–759) / 62
The Rāwandīyyah Affair and How Abū Jaʿfar al-Manṣūr Dealt with Them / 62

The Events of the Year 142 (759–760) / 77
Why ‘Uyaynah b. Müsā b. Kaʿb Renounced His Allegiance / 77
The Affair of the Iṣbahbadh and the Muslims / 78

The Events of the Year 143 (760–761) / 82
The Raid on al-Daylam / 82

The Events of the Year 144 (761–762) / 84
The Remaining Account of Events for 144 / 138

The Events of the Year 145 (762–763) / 142
The Rebellion of Muḥammad b. ‘Abdallāh and His Murder / 142
The Uprising of the Blacks in Medina in This Year and What Incited It / 231
The Reason Abū Jaʿfar Built Baghdad / 237
The Reason for Ibrāhīm b. ‘Abdallāh’s Revolt and Murder and How It Came About / 252

Bibliography of Cited Works / 293

Index / 305
Abbreviations

Addenda et Emendanda: List of textual additions and corrections included in the Leiden introductory volume of al-Tabari’s Ta’rikh
AO: Acta Orientalia
BSOAS: Bulletin of the School of Oriental and African Studies
EHR: English Historical Review
Fragmenta historicorum: Kitāb al-‘uyūn wa-al-ḥadā’iql fi akhbār al-ḥaqā’iq
Glossarium: Glossary included in the Leiden introductory volume of al-Tabari’s Ta’rikh
IC: Islamic Culture
IJMES: International Journal of Middle East Studies
IQ: Islamic Quarterly
IS: Islamic Studies
Abbreviations

JA: Journal asiatique
JAOS: Journal of the American Oriental Society
JESHO: Journal of the Economic and Social History of the Orient
JRAS: Journal of the Royal Asiatic Society
JSAI: Jerusalem Studies in Arabic and Islam
MW: The Muslim World
REI: Revue des études islamiques
RH: Revue historique
SI: Studia Islamica
ZDMG: Zeitschrift der Deutschen Morgenländischen Gesellschaft
The caliphate of Abū Ja'far al-Manṣūr began and ended far from the city whose foundation was his most celebrated achievement. It was not in Baghdad that he commenced his caliphate but in Mecca. Less than five years after the 'Abbāsids had assumed power, that power passed from one brother to another. The first caliph of the dynasty, 'Abū al-'Abbās al-Saffāh, died in 136/754 during the month of the pilgrimage, and Ṭabarī introduces this volume of his Ta'rikh with an announcement of the oath of allegiance that was then rendered in absentia to the dead caliph's brother. At the time of al-Saffāh's death the new caliph was leading the Pilgrimage exercises in the Ḥijāz, where he received news of the transfer of power from his nephew, Ṣāḥib b. Mūsā. Twenty-one years later, in 158/775, al-Manṣūr was once again on the road to Mecca during this same month of the Pilgrimage, which had also been the month of his birth, when he became unexpectedly ill and died.

The initial years of al-Manṣūr's reign presented several significant challenges to nascent 'Abbāsīd hegemony. These confrontations constitute the central focus of Ṭabarī's attention in this volume. Before he concludes his presentation of the transition year 136/754, Ṭabarī relates an exchange that took place between the new caliph and Abū Muslim, a powerful Khurāsānī leader who had accompanied him on the Pilgrimage. In this prescient conversation converge the three principal preoccupations that Abū Ja'far was forced to address in the first decade of his caliph-
ate: ‘Abdallāh b. ‘Alī, Abū Muslim himself, and the ‘Alid rebels Muḥammad and Ibrāhīm. Speaking to Abū Muslim, the caliph first expresses uneasiness about his uncle, ‘Abdallāh b. ‘Alī, and then alludes to his concern about those groups whose loyalties have coalesced around the figure of ‘Alī b. Abī Ṭalīb, the prophet Muḥammad’s cousin and son-in-law, and his descendants.

Tabari’s record of the year 137 describes the caliph’s swift response to this uncle’s refusal to acknowledge his sovereignty. He successfully sends Abū Muslim against ‘Abdallāh b. ‘Alī but then quickly comes to fear the increasing independence and power of the Khurasānī warrior himself. The accounts of Abū Muslim’s murder in the very presence of al-Manṣūr provide a powerful impression of the caliph’s relentless resolution. That impression receives strong reinforcement in those scenes from the year 145 when the severed heads of the ‘Alid pretenders, Muḥammad b. ‘Abdallāh and Ibrāhīm b. ‘Abdallāh, are brought before him.

The major events related in this volume commence, then, with al-Manṣūr’s moves in 137 against his recalcitrant uncle and against the potential threat that he perceived in the person of Abū Muslim. They conclude with the defeat and death of Ibrāhīm b. ‘Abdallāh in 145. The years immediately following 137 receive relatively brief treatment from Tabari. He mentions the destruction and reconstruction of Malāṭyah, an important Byzantine border town, as well as a Kharijī rebellion and various uprisings consequent upon the death of Abū Muslim. In but a single sentence under the year 139 Tabari notes that the Umayyad prince ‘Abd al-Raḥmān b. Mu‘āwiyah went to Spain, where his descendants continue to rule, a sentence that represents virtually his only reference to events beyond the central Islamic lands.

For the year 141 Tabari breaks this pattern of somewhat perfunctory reportage. Several episodes draw his attention, chief among them being the uprising of the Rāwandiyyah in al-Hāshimiyyah, the only engagement, in a volume that describes several decisive battles, in which the caliph actively participated. Tabari presents al-Manṣūr as a bold and courageous commander, willing to risk his life to rally his forces and ready to lavish praise and recompense on the rehabilitated Umayyad soldier Ma‘n b. Zā‘idah. Having experienced danger, however, al-Manṣūr moved promptly to forestall the recurrence of such strategic vulnerab-
Translator's Foreword

ity. The encounter with the Rāwandiyyah is later reckoned an important reason for the building of Baghdad and the caliph subsequently judged his self-exposure in that battle to be one of the three major mistakes from the likely consequences of which he had been divinely protected.

Starting with the year 144 Ṭabari concentrates on this volume's central preoccupation. Half the pages in this text develop a description of what he clearly perceived to be the most substantial challenge to 'Abbāsid authority faced in the first years of that dynasty, the Ḥasanid rebellions of Muḥammad b. 'Abdallāh and his brother Ibrāhīm. Virtually all the action occurs within a limited geographical area, closely contained along the corridor running between the two holy sites in the Ḥijāz and the metropolitan areas of southern Iraq, especially al-Baṣrah and al-Kūfah. The time-line charted in this chapter on the year 144 telescopes the actual sequence of events. Ṭabari, in fact, first mentions the Ḥasanid problem in his record of the year 139, with the elliptical remark that summer campaigns against the Byzantines were suspended from that time until 146 "because Abū Ja'far was occupied with matters involving the two sons of 'Abdallāh b. al-Ḥasan." Although that single remark receives no elaboration until the full issue is introduced in the section on year 144, the events recorded therein cover a span of some years.

During those years, then, the caliph was confronted with a situation of unresolved resistance to his hegemony. His initial inclination to rely on the loyalty and enthusiasm of his governor in Medina proved mistaken. Throughout this period, several men held that post. When it was clearly established that the first, Ziyād b. 'Ubaydallāh, had failed to press the search for Muḥammad and Ibrāhīm because his sympathies lay more with them than with the caliph, the latter had him arrested and appointed Muḥammad b. Khālid in his stead. As this one also proved reluctant to move with alacrity, Abū Ja'far replaced him with Riyāḥ b. 'Uthmān, whose complete dependence on the patronage of al-Manṣūr assured his antipathy to the Ḥasanids.

Once installed in office, Riyāḥ moved rapidly to secure the caliphal kudos that capture of Muḥammad would ensure. Riyāḥ's forces searched relentlessly and came near to discovering Muḥammad on several occasions. One poignant episode recounts
the death of Muḥammad’s infant son, who plunged to his death at the moment his father’s mountain hideout was abruptly invaded. By that time Muḥammad’s father, ‘Abdallāh b. al-Ḥasan, had already been arrested for refusing to cooperate with the caliph in providing information on his sons’ whereabouts. Other arrests rapidly followed, including that of Muḥammad’s son ʿAlī, who was seized in Egypt. Eventually Abū Jaʿfar decided to have the imprisoned supporters, both Ḥasanids and others, taken out of Medina and commanded Riyāḥ to transport them to Iraq, specifically to al-Rabadhah, where the caliph was then in residence.

Ṭabari vividly portrays the humiliations endured by the shackled prisoners during this transportation and includes dramatic accounts of the caliphal vengeance exacted upon those who were brought before the sovereign presence. The scenes involving Muḥammad b. ʿAbdallāh b. ʿAmr, ʿAbdallāh b. al-Ḥasan’s step-brother and great-grandson of the third caliph, ʿUthmān b. ʿAffān, depict his being severely beaten and stripped naked before a final beheading. Mūsā b. ʿAbdallāh, a brother to Muḥammad and Ibrāhīm, was scourged to insensibility, while a cousin Muḥammad b. Ibrāhīm, was entombed alive in a building support. In a cunning effort to consolidate Khurāsānī allegiance, al-Manṣūr then sent the head of Muḥammad b. ʿAbdallāh b. ʿAmr to that province with a proclamation intended to convince people that it was the head of the Ḥasanid pretender, Muḥammad b. ʿAbdallāh.

Meanwhile, that insurgent himself was alive and active in Medina, gathering the support necessary to stage an open rebellion on 27 Jumādā II 145. After the initial actions of storming the city and capturing its governor, Riyāḥ b. ʿUthmān, Muḥammad b. ʿAbdallāh sent representatives to the major administrative centers in the peninsula. His governor for Mecca, al-Ḥasan b. Muʿāwiyyah, successfully subdued the superior forces of Abū Jaʿfar’s incumbent. In the meantime, a succession of messengers informed al-Manṣūr of Muhammad’s uprising, and the caliph prepared his retaliation. When an exchange of correspondence between the two proved futile, Abū Jaʿfar sought knowledgeable advice, including that of his imprisoned uncle, ʿAbdallāh b. ʿAlī, and recruited his nephew ʿĪsā b. Mūsā to lead the countering forces.

Both internal and external pressures undermined the initial popular support that Muḥammad enjoyed. While ʿĪsā b. Mūsā
persuaded leading citizens of Medina to withdraw their allegiance, Muhammad himself announced clemency for those whose fear of 'Isa's advancing forces drove them from the city. As a military staging ground, Medina was a strategic disaster, a fact made clear to both al-Mansur and Muhammad in the respective advice offered to them. Despite the heroic efforts of Muhammad's remaining supporters, therefore, the city proved ultimately indefensible, and the black banner of the 'Abbasid forces was soon flying from the minaret of the Prophet's mosque. Muhammad himself fell at the hands of the redoubtable Humayd b. Qahtabah, and 'Isa sent his head to the caliph.

In the aftermath of defeat, civil chaos gripped Medina as a consequence of the new governor's refusal or inability to discipline the occupying forces. Cheated merchants lashed out, and black slaves rose in revolt, precipitating widespread public disorder. The particular incidents that Tabari relates doubtless reflect the general sense of economic and political uncertainty in post-rebellion Medina.

After a narrative interlude describing the site selection and preliminary construction of Baghdad, Tabari moves on to the second 'Alid uprising, that mounted by Muhammad's brother, Ibrāhīm b. Abdallāh. Once more, against a telescoped account of the protagonist's furtive contacts and frequent relocation, Tabari builds a scene of impending eruption. Guided by the reports of his intelligence service, al-Mansur acted to forestall Ibrāhīm's suspected strategic maneuvers. Yet when the latter publicly proclaimed his rebellion in al-Baṣrah on the first day of Ramaḍān 145, less than nine weeks after his brother's uprising, the caliph's readiness to respond was hampered by insufficient troop strength. Ibrāhīm's rapid deployment of representatives and forces to al-Ahwāz, Fārs, and Wāsiṭ secured his initial advantage, while Abū Ja'far was forced to scour the provinces for military reinforcements.

The tide turned, however, when word of Muhammad's defeat in the Ḥijāz allowed the caliph to recall 'Isā b. Mūsā. After a rapid return, 'Isā massed his forces for the final battle at Bākhamrā. Re-counting the first stages of this engagement, which favored Ibrāhīm's forces, Tabari depicts 'Isā's intrepid resistance in the face of his fleeing troops. After Ibrāhīm suffered strategic misfortunes, however, the 'Abbasid fortune began to ascend once again. An arrow struck the insurgent's throat, and Humayd b. Qahtabah
repeated his lethal attack against an 'Alid pretender, as his troops converged on the stricken Ibrāhīm. Once again a severed head was set before Abū Ja'far, and as this volume draws to a close the caliph weeps at the sight of it, lamenting the consequences of his kinsman's abortive claim.

From the various materials and the multiple accounts with which Ṭabarī composed this section of his history, some elements of particular note stand forth. Among the more interesting are the character delineations offered for Abū Ja'far and Muḥammad b. 'Abdallāh. The caliph emerges as a man of relentless intent, willing to pursue an objective by every available means and over a prolonged period of time. His resoluteness verges on atrocity when, for example, he orders the severed head of Muḥammad paraded around al-Kūfah or when he commands a young boy to view his father's corpse as he awaits his own execution. Ṭabarī reports instances when al-Manṣūr gave assurances of safe-conduct only to renege on them later. The caliph's attempt to placate or intimidate the Khurāsānīs through subterfuge, despite the later disclaimer that this was his only lie, compounds the impression of mendacity. More positively, Abū Ja'far is presented as a man willing to seek advice and to heed or reject it as he sees fit. The sources show a man capable of self-critical reflection and one who can acknowledge errors of judgment. A few telling vignettes portray him in prolonged periods of silence and withdrawal, brooding over the dangers he perceives and the decisions he must make. According to some accounts, he could retreat to such an extent that he would refuse to change his garments or to have sexual contact with his wives. In less troubling circumstances, he could offer praise to others and even confess the nickname "Father of Farthings" (Abū Dawānīq), which his reputation for miserliness had inspired.

More than that of his brother Ibrāhīm, the person of Muḥammad b. 'Abdallāh comes through these pages as a vivid, multifaceted reality. Physically he was a man of considerable bulk, one whose weight rattled the minbar as he mounted its steps. His love of certain foods is noted, and an account treating the day on which Muḥammad died in battle actually mentions his being fed honey dipped in water. His corpulence also provoked
adverse comment, however, because it was perceived as incompatible with the physique of a true warrior. Morally, Muhammad is represented as a pious Muslim, a man of rectitude who rigorously kept the fast and the rhythms of required and supererogatory prayer and who modeled himself upon his namesake in the conduct of war. Repeatedly, the accounts portray a person reluctant to go to war and unwilling to use the guerrilla tactics that might ensure a speedy victory. His refusal to retreat when the battle turned against him demonstrates his military courage, but his willingness to release his supporters shows that he does not regard victory at any price as an acceptable choice. A final vignette should be noted, not for its inherent historical value, but simply because it so deftly demonstrates what a small detail can reveal about the human person. One day, as Muḥammad was preaching in the mosque of Medina, he kept trying to clear his throat of phlegm. He apparently suffered from certain speech problems, which such a situation could only have exacerbated. In any event, on this occasion, after several unsuccessful attempts, he finally freed his throat, threw back his head, and expectorated on the mosque ceiling.

In addition to the skillful character delineation that Ṭabarī presents within these pages, mention must be made of the critical role that exchange of correspondence occupies within the primary episodes of this section. The most important of these, the letters that al-Maḥṣūr wrote to Aba Muslim and to Muhammad b. ʿAbdallāh represent significant statements of caliphal authority and hegemony. In particular, the lengthy exchange between the caliph and Muḥammad b. ʿAbdallāh charts the principal lines of argumentation for the competing ʿAbbāsid and ʿAlid claims. In their initial statements the first two of these letters structurally parallel each other, commencing with a Qurʾānic prologue and extending corresponding grants of immunity. Muḥammad b. ʿAbdallāh's response to Abū Jaʿfar then opens the debate about purity of lineage, a challenge to which the caliph responds with both excoriation and counterclaim.

Finally, it is interesting to mark the manifold roles that women assume within these 231 pages of Ṭabarī's text. The lineage debate just noted focused repeatedly on the relative superiority of female forebears. Foreshadowing the developed argument made
Translation's Foreword

by Muḥammad b. ʿAbdallāh stands the sharp exchange between al-Manṣūr and ʿAbdallāh b. al-Ḥasan in which the latter flaunts his genetic superiority. In addition to these frequently invoked female ancestors, however, there are intriguing glimpses of women in many scenes. Some are the royal wives and consorts who were brought to the caliph's household by capture or contract, such as the women taken in the conquest of Ṭabaristān and the niece of Abū Jaʿfar, Rayṭah bt. Abī al-ʿAbbās. Women close to Muḥammad b. ʿAbdallāh figure in a number of episodes, as when his mother, Hind, disguises herself in order to visit her imprisoned husband. With the failure of Muḥammad's rebellion, it is his sister Zaynab and his daughter Fāṭimah who come forward to claim his body for burial.

ʿAbbāsid victory is signaled by a woman, as Asmāʾ bt. al-Ḥasan b. ʿAbdallāh orders the black banner flown from the minaret of Medina. Yet more active involvement is credited to Ḥammādah bt. Muʿāwiyyah, who is said to have killed her uncle Ismāʿīl b. ʿAbdallāh b. Jaʿfar because his refusal to support Muḥammad's rebellion was jeopardizing the lives of her brothers in their own support for the claimant. The death of Abū al-Qalammas, a staunch defender of Muḥammad, is avenged by the clever trickery of his concubine. Beyond the confines of Muḥammad's action in Medina, there is additional mention of female battle involvement. In a particularly intriguing reference for the year 139, Ṭabārī notes that, when Šāliḥ b. ʿAlī fought in that year's summer campaign against the Byzantines, he was accompanied by his sisters, Umm ʿĪsā and Lubābah, "for they had vowed that if the Umayyad reign came to an end they would fight 'in the path of God.'"

Female companionship is also negatively assessed, at least by implication. During the period of hostilities surrounding ʿAbdallāh b. ʿAlī, one soldier lost his life when he took the risk of slipping into town to visit a slave girl. As noted above, caliphal celibacy during the engagement with Muḥammad is contrasted with the latter's continuing access to accompanying concubines. A sense of negativity or ambivalence also surrounds the pejorative reference to al-Ḥasan b. al-Ḥasan as a woman in ʿiddah and to the mysterious appearance of jinn in female form. But disguised appearances are not limited to females, whether human or jinn. In one of the more vivid accounts that Ṭabārī presents of the
intensive search mounted for Muḥammad b. ʿAbdallāh by Riyāḥ b. ʿUthmān there occurs a surprising episode. When Riyāḥ happened upon him unexpectedly, Muḥammad quickly threw his cloak over his face and feigned a feminine posture. Despite his size, he was sufficiently convincing as a female impersonator to prompt Riyāḥ's polite withdrawal. In that moment, at least, Muḥammad was saved by a woman.

This volume of Ṭabarī’s Tāʾrīkh translates pages 88–319 of the Tertia series of the Leiden edition. That edition, which Brill issued between 1879 and 1898 in three parallel series of fascicles, was prepared under the general direction of M. J. de Goeje. The printed text for the entire first section of the Tertia series [3/1:1–459] was established by M. Th. Houtsma, who assumed the task from Max Grünert. Houtsma worked from a manuscript in Berlin (ms. orient. fol. 69, siglum B), whose orthographic peculiarities were described in the Leiden introduction by M. I. Guidi, and from one in Algiers (no. 594), of which de Goeje offered a description. Sections of the Leiden pp. 102–9 and 186–89 are missing in this latter manuscript, omissions that Houtsma signaled in the critical apparatus of his text. The more recent Cairo edition, prepared by Muḥammad Abū al-Fadl Ibrāhīm, with some additions to the Leiden manuscript base, incorporates the Leiden pagination, as well as extensive use of punctuation, paragraph division, and additional subheadings.

The sources upon which Ṭabarī relied in preparing this segment of ʿAbbāsid history vary from its earlier to its later sections. From the year 136 until 143 he most frequently cites the noted historian ʿAlī b. Muḥammad al-Madāʾini [d. 235/850] but also includes such various informants as the author of Kitāb al-maghāzī, Muḥammad b. ʿUmar al-Wāqīdī [d. 207/823], and al-Manṣūr’s secretary/vizier Abū Ayyūb al-Mūriyānī [d. 154/770–71]. For a number of these years, however, no specific authorities are mentioned for events that Ṭabarī notes in brief.

As indicated above, Ṭabarī has focused primary attention in his coverage of the early years of al-Manṣūr’s caliphate on the Ḥasanid rebellions mounted by the two sons of ʿAbdallāh b. al-Ḥasan, Muhammad and Ibrāhīm, in Medina and al-Baṣrah respectively. Abū Zayd ʿUmar b. Shabbah al-Numayrī [d. 264/877], Ṭabarī’s senior by some fifty years, serves as his principal source
for this material. Not surprisingly, 'Umar b. Shabbah is credited with a book entitled *Kitāb akhbār Muḥammad wa-Ibrāhīm ibnay 'Abdallāh b. al-Ḥasan b. al-Ḥasan al-Ḥāshimi al-Qurashi*, which is also quoted extensively in *Maqātīl al-tālibiyyīn* by Abū al-Faraj al-İṣfahānī, (d. 356/967). A source-critical analysis of 'Umar b. Shabbah's work on the Ḥasanid rebellion was published about twenty years ago by Tilman Nagel.¹

Ṭabarī supplemented Abū Zayd's work, however, with significant use of eyewitness accounts, some of them secured from direct lineal descendants of those most closely involved with the insurgency. Because Ṭabarī was born about seventy-five years after these events, about the interval of a child born today from the time of World War I, it is not surprising that he had access to such material and the multiple perspectives that it provided.

In this translation I have attempted to follow the Arabic text with fidelity and precision but also to render that text in a manner pleasing and accessible to the English-speaking reader. Many pronominal referents have therefore been expressed more fully, and translations of the ubiquitous *qāla* (he said) have been varied in an effort to capture the tenor of the statement or response. Where necessary, interpolated words or phrases, enclosed in square brackets, have been added to the translation to provide clarification of the intended meaning. I have also tried to identify all personal and place names through reference to the standard bio/bibliographical and geographical sources. Inevitably some names that are cited only once in the *Ta'rikh* eluded identification. Titles of primary and secondary sources cited more than once have been abbreviated in the footnotes but given fully in the bibliography. Technical terms have been offered in translation with an accompanying annotation of the Arabic original, and allusions to earlier events in Islamic and pre-Islamic history have been specified where significant.

My work on this text was supported by an award from the University Research Committee of Emory University and by grants

---

from the Faculty of Arts and Science, University of Toronto, and from the National Endowment for the Humanities. To these organizations I express grateful appreciation. I would also like to thank Professor C. E. Bosworth, a member of the Editorial Board of the Tabari Translation Project, for his review of the completed manuscript and Dr. Estelle Whelan, Editorial Coordinator of the Project, for her assistance and guidance.

Jane Dammen McAuliffe
The Caliphate of Abū Ja'far al-Manṣūr (whose personal names were ʿAbdallāh b. Muḥammad)
In this year the oath of allegiance was given to Abū Ja‘far al-Manṣūr on the day that his brother Abū al-‘Abbās died. Abū
Ja'far being at the time in Mecca, ʻĪsā b. Mūsā was the one who received the oath of allegiance in Iraq on behalf of Abū Ja'far after the death of Abū al-ʻAbbās. ʻĪsā then wrote to inform him of the fact that his brother Abu al-ʻAbbās had died and that the oath of allegiance had been rendered to him [as caliph].

According to ʻAli b. Muhammad—al-Haytham—ʻAbdallāh b. ʻAyyāsh: When Abū al-ʻAbbās was near death, he ordered the people to render the oath of allegiance to Abū Ja'far ʻAbdallāh b. Muhammad. Accordingly, the people gave the oath of allegiance to him in al-Anbār on the day that Abū al-ʻAbbās died. ʻĪsā b. Mūsā assumed executive authority and sent Muḥammad b. al-Ḥuṣayn al-ʻAbdi to Abū Ja'far (who was then in Mecca) to report to him on the death of Abū al-ʻAbbās and on the oath of allegiance. Muhammad b. al-Ḥuṣayn met Abū Ja'far at a place on the road called Zakiyyah. When the letter was delivered to him, Abū Ja'far called the people together, and they gave their oath of allegiance together, and they gave their oath of alle-

5. ʻĪsā b. Mūsā b. Muḥammad b. ʻAli, the nephew and heir-designate of al-Saffāh, served as governor of al-Kūfah under both al-Saffāh and al-Manṣūr. According to Kennedy, Early Abbasid Caliphate, 76, his was the "second longest tenure of any governor during the early Abbasid period," EI², s.v. [D. Sourdell]; Zambaur, Manuel, 43.

6. Abū al-Hasan ʻAli b. Muhammad al-Madā’inī (d. 225/840) was a prominent early historian who was born in al-Baṣrāh and died in Baghdad, and the titles, of whose books may, for the most part, be culled only from the quotes and citations of later authors. EI², s.v. [U. Sezgin]; GAS, I, 314–15; GAL, I, 140–41; Kahhālah, Mu‘jam, VII, 211; Rotter, "Zur Uberlieferung"; Dūri, Historical Writing, 48–50 and passim; Petersen, ʻAli and Mu‘āwiya, 92–99 and passim.

7. Al-Haytham b. ʻAdī b. ʻAlī (d. 206/821) was a frequently quoted historian, genealogist (although his reliability as both did not go unquestioned), and attenant at the early ʻAbbāsid courts, including that of Abū Ja’far al-Manṣūr. EI², s.v. [C. Pellat]; GAS, I, 272; GAL, I, 140; Kahhālah, Mu‘jam, XIII, 156; Dūri, Historical Writing, 53–54 and passim; Goldziher, Muslim Studies, I, 177–80.

8. Abū al-Jarrāḥ ʻAbdallāh b. ʻAyyāsh al-Mantūf al-Hamdānī was an akhbārī, genealogist, transmitter of poetry, and frequenter of al-Manṣūr’s court. The genesis of his laqab, “the one whose beard was plucked,” is recounted by Saʿadi, Wāfi, XVII, 393–94. Although Sa’adi gives a death date of 158, the year in which al-Manṣūr died, Caetani, Cronographia generale, 97, places him in the necrology of 136. Al-Khaṭīb al-Baghdādi, Ta’rīkh Baghdād, X, 14–16.

9. Al-Anbār, “the Storehouses,” was a city on the Euphrates, some fifty-five kilometers west of Baghdad, that served as the ʻAbbāsid capital under Abū al-ʻAbbās and remained so for Abū Ja’far until the development of Baghdad. EI², s.v. [M. Streck and A. A. Duri]; Yaqūt, Buldān, I, 257–58; Cornu, Répertoires, 45; Le Strange, Lands, 31–32, 65–66.

10. Muḥammad b. al-Ḥuṣayn al-ʻAbdī is recorded as the governor of Ahwāz (Khūzistān) in 145. ʻAbdī, III, 301.
The Events of the Year 136 (cont’d)

giance to him. Abu Muslim also rendered the oath of allegiance to him. Abu Ja’far asked, “Where are we?” When he was told that the place was called “Zakiyyah,” he [punned upon the place name and] said, “Things will go well for us, God willing!” Some sources have said that after finishing the Pilgrimage Abu Ja’far received his oath of allegiance at a stage on the Mecca highway called Šufayyah. He thought the name auspicious, and [playing upon the word] he exclaimed, “It [the caliphate] has become ours alone, God willing!”

To return to the account of ‘Ali b. Muḥammad—al-Walid—his father: When the news of Abu al-‘Abbās’ death reached Abu Ja’far, he wrote to Abu Muslim, who was then encamped at a watering place, whereas Abu Ja’far had already gone on ahead of him. Abu Muslim then moved forward until he reached Abu Ja’far.

Additionally, other sources have said that Abu Muslim was the one who had advanced beyond Abu Ja’far and had, therefore, discovered the news of the caliph’s death before him, so it was he who wrote to Abu Ja’far:

In the name of God, the Merciful, the Compassionate. May God keep you in good estate and give you enjoyment. I have heard something that has upset me deeply and has effected me as nothing before. Muḥammad b. al-Huṣayn met me as he was carrying a letter to you from Īsā b. Mūsā about the death of Abu al-‘Abbās, the Commander of the Faithful, may God have mercy upon him. We ask God to magnify greatly your future recompense,

11. ‘Abd al-Rahmān b. Muslim was a revolutionary leader of the ‘Abbāsid movement in Khūrasān and governor of that province. His name is later associated with both religious heterodoxies and literary romances. El¹, s.v. (W. Barthold); El², s.v. (S. Moscati); Moscati, “Abū Muslim”; Mélikoff, Abū Muslim; Daniel, Khurasan, 100–24; Lassner, “Origins.”
12. Amr yazkā lānā.
13. Yaqūt (via al-‘Aṣma’i) identifies this as a watering place for the Banū Asad, lying near a hill and a stony tract. Buldān, III, 415.
14. Šafat lānā.
15. As Moscati notes, the radicals of both place-names permit the expression of a propitious signification. “Abū Muslim. III,” 92, n3.
Abū Muslim dispatched the letter to Abū Jaʿfar but waited out that day, and only on the next did he send his oath of allegiance to him, intending thus to intimidate Abū Jaʿfar.

To return to the account of 'Ali b. Muḥammad: After Abū Muslim had sat down with him, Abū Jaʿfar tossed the letter announcing Abū al-ʿAbbās's death to him. He read it and wept, then piously invoked the formula "To God we belong and to Him is our return." Abū Muslim looked at Abū Jaʿfar, who appeared to be very uneasy, and said to him, "Why this alarm when the caliphate is already yours?" Abū Jaʿfar replied, "I fear the malice of Abdallah b. Ali and those loyal to (shiʿah) 'Ali." Abū Muslim responded, "Do not be afraid of him; God willing, I will deal with the problem of Abdallah b. Ali for you. The rank and file of his army and associates are Khurāsānī troops, and they will surely not disobey me!" At this Abū Jaʿfar felt his anxiety relieved. Abū Muslim rendered him the oath of allegiance, as did all the other people present, and the two of them continued on until they reach al-Kūfah.  

17. Qurʾān, 2:156. According to Lane, Lexicon, III, 1040, the verb istarijaʿa signifies the repetition of this Qurʾānic formula in moments of affliction. Lings, Sufi Saint, 41, attests to this "much loved and often repeated verse which the Quran recommends especially for recitation in time of adversity."

18. Abdallah b. Ali, the uncle of al-Saffah and al-Manṣūr, was commander of the 'Abbāsid forces in the critical battle against the last Umayyad caliph, Marwān II. EI², s.v. [K. V. Zetterstéen and S. Moscati]. Historical sources record his large-scale exterminations, and Şafā, Wāfi, XVII, 321, dubs him "one of the most cunning men." Tuqan, "'Abdallāh ibn 'Ali."

19. The shiʿah of 'Ali [b. Abī Talib] represented a rival claim to valid dynastic succession from the Prophet Muhammad. While in this period the connotation of the term shiʾah was still somewhat loose, the competing claims associated with the 'Abbāsid and the Hasanids are represented in the exchange of letters between Abū Jaʿfar and the 'Alid pretender, Muhammad b. Abdallah in the year 145.

20. Khurāsān was a large easterly region, comprising parts of what are now Iran, Afghanistan, and Soviet Central Asia, that was the center of 'Abbāsid revolutionary activity. EI², s.v. [C. E. Bosworth].

21. Al-Kūfah, a military establishment on the Euphrates, became one of the principal political and cultural centers of the early Islamic world. EI², s.v. [H. Djait].
Abū Jaʿfar sent Ziyād b. ʿUbaydallāh back to Mecca, Ziyād having previously been governor both of it and of Medina under Abū al-ʿAbbās. Some sources recount that before he died Abū al-ʿAbbās had removed Ziyād b. ʿUbaydallāh al-Hārithi as governor of Mecca and appointed al-ʿAbbās b. ʿAbdallāh b. Maʿbad b. al-ʿAbbās in his stead.

In this year ʿAbdallāh b. ʿAlī came to Abū al-ʿAbbās at al-Anbār, where the caliph entrusted him with responsibility for the summer campaign at the head of forces drawn from Khurasan, Syria, the Jazīrah, and al-Mawṣil. ʿAbdallāh b. ʿAlī marched forth and got as far as Dulūk, but he had not advanced into enemy territory at the time when news of Abū al-ʿAbbās’s death came to him.

In this year ʿIsā b. Mūsā and Abū al-Jahm sent Abū Ghassān Yazīd b. Ziyād to ʿAbdallāh b. ʿAlī to receive his oath of alle-

22. Ziyād b. ʿUbaydallāh b. ʿAbd al-Madān al-Hārithi, maternal uncle of the first ʿAbbāsid caliph, was appointed governor of Mecca and Medina in 133, keeping this position until 141, except for the year 136 when the post was assigned to al-ʿAbbās b. ʿAbdallāh. Zambaur, Manuel, 20, 24. Ziyād’s rise as a young army recruit under the tutelage of the Basran governor and general, Khalīl al-Qasrī, is sketched in Crone, Slaves, 55.


24. The summer raids (ṣawāʾif, sing. ṣāʾiḥah) against the Byzantine border positions were regular features of Umayyad and ʿAbbāsid military policy.

25. The Jazīrah was the northern province between the Tigris and Euphrates rivers. E1, s.v. al-Djazirah [M. Canard]; Yāqūt, Buldān, II, 134–36.

26. Al-Mawṣil was a principal city in the Jazīrah; it lay across the Tigris from the site of ancient Nineveh. E1, s.v. [E. Honigmann and C. E. Bosworth]; Yāqūt, Buldān, V, 223–25.

27. Dulūk was a frontier fortress town on the Anatolian-Syrian border almost due north of Aleppo [Halab]. E1, s.v. [D. Sourdel]; Cornu, Rédertours, 17; Dussaud, Topographie, 472, 478–79; Yāqūt, Buldān, II, 461.


29. Abū Jahm b. ʿAṭiyyah, a mawla of the Bāḥilah, is listed by Tabarī, III, 88, as al-Saffāḥ’s vizier. Sourdel, Vizirat ʿabbāside, I, 71, questions the significance of this contrasted with other mentions in both Tabarī and Jahshiyārī. Goitein, Studies, 173; Jahshiyārī, Wuzurāʾ, 112, 136; Masʿūdī, Murūj, VI, 165; Caetani, Cronografia generale, 82; Zambaur, Manuel, 6.

30. Abū Ghassān Yazīd b. Ziyād was a chamberlain of Abū al-ʿAbbās and son of the governor of Mecca and Medina, Ziyād b. ʿUbaydallāh. See note 22, above; Crone, Slaves, 149; Fragmenta historiorum, I, 217; Yaʿqūbi, Historiae, II, 437.
Abbāsid Authority Affirmed

giance to al-Mānṣūr. But ‘Abdallāh b. ‘Alī proceeded to Ḥarrān but with his accompanying forces, who had already sworn the oath of allegiance to ‘Abdallāh.

Abū Jaʿfar al-Mānṣūr led the Pilgrimage in this year. We have already mentioned his governorship and the one to whom he delegated it while he was away as a pilgrim.

The governor of al-Kūfah was Īsā b. Mūsā, while the head of its judiciary was Ibn Abī Laylā. Sulaymān b. ‘Alī was governor of al- Başrāh and its subdistricts, while ‘Abbād b. al-Mānṣūr headed its judiciary. The governor of Medina was Ziyād b. ‘Ubaydallāh al-Ḥārithi; of Mecca, al-‘Abbās b. ‘Abdallāh b. Maʿbad; and of Egypt, Šāliḥ b. ‘Alī.

31. Harrān, an ancient city in the Jazirah, served as capital for the last Umayyad caliph, Marwān II. El, s.v. [G. Fehervári]; Yaqūt, Buldān, II, 235–36; Cornu, Répertoires, 18; Dussaud, Topographie, 481–82, 489, 495; Le Strange, Lands, 103, 124.
32. Abū Jaʿfar was governor of the Jazirah and, according to al-Waqīdī, of Armenia and Ādharbajjān as well. His deputy during the Pilgrimage period was Muqātil b. Ḥakīm al-ʿAkki. Tābarī, III, 87, 93.
34. Abū Ayyūb Sulaymān b. Ṭāhir b. ‘Alī b. ‘Abdallāh b. ‘Abbās (d. 142/759) was an uncle of Abū al-ʿAbbās and Abū Jaʿfar and governor of al- Başrāh under both of them. As one charged with responsibility for the Pilgrimage season during the caliphate of al-Saffah, he is remembered for marking that event by the annual manumission of 100 slaves. Dhahābī, Siyar, VI, 162–63; Šafādī, Wafī, XV, 406; Ibn Ḥājār, Taḥdīḥ, IV, 185; Ibn Ḥazm, Jamḥarāt ansāb al-ʿarab, 20, 34; Zambaur, Manuel, 40.
36. Šāliḥ b. ‘Alī b. Abdallāh b. ‘Abbās (d. circa 151/768) was an uncle of al-Saffah and al-Mānṣūr who commanded the expedition that pursued Marwān II to his death in Egypt. He was successively the governor of Egypt and of Syria. El, s.v. [A. Grohmann]; Kindi, Wulāḥ, 97–101; Dhahābī, Siyar, VII, 18–19; Balādhrī, Ansāb al- ashrāf, III, 100–1; Šafādī, Wafī, XVI, 264–65; Zambaur, Manuel, 26, 28. Balog, “Pious Invocations,” 63–65, notes the use of specific formulas associated with his name to be found on early Egyptian glass.
Among the events of this year were the arrival of Abū Ja‘far al-Manṣūr from Mecca and his encampment at al-Ḥirāh.³⁷ He found that ʿĪsā b. Mūsā had already left for al-Anbār, having appointed Ṭalḥah b. Ishāq b. Muḥammad b. al-Ash‘ath³⁸ to take his place in al-Kūfah. Abū Ja‘far entered al-Kūfah and led its people in the Friday prayer.³⁹ He preached to them and told them that he would be


³⁹. The Friday *salāt* is an occasion of mandated communal worship. Its leadership constituted one of the symbolic acts by which caliphal legitimacy was recognized in the early Islamic period. Ibn Khaldūn, *Muqaddimah*, II, 70–73.
‘Abbasid Authority Affirmed

leaving them.40 Abū Muslim appeared before him in al-Hirah. Then Abū Ja'far left for al-Anbār and took up residence there, collecting his men about him.41

According to ‘Ali b. Muḥammad—al-Walid—his father: ‘Īsā b. Mūsā had put a guard on the treasuries, storehouses, and government offices by the time Abū Ja'far reached him at al-Anbār. The people gave the oath of allegiance to Abū Ja'far as caliph, then to ‘Īsā b. Mūsā as his successor. Then ‘Īsā b. Mūsā turned over authority to Abū Ja'far. ‘Īsā b. Mūsā had already sent Abū Ghassān, whose name was Yazīd b. Ziyād and who was the chamberlain of Abū al-‘Abbās, to ‘Abdallāh b. ‘Alī to receive his oath of allegiance to Abū Ja'far. That was done by order of Abū al-‘Abbās, who before he died had commanded the people to give the oath of allegiance to Abū Ja'far after him [i.e., as his successor].

Abū Ghassān reached ‘Abdallāh b. ‘Alī at the entrance to the mountain passes when the latter was starting out on his campaign against the Byzantines. He was encamped at a place called Dulūk at the time when Abū Ghassān came to him with news of Abū al-‘Abbās's death. ‘Abdallāh b. ‘Alī ordered a herald to announce a general gathering for the ritual prayer. The army commanders and troops gathered around him, and ‘Abdallāh b. ‘Alī read to them the death announcement for Abū al-‘Abbās, but then called upon the people to support his own claim to the caliphate.42 He told them that, at the time when Abū al-‘Abbās wanted to send forces against Marwān b. Muḥammad,43 he had summoned his paternal brothers and urged them to move out against Marwān b. Muḥammad. He had said, "Whoever of you rises up and proceeds against him will be my heir apparent."44

40. Abū Ja'far's action echoes that of Abū al-‘Abbās, who less than five years earlier also gave his coronation speech from the minbar in al-Kūfah. Tabari, III, 29–30.
41. Tabari, Glossarium, s.v. ṣarafa.
43. Marwān II, known as Marwān the Onager, or Wild Ass (al-himār), or Marwān the Tight-fisted (al-ja‘dī), was the Umayyad caliph whose defeat ushered in the ‘Abbāsid era. El’, s.v. (K. V. Zetterstéen); Dhahabi, Siyar, VI, 74–77.
44. When presented in the account of the battle at the river Zāb, the dialogue between Abū al-‘Abbās and ‘Abdallāh b. ‘Alī does not include this promise. Tabari, III, 38. On the institution of wali al-'ahd, see Kennedy, "Succession Disputes," 29–30.
['Abdallâh b. 'Ali continued,] "No one but me declared for him. It was thus that I left Abû al-"Abbâs and killed those whom I killed."

Abû Ghânîm al-Ṭâ'î45 and Khufâf al-Marwârûdhi46 stood up with a number of the Khurasâni commanders and testified to the truth of what 'Abdallâh b. 'Ali had said. Therefore Abû Ghânîm, Khufâf, Abû al-Aṣbaqî, and all of the army commanders who were present rendered the oath of allegiance to him. Among them were Hûmâyd b. Qaḥṭâbah,48 Khufâf al-Jurjâni, Hayyâsh b. Ḥâbib,49 Mukhârîq b. Ghîfâr,50 and Turârkhûdâ,51 as well as others from Khurasân, Syria, and the Jazîrah.

At this point 'Abdallâh b. 'Ali was encamped at Tall Muḥammad.52 When he had finished receiving the oath of allegiance, he set out to make camp at Harrân, where Muqâtîl al-'Akkî,53 whom Abû Ja'far had appointed as his deputy when he

45. Abû Ghânîm 'Abd al-Ḥamîd b. Râbî' al-Ṭâ'î, one of the seventy duʿât (sing. daʿî, the chief proselytes of the 'Abbasid movement), served under Qaḥṭâbah b. Shâbib, fought in the battle of the Zâb, and numbered among those who swore allegiance to Abû al-Ḥâsib in the council that proclaimed him caliph. Tabâri, II, 2001, III, 15, 28; El², s.v. Daʿî [M. G. S. Hodgson]; Akhrâr al-dawlâh, 221; Crone, Slaves, 174-75. Azdî, Taʾrikh al-Mawṣîl, 163, records him as Abû Ghânîm al-Kindî.

46. Khufâf b. Maṣūr al-Jurjâni, whose attempt to organize an attack against the caliph is recounted in Tabâri, III, 127, is listed only as Khufâf in Fragmenta historicaorum, I, 217.

47. Marw al-Rûdâh is a city in Khurasân known to the classical geographers as "upper Marw" or "little Marw." El², s.v. [C. E. Bosworth]; Yaqût, Buldân, V, 112; Cornu, Répertoire, 153; Le Strange, Lands, 404-5.

48. Hûmâyd b. Qaḥṭâbah b. Shâbib al-Ṭâ'î [d. 159/775-776] was a son of the prominent revolutionary general Qaḥṭâbah b. Shâbib [El², s.v. Qaḥṭâba b. Shâbib [M. Sharon]]. Under al-Mansûr he was governor of the Jazîrah, of Egypt, and of Khurasân. Ṣafâdî, Wâfi, XIII, 199; Kindî, Wûlâh, 110-11. For use of the formula aslaḥahu allâh in association with him, see Balog, "Pious Invocations," 64.

49. See Tabâri, Addenda et Emendanda, p. DCCXXVI, for a citation from Balâdhurî's Ansâb al-âshraf as Ḫânîsh and Ḫâbbâsh. At the battle of the Zâb he was charged with 'Abdallâh b. 'Ali's police force (shurtâh). Tabâri, III, 38.

50. Presumably a genealogical affiliation with the Banû Ghîfâr [Caskel, Cambrat an-nasab, I, 42, II, 275], but textual variants include al-ṭîqân and al-ṭûfâr. For the incident in which Mukhârîq tricked the Umayyad caliph Marwân II, see Tabâri, III, 39-40.


52. A tall is a hill or mound. There is no mention of this site in the standard geographical sources.

53. Muqâtîl b. Ḥâkim al-ʾAkkî is listed by some sources as one of the alternates (nuṣṭâr al-nuṣaba) to the twelve chiefs (nuṣaba, sing. naqib) who were selected to direct the 'Abbâsîd movement. He fought for the 'Abbâsîd cause under
went out to meet Abū al-‘Abbās, was in residence. ‘Abdallāh b. ‘Alī urged Muqāṭīl to offer him the oath of allegiance as caliph. Muqāṭīl, however, refused to oblige him and fortified himself against ‘Abdallāh b. ‘Alī. The latter took action against him, besieging Muqāṭīl until he had forced him to leave his stronghold. Then he killed him.54

Abū Ja’far then sent Abū Muslim to fight ‘Abdallāh b. ‘Alī.55 When word of Abū Muslim’s approach reached ‘Abdallāh, he decided to halt at Harrān. Abū Ja’far had said to Abū Muslim, “Either you or I must go [and deal with it],” so Abū Muslim marched toward ‘Abdallāh at Harrān.56 ‘Abdallāh b. ‘Alī had already gathered troops and weapons to himself, had dug trenches and collected food, fodder, and whatever else he would need. Abū Muslim thus left al-Anbār in company with every last one of the army commanders, and dispatched Mālik b. al-Haytham al-Khuza‘ī57 to lead his vanguard. With him were al-Ḥasan58 and Qaḥṭabah b. Shabib and in 136 was appointed Abū Ja’far’s deputy when the latter served as governor of the Jazirah. Ṭabarī, III, 4–5, 87; Akhbār al-dawlah, 220; Crone, Slaves, 183–86. Ya’qūbī, Historiae, II, 438, gives Mūsā b. Ka‘b as governor of Harrān at the time of ‘Abdallāh’s arrival. Ibn Ḥallikān, Wafayāt, I, 46, cites Muqāṭīl’s death at the hand of ‘Abdallāh b. ‘Alī in connection with that of one of the du‘āt, Abū ‘Ammārah Muḥammad b. Ṣūl.59

54. Fragmenta historicorum, I, 217, mentions the siege but not the murder of Muqāṭīl.
55. For the encounter between ‘Abdallāh b. ‘Alī and Abū Muslim, see Fragmenta historicorum, I, 217–19; Khalīfah b. Khayyāt, Ta’rikh, II, 441; Dinawārī, al-Akhbār al-tiwāl, 375; Ya’qūbī, Historiae, II, 438–9; Jahshiyārī, Wuzārā’, 103; Azdī, Ta’rikh al-Mawṣīl, 164; Theophanes, Chronicle, 117–18; Agapius, Kitāb al-unwān, 374–75.
56. Cahen, “Points de vue,” 332, suggests that Abū Muslim’s willingness to accept this commission from the caliph, despite the latter’s growing animosity, may lie in their having “quelques secrets de trop en commun.”
57. Abū Naṣr Mālik b. al-Haytham al-Khuza‘ī was a leading figure in the ‘Abbāsid revolution, head of Abū Muslim’s security forces, and one of his trusted advisers. Although Abū Ja’far chastised him for his association with Abū Muslim (Ṭabarī, III, 117), five years later he appointed Mālik governor of al-Mawṣīl. Azdī, Ta’rikh al-Mawṣīl, 177–78; Daniel, Khurasan, 115–16; Crone, Slaves, 181; Sharon, Black Banners, 192.
58. Al-Ḥasan b. Qaḥṭabah b. Shabib al-Ṭā’ī (d. 181/797), brother of al-Humayd [see note 48] and eventually governor of Armenia, occupied al-Kūfah in the early months of 132, clearing the way for the proclamation there of Abū al-‘Abbās as caliph on 12 Rabi’ II [or Rabi’ I]. Ṣafadī, Wafī, XII, 208 [where he is identified as one of the important generals during the reign of Hārūn al-Rashid]; Ṭabarī, III, 23; Caetania, Cronografa generale, 112; Crone, Slaves, 188; Omar, ‘Abbāsid Caliphate, 354.
Humayd, the sons of Qahtabah. Humayd had already withdrawn his allegiance from `Abdallah b. Ali, so `Abdallah wanted to kill him. Abu Ishaq and his brother and Abu Humayd and his brother, as well as a contingent of the Khurasani troops, joined him in this campaign. At the time that he left the province, Abu Muslim had appointed Abu Dawud Khalid b. Ibrahim as his deputy in Khurasan.


59. Abū `Abd al-Hamid Qahlabah b. Shabib b. Khālid b. Ma'dān al-Tā'i [d. 132/749], one of the twelve chiefs (nuqabā') of the 'Abbāsid revolution, died in the final days of battle before the occupation of al-Kufah. Akhbār al-dawlah, 216; EI², s.v. (M. Sharon); Crone, Slaves, 188; Zirīkī, A'lam, V, 191. Shacklady explores his father's connections with the 'Abbāsid family in “'Abbāsid Movement in Khurasan,” 103–4.

60. Abu Ishaq Khalid b. Mān al-Mikhrāsh was from the Khurasani village of al-Makhwan, a site that Abu Muslim used as a fortified encampment during the period of revolt. As commander of the guard (haras), Abu Ishaq served as a member of the military government Abu Muslim established before the occupation of Marw in 130. Tabari, II, 1967, 1989.

61. Abu Humayd al-Marwarrudhi was an officer who served under Qahtabah during the 'Abbāsid revolt. In 132 he was appointed governor of Mambiy in the Jazirah by 'Abdallah b. Ali during the latter's pursuit of Marwān II. Tabari, II, 2001; III, 47; Crone, Slaves, 175.

62. Abu Dawud Khalid b. Ibrāhim, a naqib from the Banū 'Amr b. Shaybān, became governor of Khurasan after Abu Muslim's death. The peculiar circumstances of his death are related in the chapter on year 140. Tabari, II, 1988; Kennedy, Early Abbasid Caliphate, 104–5; Omar, 'Abbāsid Caliphate, 72; Zam- 63. For amān, see EI² s.v. (J. Schacht). For the symbolic use of four, forty, four hundred, etc., to express notions of magnitude or perfection, see L. Conrad, “Abraha and Muhammad”; Rescher, “Einige nachträgliche Bemerkungen.”

64. 'Uthmān b. 'Abd al-AIā, a general under Marwān II, in 132 led a rebellion against 'Abdallah b. Ali in Damascus. Tabari, III, 53; Ṣafādī, Umara Dimashq, 76; Crone, Slaves, 129. Compare this passage with Yaqūbi, Historiae, II, 439, and Azdi, Ta'rikh al-Mawṣil, 164, where there is no mention of the murder of Muqatil.

65. Al-Raqqa, “the Marshland,” was the principal town of the Diyār Mudar district in the Jazirah. It lay on the left bank of the Euphrates about 100 kilometers
and handed it to al-`Akki. After the party reached `Uthmān, he killed al-`Akki and imprisoned his two sons. When he [later] heard about the defeat of `Abdallāh b. `Alī and the Syrians at Naṣībīn,66 `Uthmān took Muqāṭīl’s two sons from prison and beheaded them.

Fearing that the Khurasānī forces would not remain faithful to him, `Abdallāh b. `Alī had about 17,00067 of them killed by way of an order to his prefect of police. He dispatched Ḥumayd b. Qaḥṭabah to Aleppo,68 which at that time was governed by Zufar b. `Āṣīm,69 with a letter that he had written about him. The letter read, “When Ḥumayd b. Qaḥṭabah reaches you, behead him.”70

Partway through the journey Ḥumayd began to think about the letter he carried. Saying to himself, “My carrying a letter and not knowing what is in it is a dangerous business,” he undid the scroll and read it. When he saw what was in the letter, he summoned some of his close comrades and told them the situation, revealing to them his predicament and seeking their counsel. He said, “Any of you who want to make for safe ground and get out of here should come with me; I am going to head for Iraq.” He told them [again] what `Abdallāh b. `Alī had written about him and said to them, “Anyone who cannot bring himself to make the trip should not on any account reveal my secret purpose but may go wherever he wishes.”

Al-Haytham continued: Some of his men decided to stay with Ḥumayd in his flight. Ḥumayd commanded his horses to be shod,
and his companions did the same for their own mounts as they prepared themselves to go with him. He then took off with them into the desert, shunning the beaten path and heading for al-Ruṣāfah, i.e., al-Ruṣāfah of [the Umayyad caliph] Hishām in Syria. There lived in al-Ruṣāfah at that time a mawlā of ʿAbdallāh b. ʿAli named Saʿīd al-Barbarī. When he heard that Ḥumayd b. Qaḥṭabah had set himself in opposition to ʿAbdallāh b. ʿAli and taken to the desert, he set off in search of him with the cavalry under his command. Somewhere on the road Saʿīd overtook Ḥumayd. When Ḥumayd caught sight of him, he doubled back his horse to meet Saʿīd and said to him, “Look here! Surely you know who I am! In God’s name, what good would it do you to fight me? Go back! Do not massacre my comrades and yours. That’s your best course.” When Saʿīd heard Ḥumayd hold forth, he recognized the truth of what he had said to him. Thereupon he returned to his place at al-Ruṣāfah, and Ḥumayd and his men continued on. The commander of his guard, Mūsā b. Maymūn, said to Ḥumayd, “I have a slave girl in al-Ruṣāfah. If you are of a mind to permit me, I shall go there and charge her with various commissions. Then I will catch up with you.” Ḥumayd gave him permission, and Mūsā went and stayed with her. He then left al-Ruṣāfah to return to Ḥumayd, but Saʿīd al-Barbarī, the mawlā of ʿAbdallāh b. ʿAli, happened upon Mūsā, seized him, and killed him.

ʿAbdallāh b. ʿAli marched forward until he encamped at Naṣībin and dug a trench to thwart his opponent. Abū Muslim, too, drew near. Abū Jaʿfar wrote to al-Ḥasan b. Qaḥṭabah, who was his deputy in Armenia to join forces with Abū Muslim. Al-Ḥasan b. Qaḥṭabah reached Abū Muslim when the latter was at al-Mawṣil. Abū Muslim, however, moved forward, stopping by himself and paying him no attention, then taking the road to Syria. Abū Muslim wrote to ʿAbdallāh, “I have not been ordered

71. Bahraj̣a al-ţariq; see Tabāri, Glossarium, s.v. bahrajha.
72. Al-Ruṣāfah was a desert city some forty kilometers southwest of al-Raqqa that had been the residence of the tenth Umayyad caliph, Hishām b. ʿAbd al-Malik (105–25/724–43). s.v. (E. Honigmann) EI1; Cornu, Répertoires, 11; Le Strange, Lands, 106; Yaqūt, Buldān, III, 47–48.
73. Armenia was a mountainous West Asian region under Muslim hegemony from which the headwaters of the Tigris and Euphrates derive. EI2, s.v. Arminiya (M. Canard).
to fight you or sent to do so. The Commander of the Faithful has, however, put me in charge of Syria, and I simply intend to proceed thither." The Syrians who accompanied 'Abdallah said to him, "How can we stay with you when this man is coming to our homeland, where dwell our womenfolk, to kill those of our men whom he can and to take our children captive! We must leave for our own country, so that we can keep him away from our women and children and can fight him if he fights us." 'Abdallah b. 'Ali said to them, "I swear, he is not making for Syria; the only reason he has been sent is to fight you. If you stay here, then he will surely come to you." The Syrian troops, however, were not persuaded and refused to do anything but strike out for Syria.

Abū Muslim moved forward and set up camp near them, just as 'Abdallah b. 'Ali set out with his troops heading for Syria. Abū Muslim moved on to occupy 'Abdallah b. 'Ali's encampment in his stead and spoil the surrounding water sources by throwing decaying carcasses into them.74

News of Abū Muslim's stop at his encampment reached 'Abdallah b. 'Ali, who said to his Syrian confederates, "Did I not tell you!" So he moved back again but discovered that Abū Muslim had already forestalled him in his own encampment. 'Abdallah b. 'Ali therefore occupied the camp position that Abū Muslim had just vacated. They engaged each other for five or six months. The Syrians had more cavalry and were better equipped, having Bakkar b. Muslim al-'Uqayli on 'Abdallah's right flank, Ḥabib b. Suwayd al-Asadi on his left, and 'Abd al-Samad b. 'Ali76 leading the cavalry. On Abu Muslim's right flank was al-Ḥasan b. Qahṭabah, while on the left was Abū Naṣr Khāzim b. Khuzaymah.77 They fought each other for several months.

74. ʿIbrāhīm's edition, VII, 477 n. 1, offers radama al-ʿuyūn, i.e., "fill up the wells," as an equivalent of ʿawwara al-miyāh.
76. ʿAbd al-Ṣamād b. ʿAlī's youngest brother and the only one to support his claim to the caliphate. Ibn al-Athir, Kāmil, V, 466; Kennedy, Early Abbasid Caliphate, 59–60; Jahshiyari, Wuzara', 103.
77. Khāzīm b. Khuzaymah al-Tamīmī was an important Khurāsānī general who fought for Abū Jaʿfar against ʿAbdallāh b. ʿAlī, against Mulabbīd b. Ḥarmalāh in the Jazīrah, ʿAbd al-Jabbār al-Azdi in Khurāsān, the Ispahbād of Tabaristan and ʿIbrāhīm b. ʿAbdallāh in al- Başrah. Crone, Slaves, 180; Omar, Abbāsid Caliphate, 354; Kennedy, Early Abbasid Caliphate, 81–82.
The Events of the Year 137

According to 'Ali—Hishām b. 'Amr al-Taghibi:

I was in Abū Muslim's camp when one day those present were talking and the question of what people are strongest was raised. Abū Muslim said, "Speak up so that I may hear." One man said that it was the Khūrāsānīs, while another said it was the Syrians. Abū Muslim said, "Every group is strongest in its own turn (dawlah)." We met in combat, and 'Abdallāh b. 'Ali's forces attacked us, sweeping us from our positions with the blow they struck and then retiring. 'Abd al-Samad assaulted us with cavalry alone and killed eighteen of our men, only to draw back with his troops. Then they all assembled and flung themselves upon us, scattering our ranks so that we moved around in disorder. I said to Abū Muslim, "What if I were to prod my mount up to the top of that hill so I could shout to the troops, for they are in flight?" Abū Muslim told me to do so. I said, "You, too, could spur your horse." "Shrewd people would never turn their horses aside in such a way," Abū Muslim retorted, "but, by all means, call out: 'O men of Khūrāsān, come back; surely the outcome favors the one who is on his guard.'" I did so, and the troops came back. On that day Abū Muslim declaimed in rajaz meter this line:

The one who deserts his comrades and does not return runs away from dying but into death will fall.

A shelter had been made for Abū Mūsulim in which he would sit when the troops engaged each other in order to watch the battle. If he saw a gap on the right or the left flank, he would send word to its commander, saying, "There is disorder in your

---

78. Hishām b. 'Amr al-Taghibi was a governor of al-Mawṣil for Marwān II but eventually switched his allegiance to 'Abdallāh b. 'Ali. In 151 Abū Ja'far appointed him governor of Sind. Hishām's refusal to recognize and admit Marwān II after his defeat by the 'Abbāsids is recounted by Tabarī, III, 47, and Azdī, Ta'rikh al-Mawṣil, 133. Zambaur, Manuel, 279 (for Sind; he does not list him among the governors of al-Mawṣil); Crone, Slaves, 167–68.

79. For the use of dawlah to denote "the motion of history and changes of political fortune," see Sharon, Black Banners, 19–27. Similarly, Mottahedeh, Loyalty and Leadership, 185, defines the term as "the divinely granted turn in power."

80. Cf. Qur'ān 7:128, "the outcome is to the godfearing (wa-al-`aqqibah lil-muttaqīn)."

81. In Ibn Khaldūn, 'Ibar, III, 387, Abū Mūsulim watches "the thick of the fight (al-hawmah)."
sector. Watch out lest your sector be the point where they break through our line! Do thus and so; advance your cavalry here, or move it back there to such and such a place." His runners carried his counsel back and forth to the commanders at such a pace that they were at each other's heels.

Hishām said: On Tuesday or Wednesday, the 7th of Jumādā II in the year 136 or 137, the armies came together and fought fiercely. When Ābu Muslim saw what was happening, he tricked the Syrians. He sent word to al-Ḥasan b. Qahtābah, commander of the right flank, "Strip the right flank; combine most of it with the left, but let your elite defense forces and bravest fighters stay on the right." When the Syrians saw that maneuver, they stripped their left flank, joining its forces to their right flank, which stood face-to-face with the left flank of Ābu Muslim. Ābu Muslim then sent word to al-Ḥasan, "Order the center forces, together with those who remain on the right flank, to attack the left flank of the Syrians." The Khurāsānīs did so and shattered the Syrian left flank, leaving the Syrian central and right flanks in disarray.

The Khurāsānīs bore down upon the Syrians with such force that it was a complete rout. Ābdallāh b. Ālī said to Ibn Surāqah al-Azdi, who was with him, "Well what do you think, Ibn Surāqah?" He answered, "By God, I think that you must stand fast and fight to the death. To flee would be abhorrent to one such as you. Earlier you denounced Marwān for it, saying, 'God shame Marwān! He was so fearful of dying that he fled.'" Ābdallāh b. Ālī then said, "I will go to Iraq," while Ibn Surāqah replied, "I will be with you." Thus were Ābdallāh b. Ālī and his close associates put to flight. They abandoned their camp, and Ābu Muslim took control of it. He wrote to Ābu Jaʿfar to tell

---

83. Thursday, November 28, 137. Wüstenfeld and Mahler, Vergleichungs-Tabellen, 4; Caetani, Cronographia generale, 106. See also Ibn al-Athīr, Kāmil, V, 467, who gives both Tuesday and Wednesday of 136, and Ibn Khaldūn, ʿIbar, III, 387, who gives only Wednesday of 137.
84. For the effect of this victory upon the status of the Khurāsānī army, see Sharon, "Military Reforms," 132. According to Chronicon Anonymum, 168, the Syrian defeat was marked by a falling star.
him that. Abū Ja`far sent Abū al-Khaṣīb, his mawlā, to calculate what they had acquired with the camp of 'Abdallāh b. 'Ali. This made Abū Muslim furious.

'Abdallāh b. 'Ali and 'Abd al-Šamad b. 'Ali proceeded on their way. 'Abd al-Šamad got to al-Kūfah, where 'Īsā b. Mūsā requested a guarantee of safe-conduct for him, which Abū Ja`far ratified. 'Abdallāh b. 'Ali went to Sulaymān b. 'Ali in al-Baṣrah and stayed with him. Abū Muslim granted a general amnesty to the Syrian army without killing anyone and commanded that they be left alone.

Another source states that it was Ismā`īl b. 'Ali who requested indemnity for 'Abd al-$amad. One report is that, when 'Abdallāh b. 'Ali was defeated, he and his brother 'Abd al-Šamad fled to al-Ruṣāfah of Hishām. 'Abd al-Šamad stayed there until the cavalry of al-Manṣūr, under the command of Jahwar b. Marrār al-`Ijli, reached him. He seized 'Abd al-Šamad and sent him, bound, to al-Manṣūr in the custody of Abū al-Khaṣīb, the caliph's mawlā. When 'Abd al-Šamad came before al-Manṣūr, the caliph ordered him to be turned over to 'Īsā b. Mūsā. 'Īsā, however, granted him indemnity and released him. He treated him most generously, presenting him with gifts and fine clothes. 'Abdallāh

---

86. Abū al-Khaṣīb Marzuq was a chamberlain (hajib) for Abū Ja`far and his appointee as governor of Tabaristan. Tabari, III, 112; Crone, Slaves, 190; Rabino di Borgomale, "Prēfets du Califat," 247–48.
88. Abū al-Hasan Ismā`īl b. 'Ali b. 'Abdallāh b. 'Abbas (d. 147/764), another brother of 'Abdallāh b. 'Ali and thus also a paternal uncle to Abū al-`Abbās and Abū Ja`far, was appointed governor of al-Mawṣīl in 133 and charged with responsibility for the Pilgrimage season in 137. Tabari, III, 73, 75, 121. Ṣafadi, Wāfi, IX, 156, refers to him as governor of al-`Baṣrah, perhaps drawing upon Tabari's mention in the events of the year 143. While Abū al-Hasan was governor of Wāṣīt, al-Manṣūr convinced him to change his allegiance from 'Īsā b. Mūsā as caliph-designate to al-Manṣūr's son, Muḥammad al-Mahdī. Baladhuri, Ansāb al-ashrāf, III, 256.
89. Jahwar b. Marrār al-`Ijli, from an Arab tribe to which Abū Muslim is thought to have been attached as a slave, served as Abū Ja`far's chief of police during the battle for Wāṣīt in 132 but is most noted for his campaign against Sunbadh, which will be detailed in the closing pages of this chapter. Tabari, III, 64–65; Kennedy, Early Abbasid Caliphate, 64; El`, s.v. Abū Muslim (S. Moscati) and s.v. `Ijli (W. Montgomery Watt).
b. `Ali, however, stayed but one night in al-Ruṣāfah. At nightfall on the following day he set off with his officers and mawlās to go to Sulaymān b. `Ali in al-Baṣrah. At that time Sulaymān was the governor of al-Baṣrah. He gave lodging to `Abdallāh b. `Ali and his confederates and treated them generously. They stayed with him in hiding for a while. They stayed with him in hiding for a while.90 They stayed with him in hiding for a while.91

In this year Abū Muslim was killed.

An Account of Abū Muslim’s Murder and the Reason for It


90. ‘Abdallāh b. `Ali’s eventual arrest and detention are detailed under the year 139.
91. For other accounts, see Fragmenta historicorum, I, 219; Khalīfah b. Khayyāt, Ta’rīkh, II, 441; Ya’qūbī, Historiae, II, 439; and Azdī, Ta’rīkh al-Mawsil, 137.
94. In Ṭabarī his reports are always transmitted through Abū al-Ḥasan ‘Ali b. Muhammad al-Madā’inī.
95. Abū Zayd al-Anṣārī Sa’īd b. Aws b. Thābit (d. 215/830–31) was a Baṣrān historian, grammatical, and littérateur. His grandfather, Abū Zayd Thābit b. Zayd b. al-Nu‘mān, was one of those charged with the collection of the Qur’ān during the lifetime of the Prophet. Ṣafāḍī, Wāfī, XV, 200–2; Dodge, Fihrist of al-Nadīm, I, 62; Dhahabī, Siyār, IX, 494–96; Ibn Khallikān, Wafayāt, II, 378–80; Ibn Ḥajar, Tahdhib, IV, 4–5; Rosenthal, Muslim Historiography, 504 (listed with the historians in al-Sakhāwī’s Ḥāᾱn).
The Events of the Year 137

and others: In the year 136 Abū Muslim wrote to Abū al-`Abbās, asking his permission to perform the Pilgrimage. As he was simply intending to perform the prayer ritual with the people, Abū al-`Abbās granted his request. Subsequently, Abū al-`Abbās wrote to Abū Ja`far, who was then governor of the Jazīrah, Armenia, and Ādharbayjān.99 "Abū Muslim has written to me seeking my permission to make the Pilgrimage. I have given him my consent, but the thought has occurred to me that when he arrives he may ask me to appoint him the leader of the Pilgrimage. Write to me and ask my permission to perform the Pilgrimage, because when you are in Mecca he could not expect to take precedence over you." Accordingly, Abū Ja`far wrote to Abū al-`Abbās, seeking his consent to perform the Pilgrimage, which the latter granted, and Abū Ja`far went to al-Anbār. At this Abū Muslim came before the caliph and said, "Could Abū Ja`far find no other year to make the Pilgrimage than this one?" and he carried a grudge against Abū Ja`far in his heart.

According to `Ali-Muslim b. al-Mughirah: In this year Abū Ja`far appointed al-Hasan b. Qaḥtabah as his deputy in Armenia. [Another source said that he installed his foster brother Yahyā b. Muslim b. `Urwah,100 who was a black mawlā of the `Abbāsids.] Abū Ja`far and Abū Muslim left for Mecca, but wherever he stopped, Abū Muslim would fill the needs of supplicants,101 giving garments to the desert Arabs and bestowing largesse upon whoever petitioned him. He outfitted them with head wraps (butūṭ) and cloaks (malāhif),102 he dug wells and leveled road surfaces. He became celebrated, with the desert Arabs exclaiming, "This man has been lied about!" Eventually he reached Mecca and, upon seeing the Yemenite103 forces there, Abū Muslim

99. Ādharbayjān was a mountainous northern province bordering the Caspian Sea that currently lies substantially in Iran. EI², s.v. [V. Minorsky]; Le Strange, Lands, 159–71.
100. According to Goitein, Studies, 180, Yahyā and Abū Ja`far had been suckled by the same woman, thus creating a "milk relationship" between them. See also his "Origin of the Vizierate."
101. Translation follows the Leiden variant reading, al-`ufāt.
102. A batt is a head wrapping made of coarse cloth, while a milbafah is a rough bedouin cloak. Dozy, Vêtements, 54, 401; EI², s.v. Libās [Y. K. Stillman et al.]
103. See Ibn al-Athir, Kamil, V, 468. The Yemen was a province in the southwestern segment of the Arabian peninsula with coastlines along both the Red Sea and the Gulf of Aden. EI¹, s.v. al-Yaman [A. Grohmann]. For an analysis of the
slapped his thigh and exclaimed to Nayzak, \textsuperscript{104} "O Nayzak, what an army this could be were a sharp-tongued man—but one quick to tears\textsuperscript{105}—to take them in hand!"

To return to the account of the primary authorities: When the people emerged from the observance of the Pilgrimage, Abu Muslim hurried off ahead of Abu Ja'far. When word of Abu al-'Abbas's death and Abu Ja'far's appointment as his successor reached him, Abu Muslim wrote to Abu Ja'far, condoling with him for the death of the Commander of the Faithful but not congratulating him on his becoming caliph. He neither stayed put so that Abu Ja'far could catch up with him nor did he go back. Enraged, Abu Ja'far said to Abu Ayyub, \textsuperscript{106} "Write Abu Muslim a harsh letter." When Abu Muslim received Abu Ja'far's letter, he responded with congratulations on his accession to the caliphate. Yazid b. Usayd al-Sulami\textsuperscript{107} said to Abu Ja'far, "I dislike the thought that you might join up with Abu Muslim on the way. The people are his men, completely obedient to him, and they hold him in the highest awe, while no one is aligned with you." Abu Ja'far took Yazid's advice and lagged behind while Abu Muslim went ahead. Abu Ja'far then commanded his forces to advance and gather all together. Their weapons were collected (i.e., for a tally), but there were only six coats of mail in his whole force. Abu Muslim went on to al-Anbar and invited 'Isa b. Musa religious and messianic connotations of "yamānī," see Bashear, "Yemen in Early Islam."

\textsuperscript{104} Persian for "javelin" or "spear." Tabari, \textit{Indices}, lists him simply as one of Abu Muslim's army commanders. Fragmenta historiorum, I, 321 n. a, cites him as a leader [ṣāḥib] in Rayy, while Kennedy, \textit{Early Abbasid Caliphate}, 61, 64, identifies him as "a leading eastern Iranian noble' and one of Abu Muslim's closest advisers. Justi, \textit{Iranisches Namenbuch}, 229, offers a kunyah of Abu Naṣr.

\textsuperscript{105} Ibn al-Athir, \textit{Kāmil}, V, 468, for ghazir al-dam'ah.


so that he might render his oath of allegiance to him, but ïsâ refused.\(^{108}\) Abû Ja‘far arrived and encamped at al-Kûfah, where he learned that ‘Abdallâh b. ‘Ali had renounced his fealty. He returned therefore to al-Anbâr, summoned Abû Muslim, commissioned him, and said, “Set out for Ibn ‘Ali.” Abû Muslim, however, responded, “ Arrest ‘Abd al-Jabbâr b. ‘Abd al-Râhîm\(^{109}\) and Šâlih b. al-Haytham,\(^{110}\) for they have been denouncing me.” Abû Ja‘far retorted, “ ‘Abd al-Jabbâr commands my police units, the same responsibility he had formerly discharged for Abû al-‘Abbâs. Šâlih b. al-Haytham is the Commander of the Faithful’s [i.e., Abû al-‘Abbâs] foster brother. I am not about to arrest them merely because of your suspicion of them.” Abû Muslim then said, “I see that those two have greater favor with you than I.” Abû Ja‘far became angry, so Abû Muslim apologized, saying, “I didn’t mean all this.”

According to ‘Ali—Muslim b. al-Mughîrah: I was with al-Ḥasan b. Qâḥtabâb in Armenia. When Abû Muslim was dispatched to Syria, Abû Ja‘far wrote to al-Ḥasan that he should join Abû Muslim and march with him. We reached Abû Muslim at al-Mawṣîl, where he stayed for a few days. When Abû Muslim was about to move on, I said to al-Ḥasan, “You and your forces are moving into battle;\(^{111}\) you have no need of me. What if you were to allow me to go on to Iraq and stay there until, God willing, you turn up?” Al-Ḥasan said, “All right, but inform me when you are about to leave,” to which I agreed. When I had finished my preparations, I informed him and said, “I have come to bid you farewell.” Al-Ḥasan replied, “Wait for me by the gate until I come out to you.” I went out and stopped there until he came out and said,

---

\(^{108}\) This translation follows Ṭabarî, Addenda et Emendanda, p. DCCXXVII, which corrects the text’s fa-atâ to fa-abâ. See Omar, ‘Abbâsid Caliphate, 167, 175; Moscati, “Abû Muslim. III,” 94.

\(^{109}\) ‘Abd al-Jabbâr b. ‘Abd al-Râhîm al-Azdi was an ‘Abbâsid dâ’î and revolutionary general who served as head of the shurtâh for al-Saffâh and al-Mansûr. The latter named him governor of Khurâsân in 140/757–58. For the caliph’s treatment of his defection, see under the year 141 below. Ṭabarî, III, 76, 100; El², s.v. (S. Moscati); Crone, Slaves, 173.

\(^{110}\) Abû Ghassân Šâlih b. al-Haytham was a mawlâ of Abû al-‘Abbâs and, according to Fragmenta historicorum, I, 215, his chamberlain. Bâladhurî, Ansâb al-ashraf; Crone, Slaves, 194. Ṭabarî, II, 840, gives him as the mawlâ of Raytah bt. Abî al-‘Abbâs, the caliph’s niece.

\(^{111}\) See Ṭabarî, Addenda et Emendanda, p. DCCXXVII.
"I want to pass something on to you so that you can report it to Abū Ayyūb. Were it not for my confidence in you, again I would not give you this information. Moreover, were it not for your standing with Abū Ayyūb, I would not tell you this. Inform Abū Ayyūb that, since my arrival here, I have developed grave doubts about Abū Muslim. When he receives a letter from the Commander of the Faithful and reads it, he turns down the corner of his mouth and tosses the letter to Abū Naṣr. The latter reads it, and the two of them laugh derisively." I said, "Yes, I understand." Subsequently I met with Abū Ayyūb, thinking that I had brought him news of some consequence. He just laughed and said, "We are more suspicious of Abū Muslim than of 'Abdallāh b. 'Alī, but we place our hope in one thing. We know that the Khurasānī troops do not like 'Abdallāh b. 'Alī because he killed some of them." [At the time when he renounced his fealty, 'Abdallāh b. 'Alī feared the Khurasānīs. Thus he killed 17,000 of them by an order to his prefect of police, Ḥāyyāsh b. Ḥabbīb.]

According to 'Alī—Abū Ḥafṣ al-Azdī: Abū Muslim fought 'Abdallāh b. 'Alī, put him to flight, and gathered up everything he had in his camp into an enclosed compound. Abū Muslim acquired various assets, household goods, and many jewels, all of it scattered at random in this confine. He put one of his commanders in charge of the compound and its safekeeping. I was in this man's unit, and he set us to guard it in shifts. When anyone left the enclosure, he would search him. One day some of my colleagues came out of the compound, but I stayed behind. The commander asked them, "What's Abū Hafs doing?" They responded that he was in the enclosure. He then came and looked over the gate. I sensed his presence and slipped off my shoes while he was looking. I then shook out my shoes, and, while he was still looking, I shook out my trousers (sarāwīl) and sleeves. As he continued to watch, I put on my shoes [again]. Then he went to sit down in his [usual] seat, and I came out. He asked me what had kept me, but I told him that everything was all right, so he left me alone but said, "I saw what you did, but why did you do it?" I answered, "Pearls and dirham coins are scattered in the compound, and we were slipping and sliding all over them. I was afraid that
some of them had gotten into my shoes, so I pulled off my shoes and socks.” That pleased him, and he told me to go on my way. So I continued to enter the compound together with the guard, taking some of those dirhams and fine fabrics, and putting some in my shoes and binding some around my middle. My colleagues would go out and be searched, but not me. I kept doing this until I had collected a fair-sized hoard, but I never touched the pearls.

To return to the account of those on whose authority ‘Alī related the story of Abū Muslim in the first place: After ‘Abdallāh b. ‘Alī had been put to flight, Abū Ja‘far sent Abū al-Khaṣib to record for the caliph what Abū Muslim had acquired in the way of booty. Abū Muslim reproached Abū al-Khaṣib and planned to kill him. But there was intercession on his behalf, and people said, “He’s only a messenger; let him go.” Accordingly, Abū al-Khaṣib went back to Abū Ja‘far. The officers then approached Abū Muslim to say: “We have dealt with the matter of ‘Abdallāh b. ‘Alī and pillaged his camp. Why is there interrogation about what’s in our hands? The Commander of the Faithful is only entitled to his fifth of the booty.” When Abū al-Khaṣib reached Abū Ja‘far, he told the caliph that Abū Muslim had intended to kill him. Abū Ja‘far feared that Abū Muslim would go back to Khurāsān, so via Yaqtīn he wrote him a letter stating, “I have placed you in charge of Egypt and Syria, which is better for you than Khurāsān. Send to Egypt whomever you like and take up residence in Syria. You will then be close to the Commander of the Faithful. If he wants a meeting with you, you can come to him from nearby.” When he received the letter, Abū Muslim became angry and said, “He is appointing me governor of

---

114. The Leiden editor notes that for the next several pages the Algiers manuscript lacks folios.
115. Iftarā; see Ţabari, Glossarium, s.v. fārā.
116. The text follows the Qur’ānic orthography with al-khumus. Qur’ān, 8:41, is the textual locus for division of the spoils of battle into five parts, four for the combatants and one for the sovereign. For Ţabari’s exegesis of this verse, see fāmīr al-bayān, XIII, 545–63.
117. Yaqtīn b. Mūsā al-Abzārī (d. 186/802) had been one of the leaders of the ‘Abbāsid du‘āt in al-Kufah. For his avoidance of the abortive revolt of Zayd b. ‘Alī in 122/740, see Akhbār al-dawlah, 231. Azdi, Ta’rikh al-Mawsil, 164 n. 4; Jahshiyārī, Wuzzārā, 166; Zirikli, A’lām, VIII, 207; Dodge, Fihrist of Ibn Nadim, II, 1126 (where the name is given as Yaqtīn). For his connection with Ja‘far al-Šādiq, see Elad, “Siege of al-Wāsit,” 83 n. 109.
Syria and Egypt, but Khurasan is mine.” He was determined to go back there, so Yaqtin wrote to Abū Ja‘far about that. 118

Other accounts say that when Abū Muslim seized possession of ‘Abdallāh b. ‘Ali’s camp, al-Manṣūr sent Yaqtin b. Mūsā [whom Abū Muslim was wont to call “Yak Din”]119 with the order to calculate what the camp contained. At this, Abū Muslim exclaimed, “O Yaqtin, am I [thought] trustworthy in matters of bloodshed but unreliable in matters of property!”120 He vilified Abū Ja‘far, which Yaqtin reported to him. Abū Muslim had come from the Jazirah resolved to defy [the caliph’s command] and in resistance turned off the route [to al-Anbār], promptly making for Khurāsān. Abū Ja‘far left al-Anbār for al-Mada‘in121 and wrote to Abū Muslim to come to him. From his encampment at the river Zāb122 on the return route by way of Ḥulwān,123 Abū Muslim wrote:124

For the Commander of the Faithful, may God be gracious to him, there remains no foe of whom God has not given him the better. We would recount the saying of the Sāsānīd kings, ‘Viziers are most fearful when the mob is quiet.’125 We shy away from being near you, yet want to fulfill our obligations to you, so long as you reciprocate,

118. Wa-i‘tazama bi-al-mudīy. Tabari, Addenda et Emendanda, p. DCCXXVII, and Glossarium, s.v. ‘azama.
119. As a Persian expression, this can mean “one religion” or “one debt,” but the significance remains ambiguous.
121. Al-Mada‘in, “the cities,” including Ctesiphon, Aspānbur, and al-Rūmiyyah (see note 130), lay on both sides of the Tigris about thirty kilometers southeast of Baghdad. EI², s.v. [M. Streck and M. Morony]; Yaqūṭ, Buldān, V, 74–75; Cornu, Répertoires, 30; Le Strange, Lands, 33–35.
122. The Zāb was a tributary of the Tigris and site of the decisive ‘Abbāsid battle against Marwān II. EI¹, s.v. [E. Honigmann]; Yaqūṭ, Buldān, III, 123–24; Cornu, Répertoires, 24; Le Strange, Lands, 90–91.
123. Ḥulwān lay in the foothills of the Zagros mountains about 180 kilometers northeast of Sāmarra‘ on the main road to Khurāsān. EI², s.v. [L. Lockhart]; Yaqūṭ, Buldān, II, 290–93; Cornu, Répertoires, 29; Le Strange, Lands, 191–92; Barthold, Geography of Iran, 198, 201.
124. See also Jahshiyari, Wuzara‘, 111.
125. Frye, “‘Abbāsid Revolt,” 29, cites this statement as an indication that Abū Muslim was conversant with Middle Persian literature.
apt to heed and obey, though from afar, where safety is yoked to that obedience. If that satisfies you, I shall be like the finest of your servants, but if you insist that your own will prevail, then I must renounce my pledged loyalty to you in due consideration of myself.

When the letter reached al-Manṣūr, he wrote to Abū Muslim:

I have understood your letter, but your character is not that of those viziers who connived against their kings, wishing to disturb the bonds of authority because of the multitude of their misdeeds. Their comfort lay only in disruption of the social order. Why do you equate yourself with them when you are as you are, in your obedience, in your faithful counsel, and in your assumption of the burdens of this affair [of ʿAbdallāh b. ʿAlī], which you have borne so well? In the obligation that you are [now] taking upon yourself, however, there is neither heeding nor obeying. The Commander of the Faithful has charged ʿĪsā b. Mūsā with a letter for you, by which you may be reassured, if you pay heed to it. I beg God to intervene between you and Satan with his evil promptings, for he has judged he could find no more certain way by which to corrupt your right intention, or one more accessible to his sorcery (ṭīb),126 than the door that he has opened to you.

Abū Jaʿfar [now] sent to Abū Muslim Jarīr b. Yazīd b. Jarīr b. ʿAbdallāh al-Bajali,127 a man unique among his contemporaries,128 and he inveigled him into coming back. Abū Muslim used to remark, “By God, I will most certainly be killed in Rūm

---

126. Ibrāhīm's edition, VII, 483 n. 3, offers siḥr as a synonym for tīb, which ordinarily connotes “medicine.” The line between medicine and magic is frequently blurred in such classical sources as hadith collections, e.g., the Sahīh of Muslim and that of Bukhārī.

127. In 126 he was appointed Manṣūr b. Jumhūr's deputy governor for al-Asrābah. Ṭabārī, II, 1837 [where his name is given as Jarīr b. Yazīd b. Yazīd b. Jarīr]; Zam- baur, Manuel, 40; Crone, Slaves, 115. Dinawari, al-Akhbār al-tiwāl, 376; describes him as “charming and successful.”

128. Al-Maṣʿūdī, Murūj, VI, 179, adds that he was “one of the shrewdest men of his era and a long-time acquaintance of Abū Muslim's.”
In fact, he approached while al-Manṣūr was living in pavilions at al-Rūmiyyah. The populace received him, and al-Manṣūr gave him hospitality, according him gracious treatment for several days.

To return to the account of ‘Ali and his previously mentioned authorities: Abū Muslim wrote to Abū Ja‘far:

I took as imām and guide in what God has enjoined upon His creatures a man who lived in learning’s quarter and to the Messenger of God was closely related. However, he thought me ignorant of the Qur’ān and distorted its significations, avid for what little God may relinquish to His creatures, like one enticed by illusion. He commanded me to unsheathe the sword, to excise compassion, to accept no excuse, to overlook no mistake. Thus did I act to reinforce your authority until God made you known to those who had been ignorant of you. Then God rescued me by repentance. If He forgives me, that will be in accordance with His well-known and attributed practice as in former days, but if He punishes me for what
my hands have done, God is not unjust to His servants
[i.e., even that would be an instance of God's justice].

Abū Muslim marched out, heading for Khurāsān and feeling hostility and opposition. When he entered Iraqi territory, al-Mansūr left al-Anbār and moved forward, settling at al-Madā’in. Thereupon Abū Muslim took the road to Ḥulwān, saying, “There’s many a matter for God this side of Ḥulwān!” Abū Ja`far told ʿĪsā b. ʿAlī, ʿĪsā b. Mūsā, and those of the Banū Hāshim who accompanied him to write to Abū Muslim. They did so, extolling his accomplishments, thanking him for all he had done, asking him to continue in his course, enjoining him to obedience, and warning him of the punishment for perfidy. They further ordered him to return to the Commander of the Faithful and to seek his good will. Abū Ja`far sent the letter with Abū Humayd al-Marwārūdhī and said to him, “Speak to Abū Muslim with the utmost courtesy you would show anyone. Awaken hope in him, and let him know that I shall exalt his station and treat him as no one else has ever done if he mends his ways and respects my wishes once more. If he refuses to return, then say to him, ‘The commander of the Faithful says to you, ‘I am not of al-ʿAbbās, and I have nothing to do with Muḥammad if, after your having left in a state of opposition and not come back to me, I should hand over your affair to someone else and not make every effort to seek you out and fight you myself. Were you to plunge into the sea, I would dive in too. Were you to rush into fire, I would charge in too, until I had killed you or died trying.’’ But by no means make this statement to him until you despair of his returning and cannot hope for anything better from him.’’

136. The authenticity of this letter has been the subject of considerable debate. Moscati, “Abū Muslim. III,” 97–98, cites the principal lines of argumentation.
137. ʿĪsā b. ʿAlī b. Abdallāh b. ʿAbbās [d. 164/780], an uncle of the first two ʿAbbāsid caliphs, twice served as governor of Fārs and is remembered as a scholar and an ascetic. His name was given to the deep canal, Nahr ʿĪsā, which marked the southern limits of Baghdad. Dhahabi, Siyar, VII, 409–10; Zirikli, A`lām, V, 105; EI2, s.v. ʿĪsā, Nahr (J. Lassner); Lassner, Topography, 144–45; Zambaur, Manuel, 46.
138. An ʿAbbāsid form of self-reference denoting a lineage relation with the prophet Muḥammad, either remotely through his great-grandfather Hāshim b. ʿAbd Manāf, or proximately through his cousin’s grandson Abū Hāshim b. Muḥammad b. al-Ḥanafiyyah.
Accordingly, Abū Ḥumayd set forth at the head of his most trustworthy associates, and they eventually reached Abū Muslim at Ḥulwān. Abū Ḥumayd, Abū Mālik, and others entered and presented the letter to him. Abū Ḥumayd said to Abū Muslim, "Out of envy and spite, people are misrepresenting to you what the Commander of the Faithful says and thinks of you, with the intent to disrupt and deflect the good will he has toward you. Do not spoil what you have; talk to him." Then he went on to say, "O Abū Muslim, surely you remain a trusted agent of the family of Muḥammad, as the people recognize. The heavenly recompense God has stored away to reward you for that is greater than all your earthly gain. Do not nullify your reward. Let Satan never tempt you!" Abū Muslim said to him, "Since when do you presume to speak to me like this?" He answered, "You are the one who summoned us to this cause and to obedience to the family of the house of the Prophet, the Banū al-Abbās. You commanded us to fight those who opposed that. You called us from various lands and from diverse circumstances. God has drawn us together in obedience to them, united our hearts in love for them, and fortified us in our support for them. Among them we have never encountered anyone except with these God-given sentiments in our hearts, and so we have now come to them in their land with our sights rendered sharp and our obedience unclouded. Do you really intend, at the time when we have reached the culmination of our wishes and the consummation of our hope, to destroy our situation and to dissipate our authority? You were the one who said to us, 'Kill whoever opposes you. If I oppose you then kill me!'" Abū Muslim then turned to Abū Naṣr [Mālik b. Haytham] and said, "O Mālik, do you not hear what this fellow is saying to me? This is not his own utterance, Mālik [i.e., he speaks for the caliph]." Abū Naṣr replied, "Don't listen to what he is saying; such talk from him should certainly not alarm you. Upon my life, you rightly said that this is not his speech, but what may follow will be worse. Carry on with your own affair and do not return. By God, if you go to Abū Jaʿfar, he will most certainly kill you. Something has entered his mind such that he will never trust

139. For amin al-Muhammad as a title accorded to Abū Muslim, see Sharon, Black Banners, 199.
you."  

140 Abū Muslim told his confederates to rise up, which they did. Then he sent for Nayzak and said, "By God, Nayzak, it's been a long time since I've seen anyone more sensible than you."  

141 What do you think now that these letters have come and people have had their say?" Nayzak replied, "I don't think you should go to him. I think that you should go to al-Rayy and stay there. The whole region between Khurasan and al-Rayy falls to you. They are your forces, not one of whom opposes you. If he is being straight with you, then you can be straight with him. But if he refuses, then you are with your own army, Khurasan is behind you, and you can follow your own judgment."  

143 So Abū Muslim summoned Abū Ḥumayd and said, "Go back to your master; I have decided not to come to him." Abū Ḥumayd asked, "Have you really resolved to go against him?" to which Abū Muslim said, "Yes." "Don't do it," replied Abū Ḥumayd, but Abū Muslim answered, "I do not want to meet with him." Having abandoned all hope that Abū Muslim would return, Abū Ḥumayd said to him what Abū Ja`far had ordered him to say. Abū Muslim was silent for a long time. Then he said, "Rise up and go," but that speech had disturbed and frightened him.  

Now at the time when he began to have doubts about Abū Muslim, Abū Ja`far had written to Abū Dawud, Abū Muslim's deputy in Khurasan, to the effect that "You shall have control of Khurasan for as long as you live."  

144 Abū Dawud then wrote to Abū Muslim, "We did not revolt [i.e., against the Umayyads] in order to disobey God's caliphs and the family of the house of His Prophet. Do not oppose your imām; return [to Khurasan] only with his permission." Abū Dawud's letter reached Abū Muslim at this juncture, making him yet more alarmed and concerned.
Thus Abū Muslim sent word to Abū Humayd and Abū Mālik: "I had made up my mind to go on to Khurāsān, but then I decided to send Abū Ishaq, in whom I have confidence, to the Commander of the Faithful, so that he can bring me his assessment [of the situation]." Abū Muslim dispatched Abū Ishaq, and, when the latter arrived, the Banū Ḥāshim received him with everything he could wish. Abū Jaʿfar said to him, "Make Abū Muslim change his mind and you shall have the governorship of Khurāsān," and he dismissed him. Abū Ishaq returned to Abū Muslim and said to him, "I could not find fault with anything; I am of the opinion that they respect your rights highly, thinking as much of you as they do of themselves." He advised Abū Muslim to return to the Commander of the Faithful and apologize to him for what he had done. Abū Muslim made up his mind to do so, and Nayzak asked him, "Are you fully of a mind to return?" "Yes," said Abū Muslim and quoted:145

Men can do nothing against fate.
Fate makes away with people's scheming.

Nayzak said, "Since you have made up your mind to do this, may God prosper you. But keep in mind this one thing I tell you: When you enter the presence of Abū Jaʿfar, kill him. Then give the oath of allegiance to whomever you wish, for the troops will not oppose you." Abū Muslim then wrote to Abū Jaʿfar to inform him that he would be coming to meet him.

According to some sources—Abū Ayyūb: One day I came into the presence of Abū Jaʿfar, who was then residing in a hair tent146 at al-Rūmiyyah, while he was seated on a prayer carpet following the afternoon prayer. Abū Muslim's letter lay before him. He tossed it to me, and I read it. Then he said, "By God, if I lay eyes on him, I will surely kill him." I said to myself, " 'To God we belong and to Him is our return' [i.e., that's as may be, but I hope not!]. I have pursued the scribal career, and now, when I have reached its pinnacle and become the caliph's scribe, this had to happen among the people!147 By God, if he were killed, I do not

146. Sourdel, "Questions," 132, specifies this as "camel's hair."
147. Jahshiyārī, Wuzara', 111, reads: "This mix-up (takhliṭ) had to happen among the people."
think his confederates would accept his killing and would let this man here, and anyone associated with him, remain alive. So I was not able to sleep." Then I said to myself, "Maybe the man will arrive in a confident frame of mind. If so, perhaps he will achieve his wish. But if he arrives behaving warily, the caliph will have no possible recourse but to deal with him harshly. If only I could put my finger on a clever scheme!"\(^{148}\) I sent for Salamah b. Sa‘id b. Jābir\(^ {149}\) and said to him, "Do you have a sense of gratitude?" He said that he did. I continued, "If I got you appointed governor of a place from which you would garner what the governor of Iraq gets, would you let my brother Ḥātim b. Abi Sulaymān\(^ {150}\) go in with you?" He agreed to that. "Would you give him half the proceeds?" I asked, wanting him to remain avid and not refuse. He still agreed. I then said, "Last year Kaskar\(^ {151}\) yielded such and such, but this year will be many times more than last year’s yield. If I turn it over to you for the same impost as last year or with the right of stewardship, you will gain wealth beyond your wildest dreams."\(^ {152}\) "How can such wealth be mine?" Salamah asked. "You should go to Abū Muslim, meet with him, and talk to him tomorrow," I replied. "Ask him to include, among the petitions he will present, one to the effect that you be appointed there with what it yielded last year. When he arrives, the Commander of the Faithful intends to make him responsible for matters lying beyond his own sphere,\(^ {153}\) so he should feel at ease and put his mind to rest." Salamah asked, "How can I get the Commander of the Faithful to give me permission to meet Abū Muslim?" I told him

---

148. For the vizier’s stratagem, see ibid., 112, and Ibn al-Athir, Kamīl, V, 474.
149. Ṭabarî, III, 141, cites him as governor of the Euphrates district and al-Ubullah in 142.
150. Some sources say that Abū Sulaymān, the father of both Abū Ayyūb and Ḥātim, was the mawla of the Umayyad caliph ’Umar b. ‘Abd al-‘Azīz (99–101/717–20). Ṣafarî, Wāfi, XV, 375. While Ṭabarî, III, 370, notes that a brother was arrested in 153 along with Abū Ayyūb, his name is not given.
151. Kaskar was a fertile district centered around the Tigris city of Wāsīt. Ef, s.v. (M. Streck and J. Lassner); Yaquṭ, Buldān, IV, 461; Le Strange, Lands, 38–43; Cornu, Répertoires, 29.
152. Fa-in dafa’tuhā ilayka bi-qabālatihā ‘aman awwalaww bi-al-amānah. The qabālah contract was a form of tax farming whereby an individual assured the central treasury of a particular sum and could then pocket the difference between that and the amount actually collected. Ef, s.v. Kabāla (C. Cahen); Cahen, “Fiscalité,” 136–52; Donner, “Islamic State,” 292. For this meaning of amānah, see Dozy, Supplément, I, 39.
that I would ask permission for him, and then I went to Abū Jaʿfar and told him the whole story. The caliph told me to call for Salmah. He said, “Abū Ayyūb has requested permission on your behalf; do you want to go and meet Abū Muslim?” “Yes,” said Salmah. The caliph replied, “Then I grant you permission. Declare to Abū Muslim our salutation and inform him of our longing to see him.” Salmah set off. He met Abū Muslim and said, “The Commander of the Faithful has the highest possible opinion of you.” This cheered Abū Muslim, who had been in very low spirits before then. What Salmah said when he reached Abū Muslim made him overjoyed. He believed him and continued to be happy until he arrived.

Abū Ayyūb: When Abū Muslim drew near to al-Mada’in, the Commander of the Faithful ordered the populace to go out and meet him. He arrived in the evening. I entered the presence of the Commander of the Faithful while he was on a prayer mat in his tent and said, “This man is arriving later this evening; what do you intend to do?” Abū Jaʿfar said, “I intend to kill him as soon as I set eyes on him.” “I adjure you by God,” I said, “that his forces are entering [the city] along with him and they know what he has done. If he enters your presence but does not come out, I shall not feel safe from calamity. Rather, when he enters, give him permission to leave. When he comes to you tomorrow, you will have made your decision.” I wanted only to defer the event with that speech, simply because of my fear, for him and for us all, of retaliation from Abū Muslim’s comrades. Thus in the evening Abū Muslim came to Abū Jaʿfar and made salutation but remained standing before him. Abū Jaʿfar said, “Go away, ʿAbd al-Rahmān, and make yourself comfortable. Go and bathe, for travel is a dirty business. Then come to me in the morning.” Abū Muslim departed and everybody dispersed. When he had gone, the Commander of the Faithful reproached me unfairly, “When


155. Abū Muslim’s given name (ism) is recorded as either ‘Abd al-Rahmān b. Muslim or ‘Abd al-Rahmān b. ‘Uthmān. Safādī, Wāfi, VI, 48; Ibn Khallikān, Waṣf, III, 145.
will I ever get a chance with him like this—standing on his two feet right before my eyes! I don’t know what could happen tonight!” I left and returned in the morning. When he saw me, the caliph said, “You whoreson fellow, no welcome for you! Yesterday you restrained me from him. By God, I did not sleep a wink all night.” He reviled me so much that I feared that he would order me killed. Then he told me to summon `Uthmān b. Nahik, which I did. Abū Ja`far said, “`Uthmān, what do you think of the Commander of the Faithful’s troubles?” “Commander of the Faithful,” he replied, “I am merely your servant. By God, were you to order me to lean on my sword until it came out of my back, I would do so.” Abū Ja`far said, “How would you take it if I were to command you to kill Abū Muslim?” For a while `Uthmān was silent, not saying a word. Abū Ayyūb asked, “What’s the matter; why aren’t you saying anything?” His voice weak, `Uthmān answered, “I would kill him.”

Abū Ja`far said, “Hurry off and bring back four of the toughest officers of the guards.” `Uthmān set off, but when he got near the tent flap Abū Ja`far called out to him, “`Uthmān, `Uthmān, come back here.” When he had come back in, the caliph said, “Sit down and send for the guards you trust; have four of them present themselves.” `Uthmān said to one of his servants, “Run and call Shabib b. Wāj, Abū Hanīfah, and two others.” They came in and the Commander of the Faithful repeated to them more or less

---


159. Abū Ḥanīfah Ḥarb b. Qays was appointed head of the guard for Mūsā b. al-Mahdī shortly after al-Mahdī’s accession to the caliphate. In 171 he acted as Hārūn al-Rashīd’s agent in the assassination of Abū Hurayrah Muhammad b. Furrūkh. Tabarī, III, 456, 606. For the symbolic use of four, see Rescher, “Zahl
what he had said to Uthmān, and they agreed to kill Abū Muslim. He said, "Station yourselves behind the tent flap; when I clap my hands, come out and kill him."

He sent one messenger after another to Abū Muslim. They returned to say that he had already mounted. A servant came to the caliph to say that he had gone to ʿĪsā b. Mūsā. I said, "Commander of the Faithful, should I go out and make the rounds in the camp to see what people are saying, whether anyone has any suspicions or has said anything?" He agreed, so I left, but Abū Muslim ran into me as he was coming in. He smiled and I greeted him and he then went inside. I came back only to see him sprawled out before me, there had been no waiting for my return. Abū al-Jahm came in and when he saw him slain said, "To God we belong and to Him is our return." I went up to Abū al-Jahm and said to him, "You ordered his murder as soon as he revolted, yet when he is killed you have this to say?" By speaking so I brought a distracted man back to alertness. He said something to make up for what had come from his mouth and then asked, "Commander of the Faithful, should I not keep people away?" "Most certainly!" said Abū Jaʿfar, and Abū al-Jahm added, "Order fittings to be taken to another one of these pavilions of yours." He commanded carpets brought out as though he intended to prepare another pavilion for Abū Muslim. Abū al-Jahm then went out and said to the crowd, "Go away now; the Amir wants to take his repose with the Commander of the Faithful." They saw the furnishings being transported and, assuming Abū al-Jahm to be telling the truth, they turned away. Then in the evening they came, and Abū Jaʿfar ordered rewards paid to them [i.e. Abū Muslim’s army commanders]. He gave Abū Ishāq 100,000 [dirhams].

Abū Ayyūb: The Commander of the Faithful said to me, "Abū Muslim came in, and I reproved and even reviled him. Uthmān struck him but it did nothing. Shabīb b. Wāj and his comrades came out and beat him, and he fell down. While they were beat-

\[\text{Vierzig.}\] More recently, Conrad, "Conquest of Arwād," 355, has discussed "the notion of a graded elite of righteous warriors for the cause of God, as symbolized in the number four and its multiples by ten."

160. Abū Jahm b. ʿĀṭiyah. See Jahshiyārī, Wuzarah, 112.
ing him, he yelled "Pardon!" "Son of a whore," I said, "Pardon? When swords have finally beaten you by turns!" Then I said, "Butcher him" and they did so.\footnote{Theophanes, \textit{Chronicle}, 118, where the caliph is asserted to have "killed him with his own hands."}

According to `Alī—Abū Ḥafṣ al-Azdi: I was with Abū Muslim when Abū Isḥāq came to him from Abū Ja`far with letters from the Banū Hāšim and said, "I disagree with you about the people's attitude. They all think of you as due just what the caliph is due, and they recognize how mindful God has been of them by giving you [to them as a leader]." Abū Muslim went on to al-Madā'in but left Abū Naṣr in charge of his baggage train, saying, "Stay here until a letter from me reaches you." "Arrange a sign between us," said Abū Naṣr, "by which I can recognize that the letter is from you." He replied, "If my letter reaches you sealed with half an impression, then I have written it. But if it reaches you with the whole signet, then I have neither written nor sealed it." When Abū Muslim drew near al-Madā'in, one of his army commanders met him, greeted him, and said to him, "Do what I say and go back; if the caliph lays eyes on you, he is going to kill you!" Abū Muslim replied, "I have now drawn near the people, and I am reluctant to turn back." He arrived in al-Madā'in at the head of 3,000 men but left the bulk of his host behind in Hulwān. He presented himself before Abū Ja`far, and the caliph ordered him to withdraw for that day. He tried to see him in the morning, but Abū al-Khaṣib met him and said, "The Commander of the Faithful is busy, be patient for a bit until you can enter alone." He went to where īsā b. Mūsā was lodged—he was fond of īsā—and īsā invited him to break his fast with him. The Commander of the Faithful told Rabī',\footnote{Abū Faḍl al-Rabī’ b. Yūnus b. Muḥammad b. ʿAbdallāh b. Abī Farwah (d. 170/786–87), who served each of the first four ʿAbbāsid caliphs, was first chamberlain and then vizier under Abū Ja`far. \textit{EFS}, s.v. [A. S. Atiya]; Zambaur, \textit{Manuel}, 6; Sourdel, \textit{Vizirat ʿabbāside}, 87–90; Jahshiyārī, \textit{Wuzdar'}, 123–24; Šafādi, \textit{Wāfi}, XIV, 84–85; Dhahabī, \textit{Siyar}, VII, 335–36; Ibn Khallikān, \textit{Wafayāt}, II, 294–99.} who at that time was a servant in the employ of Abū al-Khaṣib, "Go and see Abū Muslim but don't let anyone know. Say to him, 'Marzūq [Abū al-Khaṣib] says if you want to see the Commander of the Faithful in private, then hurry.'" Abū Muslim stood and mounted up. īsā said to him,
"Don’t be in a hurry to enter until I can be there to go in with you." Ḥisā, however, lingered over his ablutions,163 and Abū Muslim went ahead and entered. Thus he was killed before Ḥisā arrived. Ḥisā came after Abū Muslim was wrapped in a cloak164 and said, "Where is Abū Muslim?" When Abū Ja’far responded that he was wrapped in the cloak,165 Ḥisā exclaimed, "‘To God we belong—’" but the Caliph said, "Be silent! Your authority and status were achieved only today." Then he had Abū Muslim thrown into the Tigris.

According to Ḥalī—Abū Ḥafṣ: The Commander of the Faithful summoned Uthmān b. Nahik and four of the guards and said to them, "When I clap my hands, one against the other, then strike the enemy of God." Abū Muslim came into his presence, and Abū Ja’far said to him, "Tell me about two blades that you acquired with the goods of Abdallāh b. Ḥalī." Abū Muslim responded, "This is one of the two, which I’m wearing." "Show it to me," said Abū Ja’far, so Abū Muslim unsheathed and handed it over. Abū Ja’far brandished the sword and then laid it under his cushion. He began to reprimand Abū Muslim, saying, "Tell me about your letter to Abū al-ᾀabbās where you forbid him to take unoccupied land (mawdūt).166 Did you want to teach us our religious duty!" Abū Muslim said, "I thought taking it was illicit, but he wrote to me and when his letter reached me I recognized that the Commander of the Faithful and his lineage are the mother lode of knowledge." Abū Ja’far said, "Tell me why you went ahead of me on the road [from Mecca]." Abū Muslim replied, "I didn’t think it would be good for our people to all be together at the same watering place, so I went on ahead in order to seek comfort [for all

---

163. The term used, al-wudū’, is that which acquired the technical connotation of the prescribed washings for minor impurities done immediately before the ritual prayer.
164. The ‘abā’ah, a common bedouin garment, was a short, sleeveless cloak. Ahsan, Social Life, 44–45; Dozy, Vêtements, 292–97.
165. The kisā’ was a large outer garment that doubled as a wrap or blanket. Ahsan, Social Life, 44; Dozy, Vêtements, 383–86.
166. Mawdūt connotes "dead land," i.e., land that has never been cultivated or that has been allowed to lie fallow. The schools of Islamic jurisprudence disagree about how the reclamation of such land can constitute a legitimate claim to ownership. EP, s.v. (A. -M. Delcambre). For the broader issue of the acquisition of landed property in the conquered territories, see Kister, “Land Property and Jihad.”
The Events of the Year 137

without crowding]." Abū Jaʿfar said, "At the time you learned of Abū al-ʿAbbās’s death, what about your remark to the one who suggested that you should return to me: 'We will move forward and see whomever we see.' You went on, neither staying put so that we could catch up with you nor returning to us." Abū Muslim responded, "I was prevented from doing so because, as I have told you, I had to look out for the necessary comforts of my people. I said we should go ahead to al-Kūfah; that could not be considered opposition on my part." Abū Jaʿfar said, "As for the slave girl of ʿAbdallāh b. ʿAli, did you intend to take her as your own?" Abū Muslim replied, "No, but I feared she would get lost, so I transported her in an enclosed litter, entrusting her care to someone who could protect her." Abū Jaʿfar asked, "What about your defiance of orders and your heading back to Khurasan?" Abū Muslim responded, "I was afraid that I might in some way have offended you, so I told myself that I would return to Khurasan and write to you with my apologies, to await that time when what was in your mind against me had departed." Abū Jaʿfar said, "By God, I have never seen a day like today. I swear you do nothing but increase my anger." He clapped his hands, and ʿUthmān came out of concealment with his comrades to attack Abū Muslim and struck him until they had killed him.

According to ʿAlī—Yazīd b. Usayd: The Commander of the Faithful said, "I reproached ʿAbd al-Rahmān, saying, 'What about the booty that you collected in Harrān?' He said, 'I disbursed it and gave it to the army for their seed and land reclamation,' I said, 'What about your recalcitrant return to Khurasān?' Abū Muslim said, 'Stop this interrogation! I am not about to fear anyone but God.' I became angry and heaped abuse upon him. Then the guards came in and killed him."

Other sources than those I have already cited report as follows on the matter of Abū Muslim: On the day he was killed, having been summoned, Abū Muslim went and asked ʿĪsā b. Mūsā to ride along with him. ʿĪsā, however, said to him, "Go on ahead, as you are under my protection." Abū Muslim entered Abū Jaʿfar's pavilion when the latter had already ordered ʿUthmān b. Nahik, the captain of his guards, to prepare Shabib b. Wāj al-Marwar-
rūdhī, one of the guards, and Abū Ḥanīfah Ḥarb b. Qays for the deed. "When I clap my hands," Abū Jaʿfar told them, "go to it." He then gave permission for Abū Muslim to enter. When Abū Muslim asked Muḥammad, the Bukhārī gatekeeper, how things stood, Muḥammad replied, "Everything’s fine, but the Amir should give me his sword." "This is not the way I’m used to being treated," Abū Muslim retorted, to which Muḥammad replied, "What are you worried about?" Abū Muslim then complained about it to Abū Jaʿfar, who responded, "May God rebuke whoever did that to you!" But then Abū Jaʿfar began to upbraid Abū Muslim, saying, "Were you not the one who wrote to me, putting your own name first, and were you not also the one who wrote to me asking for Aminah bt. `Ali in marriage, claiming to be the son of Salīt b. ‘Abdallāh b. ‘Abbās?" Furthermore, what induced you to kill Sulaymān b. Kathīr despite his importance for our mission, he being one of our chiefs (nugabā’) well before we included you in any part of this affair?" Abū Muslim replied, "He had insubordination in mind and disobeyed me, so I killed him." "But in our view his situation was as it should be," al-Manṣūr said, "yet you killed him and you disobeyed me, thus putting yourself in conflict with me. May God kill me if I do not..."
The Events of the Year 137

kill you!” Then he struck Abū Muslim with a staff, and Shabib and Ḥarb came forth and killed him. That was on the 24th of Shaʿbān in the year 137.171 Al-Manṣūr recited:

You thought that the debt would not be paid.
Pay now in full measure, Abū Mujrim (criminal).
You are given to drink a cup which you once passed round
More bitter to the throat than the wild gourd.172

The allusion is to the fact that in his time of authority and his battles Abū Muslim had killed about 600,000 in cold blood.

Another source: When Abū Jaʿfar chastized him, saying, “You did such and such and you did thus and so,” Abū Muslim rejoined, “Such things should not be said to me after the trials I have undergone and the prowess I have displayed!” “Son of an impure woman,” exclaimed Abū Jaʿfar, “by God, were a slave girl in your stead, she could have performed as well. You did what you did only within the ambit of our power and by our pleasure. Left to yourself, you could not trim a wick. Were you not the one who wrote to me, putting your own name first, and were you not also the one who wrote to me asking for Aminah bt. `Ali in marriage, claiming to be the son of Saliḥ b. ‘Abdallāh b. ‘Abbās? For a motherless wretch, you’ve made quite a difficult ascent!” Abū Muslim took the caliph’s hand, stroked and kissed it, and apologized to him.

Another source: ʿUthmān b. Nahik struck the first blow against Abū Muslim, hitting him lightly with his sword and doing no more than sever his sword straps. Yet Abū Muslim turned his attention to the severed straps,173 so Shabib b. Wāj struck at his foot, while the rest of Shabib’s cohort fell on him in turn until they had killed him.174 All the while al-Manṣūr shouted at the slayers, “Keep hitting! May God cut your hands off [if you don’t]!”

172. Tabari, Addenda et Emendanda, p. DCCXXVIII, gives the author of these lines as Abū ʿAṭāʾ al-Sindi [d. 158/774], a poet who was apparently out of favor during al-Manṣūr’s reign. El, s.v. [A. Schaade]; GAL, I, 63, S I, 98; GAS, II, 471–72.
173. Fa-ʾtaqala biḥā. Tabari, Glossarium, s.v. ʾaqala.
One source recounts that as the first blow struck him, Abū Muslim cried, “Commander of the Faithful, spare me for your enemy’s sword.” “May God not spare me if I do,” retorted Abū Ja’far, “for what enemy have I more treacherous than you?”

Another source: `Īsā b. Mūsā arrived after Abū Muslim had been killed and asked, “Where is Abū Muslim, Commander of the Faithful?” “He was here just now,” replied Abū Ja’far. `Īsā continued, “Commander of the Faithful, well you recognize his obedience, his sincere counsel, and the good opinion Imam Ibrahim had of him.”175 “What a fool you are!” retorted Abū Ja’far. “By God, I know on this earth no foe more hostile to you than he [was]. Look, there he is, over there in the rug,” at which `Īsā intoned, “To God we belong and to Him is our return.” Now as `Īsā had such an opinion of Abū Muslim, al-Manṣūr said to him, “May God cast him from your heart. Did you have authority or sovereignty or the power to command and prohibit in conjunction with Abū Muslim?”

Abū Ja’far then sent for Ja’far b. Hanzalah.176 Ja’far entered, and the caliph said to him, “What have you to say about Abū Muslim?” “Commander of the Faithful,” Ja’far responded, “if you have taken a single hair from his head, then kill, kill, kill.” “God prosper you!” said al-Manṣūr and ordered him to stand up and look at Abū Muslim’s corpse. Ja’far said, “From this day, Commander of the Faithful, will your caliphate be reckoned.” Then permission was asked for Ismā’il b. ‘Alī to enter, and he said, “Commander of the Faithful, last night I dreamt that you slaughtered a ram, and that I trampled it with my feet.” “Abū al-Hasan, your eye was then asleep,” said Abū Ja’far, “now stand up and verify your dream; God has indeed slain the sinner.” Ismā’il went over to where Abū Muslim lay and stamped on him.

Al-Manṣūr was then of a mind to kill Abū Iṣḥāq, the captain of Abū Muslim’s guards, and Abū Naṣr Mālik, prefect of police under Abū Muslim, but Abū al-Jahm spoke with him, saying,

175. Wa-ra’ya al-imām Ibrāhīm kānā fihi. Ṭabarī, Glossarium, s.v. ra’ā.
176. Ja’far b. Ḥanẓalah al-Bahrānī was a Syrian commander who fought for the Umayyads but later achieved prominence as one of the close associates (ṣahābāh) of al-Manṣūr. His strategic advice was sought in the actions taken against Muhammad b. ‘Abdallāh and his brother, Ibrāhīm. Ṭabarī, III, 223–24; Crone, Slaves, 67, 249; Ibn al-Kalbī, Jamharah, II, 253.
The Events of the Year 137

"Commander of the Faithful, Abū Muslim's army is your army; it is you who commanded them to obey him, and they did so." Al-Manṣūr therefore summoned Abū Ishāq. When he entered the caliph's presence but had not yet seen Abū Muslim, Abū Ja'far said to him, "You have always been in close agreement with the enemy of God, Abū Muslim, whatever he decided to do, [haven't you?]." At this Abū Ishāq recoiled and began to twist both right and left in fear of Abū Muslim. "Say what you have in mind," continued al-Manṣūr, "for God has slain the sinner"; and he ordered Abū Muslim's badly hacked body to be brought forth. Seeing it, Abū Ishāq sank to the ground in a prolonged prostration. Al-Manṣūr told him to raise his head and speak, which he did, saying, "Praise God, who today has placed me in your safekeeping. By God, from the time I became his associate, there was never a single day when I felt safe from him. On no day did I ever come to him without having made my will, and without being dressed for the grave and embalmed." He then lifted his outer garments and beneath them he actually wore new linen garments impregnated with embalming aromatics. When Abū Ja'far saw this, he felt sorry for him and said, "Assume, now, the duty of obedience to your caliph and praise God who has delivered you from that evil-doer." Finally, Abū Ja'far told him to send away all the people who were around him.

The caliph then summoned Mālik b. al-Haytham178 and spoke to him in similar fashion. Mālik apologized to him with the defense that the caliph had ordered him to obey Abū Muslim, that people had served Abū Muslim and had been quick to satisfy him179 only with the caliph's approval and, further, that he had been in the faithful service of the 'Abbāsids [long] before he knew Abū Muslim. Abū Ja'far accepted Mālik's apology and laid upon him the same injunction that he had given Abū Ishāq about sending Abū Muslim's army on their way.

Abū Ja'far sent splendid rewards to a number of Abū Muslim's army commanders and gave his entire army enough to win them over. But Abū Muslim's close associates had second thoughts,

---

178. I.e., Abū Naṣr.
179. Wa-khaffa lahu al-nāsu bi-mardātihī. Ţabari, Glossarium, s.v. khaffa.
saying, "We sold our master for dirhams."\textsuperscript{180} Abū Jaʿfar, therefore, called for Abū Ishāq and said, "I swear by God, if they sever but a single one of my tent ropes, I shall have your neck and then wage all-out war against them." Abū Ishāq thus went out to the malcontents and cried, "Get out of here, you dogs!"

According to 'Ali—Abū Ḥafṣ al-Azdi: After Abū Muslim was killed, Abū Jaʿfar wrote a letter to Abū Naṣr, ostensibly coming from Abū Muslim, commanding him to load up his baggage and whatever he had left behind in his charge and to come on ahead. He sealed the letter with Abū Muslim's seal, but when Abū Naṣr saw that the impress of the seal was whole, he knew that Abū Muslim had not written the letter. Saying to himself, "So you've done it, then," he went back down to Hamadhān\textsuperscript{181} with the idea of making for Khurāsān. Abū Jaʿfar then wrote to Abū Naṣr appointing him to Shahrazūr\textsuperscript{182} and dispatched a messenger to him with the charge. After the messenger had left with the commission, news reached the caliph that Abū Naṣr had already set off for Khurāsān. Abū Jaʿfar, therefore, wrote to Zuhayr b. al-Turkī, then the governor of Hamadhān, saying, "If Abū Naṣr passes your way, arrest him." The letter reached Zuhayr quickly [i.e., ahead of the earlier one], while Abū Naṣr was still in Hamadhān, so Zuhayr seized him and imprisoned him in the castle. Now Zuhayr was a mawlā of the Khuzaʿah\textsuperscript{183} tribe [i.e., Abū Naṣr's tribe], and Abū Naṣr had a nephew on his mother's side, Ibrāhīm b. 'Arīf,\textsuperscript{184} to whom he now appealed, asking him, "Ibrāhīm, would you kill your own uncle?" "Never, by God!" answered Ibrāhīm. Zuhayr

\textsuperscript{180} Crone, \textit{Slaves}, 56, sees the relation of Abū Muslim and his men as an instance where "companionship and clientage almost converged." Abū al-ʿAbbās states that Abū Muslim's followers "prize him above their religious (dīniḥim) and worldly (dunyāhum) concerns." Ţabarī, III, 85.

\textsuperscript{181} Hamadhān, a city in central Iran in the province of al-jībāl, was the site of a long siege in the fight between the caliphs Maʿmūn and Amin. Ţabarī, III, 829; \textit{EI²}, s.v. [R. N. Frye]; Yāqūt, \textit{Buldān}, V, 410–17; Cornu, \textit{Répertoires}, 41; Le Strange, \textit{Lands}, 194–96, 227–30; Barthold, \textit{Geography of Iran}, 128–32.

\textsuperscript{182} Also in the province of al-jībāl, the ruins of Shahrazūr are found not far from the present-day border between Iran and Turkey. Yāqūt, \textit{Buldān}, III, 375–76; Cornu, \textit{Répertoires}, 44; Le Strange, \textit{Lands}, 190; Barthold, \textit{Geography of Iran}, 207–8.

\textsuperscript{183} Khuzaʿah b. Rabīʿah was an ancient Arabian tribe with multiple connections to Mecca, whose claims to Muḍarī descent have been contested. \textit{EI²}, s.v. [M. J. Kister]; Caskel, \textit{Ganjhatrat an-nasab}, I, 196, II, 35.

\textsuperscript{184} This is his only mention in Ţabarī, and he is not cited in the standard biographical sources.
then made his placatory appeal to İbrahim and confided, "I am under orders, and by God, though he is one of the dearest people in the world to me, there's no way I can refuse to do what the Commander of the Faithful orders. So, by God, if one of you so much as shoots an arrow [in his defense], I'll throw his head at you." Abū Ja'far then wrote another letter to Zuhayr: "If you have already taken Abū Naṣr into custody, then kill him." At this point the one charged with the caliph's commission to Abū Naṣr arrived with it, so out of his affection for him Zuhayr released him and Abū Naṣr left. One day later the letter about killing Abū Naṣr reached Zuhayr, who responded, "I received a letter with his commission, so I released him."

Abū Naṣr then came to Abū Ja'far, who said, "Did you advise Abū Muslim to go on to Khurāsān?" "Yes, Commander of the Faithful," Abū Naṣr replied. "I owed him both benefits and favors; he sought my counsel, and I gave him my best advice. If you treat me kindly, Commander of the Faithful, I would give counsel to you and gratitude." Thus Abū Ja'far forgave him. Later, on the day the Rāwandiyyah\textsuperscript{185} attacked, Abū Naṣr took charge of the castle gate, declaring, "Today I am the gatekeeper. No one shall enter the castle while I am alive." When Abū Ja'far asked the whereabouts of [Abū Naṣr] Mālik b. al-Haytham and was told about what he had done, the caliph saw that Abū Naṣr had indeed been sincere in his service.

Another source: When Abū Naṣr Mālik b. al-Haytham went on to Hamadhān, Abū Ja'far wrote to Zuhayr b. al-Turkī, saying, "God shall have your life blood if Mālik escapes you." Zuhayr, therefore, went to Mālik and said to him, "I have prepared a meal for you; would you not honor me by entering my house?" Mālik agreed to come. Zuhayr then armed forty men, whom he had handpicked, and placed them in the two rooms that opened on to the reception area that he had prepared. When Mālik entered, Zuhayr cried out, "Eat quickly, you blackguard!" Those forty men then burst in upon Mālik and bound him with fetters. Chains were put on his feet, and he sent him to al-Manṣūr. The latter treated him graciously, pardoned him, and installed him over al-Mawṣīl.

\textsuperscript{185} The account of this is given in year 141.
‘Abbāsid Authority Affirmed

In this year Sunbadh rebelled in Khurasan, seeking to avenge Abū Muslim.

The Episode of Sunbadh

It is said that this Sunbadh was a Zoroastrian, an inhabitant of a village called Ahan in the district of Naysabur, and that at the time of his coming on the scene his followers were of a considerable number. It is said he rebelled in anger at the killing of Abū Muslim, seeking to avenge him because he was one of Abū Muslim’s toadies. During his revolt, Sunbadh conquered Naysabur, Qumis, and al-Rayy and was dubbed ‘Fayruz the Isbahbadh.’ Upon reaching al-Rayy, he took possession of Abū Muslim’s storehouses, the latter having left his treasuries there when he departed to go to Abū [Jaʿfar] al-ʿAbbās. People from al-Jibal formed the greater part of Sunbadh’s associates. Abū

---


188. Al-Shahrastānī, al-Milal wa-al-nihal, I, 174, associates him with the Ghālīyyah, the “extremist” Shiʿi sects who were given different appellations: “In Ḩobān they were called al-Khurrāmiyyah and al-Kūdhiyyah, in Rayy they were called al-Muzdikīyyah [sic, but better, Mazdakiyyah] and al-Sunbādhiyyah.” For an earlier identification with al-Khurrāmiyyah, see Masʿūdī, Murūj, VI, 188. Laoust, Schismes, 62–63, includes Sunbadh in his category “les abū musliyim.”

189. Given as “Ahrawānāh” in Ibn al-Aṭīr, Kāmil, V, 481, which may be Ahar/Ahr. See Yaʿqūt, Buldān, I, 283–84; Cornu, Répertoires, 133; Le Strange, Lands, 169.

190. The city of Nishāpur was a major site in the province of Khurāsān. El¹, s.v. [E. Honigmann]; Yaʿqūt, Buldān, V, 331–33; Cornu, Répertoires, 132; Le Strange, Lands, 382–88.

191. Qūmis was a small province that lay between the Alburz chain and the Great Desert. El², s.v. Qūmis [C. E. Bosworth]; Cornu, Répertoires, 142; Yaʿqūt, Buldān, IV, 414–15; Le Strange, Lands, 364–68.

192. Ispahbadh is a Sasanid military title that survived well into Islamic period. Morony, Iraq, 28 and passim, translates it as “military governor.” El², s.v. [C. E. Bosworth].

193. Al-Jībāl was the mountainous province that came to be called Ḥaṭṭa Ḥaḍami. El¹, s.v. [L. Lockhart]; Yaʿqūt, Buldān, II, 99; Le Strange, Lands, 185–231.
Ja'far sent Jahwar b. Marrār al-'Ijli against them with 10,000 troops. The opposing forces met between Hamadhān and al-Rayy on the edge of the desert (mafāzah). They fought, and Jahwar put Sunbādḥ to flight, killing about 60,000 of his followers in the rout and taking their children and women prisoner. Subsequently, Sunbādḥ was killed between Ṭabaristān and Qūmis by Lūnān al-Ṭabārī. Al-Manṣūr then made Wandāhumz b. al-Farrukhān Iṣbahbādḥ of Ṭabaristān and crowned him. Seventy nights elapsed between Sunbādḥ's revolt and his murder.

In this year Mulabbīd b. Ḥarmalāh al-Shaybānī came out in revolt. He mounted a Khāriji insurrection in the Jazīrah region, at which point the frontier troops in the Jazīrah, said to number 1,000, advanced against him. Mulabbīd fought and routed them, killing an unknown number. Then the frontier army stationed at al-Mawšīl moved against him, and he routed them. Next it was the turn of Yazīd b. Ḥātim al-Muhallabī, but after a fierce battle between them, Mulabbīd defeated him.

194. For coinage associated with Jahwar, see George C. Miles, The Numismatic History of Rayy (New York, 1938), 22–23.
195. Shaban, Islamic History, II, 13, suggests that so large a force was necessary because this revolt "threatened to cut off the vital northern route between Khurasān and the west." For use of the figure 10,000 as a topos of magnitude, see Conrad, "Conquest of Arwād," 354.
196. Some sources identify the site as a village called Jarjānānābī. Rekaya, "Khurram-Dīn," 27.
197. Ibrāhīm's edition, VII, 495: "Sunbādḥ was put to flight."
198. Daniel, Khurasan, 138, reads this as Lūzān. According to Ibn Isfandiyār, Sunbādḥ was killed by the Iṣbahbādḥ's cousin for responding to him discourteously. Ibn Isfandiyār, History of Ṭabaristān, 117.
199. Daniel, Khurasan, 129, gives this as Hurmuzd.
201. Ṭabārī, Addenda et Emendanda, p. DCCXXVIII, for this vocalization.
202. For other accounts, see Azdi, Ta'rikh al-Mawsil, 166; Balādhuri, Ansāb al-ashrāf, III, 248–50; Ibn al-Athīr, Kāmil, V, 482; Ibn Kathīr, Bidāyah, X, 73; Caskel, Ḥanharat an-nasāb, I, 149, II, 427.
203. The verb used here, ḥakkama, denotes the Khāriji assertion that judgment is reserved to God alone. According to the heresiographical literature, the earliest Khawārij were known as the Muḥākkimāt. Shahrāstānī, al-Mīlāl wa-al-nilāh, I, 115–18; Baghdādī, al-Faṛq bayna al-firaq, 51–55.
204. Ibn al-Athīr, Kāmil, V, 482, specifies this as 1,000 cavalry.
`Abbasid Authority Affirmed

Mulabbid seized one of Yazid's slave girls, who had become his concubine, and one of his army commanders was killed. Then Abū Ja'far dispatched against Mulabbid his mawłā, al-Muhalhil b. Ṣafwān, with 2,000 of his best soldiers, but Mulabbid put them to flight and plundered their camp. The caliph next sent Nizār, one of the Khurāsānī commanders, against him, but Mulabbid killed him as well and put his comrades to flight. Then the caliph dispatched against him Ziyād b. Mushkān with a large number of men. Mulabbid confronted and routed them as well. Trying again, the caliph sent Ṣāliḥ b. Ṣubayḥ off with a dense host of an army and numerous cavalry and equipment, yet Mulabbid sent them fleeing. Next Ḥumayd b. Qaḥṭabah, then the governor of the Jazīrah, set out against him, but Mulabbid confronted and confounded him. Ḥumayd took refuge from Mulabbid in a fortified position and gave him 100,000 dirhams on condition that he leave him alone.

Al-Waqīdī claimed that Mulabbid's emergence and Khārīji proclamation occurred in the year 138.

In this year the troops had no summer campaign, because the reigning power was occupied with the war against Sunbadh.

As al-Waqīdī and others concur, Ismā‘īl b. 'Ali b. 'Abdallāh b. 'Abbās, then governor of al-Mawsil, led the Pilgrimage in this year.

Governing Medina was Ziyād b. 'Ubaydallāh, while al-‘Abbās b. ‘Abdallāh b. Ma‘bad was governor of Mecca. Al-‘Abbās died at

---

206. According to Tabari, III, 494, 501, al-Muhalhil b. Ṣafwān eventually served as governor of Jurjān, a post from which he was dismissed in 163. A street (sikkah) on the west side of Baghdad was named after him. Lassner, Topography, 70, 256.


208. Identified as a mawld of the Kindah tribe, Ṣāliḥ b. Ṣubayḥ was governor of Armenia from 133 to 134. Baladhuri, Ansāb al-ashraf, III, 248; Tabari, III, 75, 81; Zambaur, Manuel, 178.

209. The eventual defeat and death of Mulabbid is described under year 138.


211. See Brooks, “Byzantines and Arabs”, 732.
the conclusion of the Pilgrimage ceremonies, so Ismā‘īl combined al-‘Abbās’s governorate with that of Ziyād b. ‘Ubaydallāh, and Abū Ja‘far confirmed the latter’s jurisdiction over Mecca. In this year the governor of al-Kūfah was ‘Īsā b. Mūsā; and of al-Baṣrah and its subdistricts, Sulaymān b. ‘Alī, while ‘Umar b. ‘Āmīr al-Sulāmī was in charge of its judiciary. Abū Dāwūd Khālid b. Ibrāhīm was governor of Khurāsān, and Ḥumayd b. Qaḥṭabah of the Jazīrah. The governor of Egypt was Šālīh b. ‘Alī b. ‘Abdallāh b. ‘Abbās.212

212. Although he was also governor of Syria, Sourdell, “Syrie,” 158–59, notes that in this earlier period Ṭabari does not include Syrian governors in his listings.
The
Events of the Year

138

[JUNE 16, 755–JUNE 4, 756]

Among the events of this year was the violent entry,\(^{213}\) by Constantine\(^{214}\) the tyrant of Byzantium, into Malatyah,\(^{215}\) overwhelming its populace and razing its walls but granting amnesty to its inhabitants, both combatants and children.\(^{216}\)

Among the events was also the raid\(^{217}\)—al-Waqidi calls it a “summer campaign”—that al-`Abbās b. Muḥammad b. `Alī b.

---

\(^{213}\) For other accounts, see Fragmenta historicorum, I, 224–25; Agapius, Kitāb al-`unwān, 376; Ibn al-Athīr, Kāmil, v, 486; and Ibn Kathīr, Bidāyah, X, 73. Ya`qūbī, Historiae, II, 435, records on attack against Malāya by Constantine in 133, as does Theophanes, Chronicle, 116, while Azdī, Ta’rikh al-Mawṣil, 171, sets the event in 139.

\(^{214}\) Caetani, Cronographia generale, 143, gives the name as Constantine Co-pronymus.

\(^{215}\) Also Malatīn or Malatıyah, this was a town in eastern Anatolia, near the western Euphrates, which became one of the frontier fortresses during the Umayyad period. Yaqūt, Buldān, V, 192–93; Cornu, Répertoires, 19; El², s.v. [E. Honigmann]; Le Strange, Lands, 120–21; El¹, s.v. al-Thughūr [E. Honigmann].

\(^{216}\) According to Baladhūrī, Futūḥ, 199, the Muslim inhabitants were expelled.

\(^{217}\) For other accounts, see Fragmenta historicorum, I, 225; Khalīfah b. Khayyāt, Ta’rikh, 444; Ya’qūbī, Historiae, II, 470; Azdī, Ta’rikh al-Mawṣil, 171 [under the year 139]; Ibn al-Athīr, Kāmil, v, 486; Ibn Khaldūn, ‘Ibar, X, 73.
The Events of the Year 138

‘Abdallāh b. al-‘Abbās was with Sāliḥ b. ‘Alī b. ‘Abdallāh. Sāliḥ rewarded him with 40,000 dinārs. ‘Īsā b. ‘Alī b. ‘Abdallāh went out with them; so Sāliḥ gave him 40,000 dinārs too. Sāliḥ b. ‘Alī rebuilt what the leader of the Byzantines had destroyed in Malatya.

Some sources say that the raiding expedition against Malatya made by Sāliḥ and al-‘Abbās occurred in the year 139.

In this year ‘Abdallāh b. ‘Alī, who was then residing in al-Baṣrah with his brother Sulaymān b. ‘Alī, rendered the oath of allegiance to Abu Jaʿfar.

In this year Jahwar b. Mariq al-‘Ijli renounced his allegiance to al-Manṣūr.

The reason for that mentioned in the sources is as follows: When Jahwar put Sunbadh to flight, he took possession of the contents of his camp, including the stored treasures that Abu Muslim had left behind in al-Rayy. Then Jahwar failed to forward these things to Abu Jaʿfar and, fearing the consequences, he turned outright renegade. Abu Jaʿfar then sent Muḥammad b. al-Ashʿath al-Khuzaʿī against him with a huge force. Muḥammad engaged Jahwar, and they waged a hard-fought battle. With Jahwar were...
Abbasid Authority Affirmed

the elite of the Persian cavalry, Ziyād and al-Ishtākhānji, yet Jahwar and his confederates were routed, with many of them being killed. Ziyād and al-Ishtākhānji were taken prisoner, but Jahwar escaped and managed to get to Adharbayjān. Some time later he was arrested in Isbādhrū and killed.

In this year the Khārijite, al-Mulabbid, was slain.

How al-Mulabbid Came to Be Killed

It is said that when al-Mulabbid had bested Ḥumayd b. Qaḥṭabah, and Ḥumayd, in turn, had taken refuge from al-Mulabbid, Abū Jaʿfar sent against him ʿAbd al-ʿAzīz b. ʿAbd al-Rahmān, the brother of ʿAbd al-Jabbār b. ʿAbd al-Rahmān, in conjunction with Ziyād b. Mushkān. Al-Mulabbid waylaid him with 100 cavalry in such a way that when ʿAbd al-ʿAzīz met up with him, those lying in ambush came forth and routed him, killing the greater part of his confederates. At this Abū Jaʿfar dispatched against him Khāzīm b. Khuzaymah with about 8,000 men from Marw al-Rūdī. Khāzīm marched forth as far as al-Mawsīl, where he encamped, from there he sent some of his associates forward toward Balad along with the pioneer units.

---

222. Ṭabari, Addenda et Emendanda, p. DCCXXVIII. Yaqūt, Buldān, I, 196, cites an Ashtākhawst near Marw and an Ishtīkhān in Samarqand. For the latter, see Le Strange, Lands, 466.
223. Isbīdhrūd or Sabīdhrūd, more commonly Safīd-Rūd, was the name of a river in southeastern Adharbayjān. Yaqūt, Buldān, I, 172–73; Cornu, Répertoires, 141; Le Strange, Lands, 169–70.
224. According to Baladhūrī, Ansāb al-ashrāf, III, 247–48, the governor of Adharbayjān, Yazīd b. Hātim, gave a guarantee of safe-conduct to Jahwar, but the guarantee was transgressed and Jahwar was killed. Yazīd then sent Jahwar’s head and the heads of his assassins to al-Manṣūr.
225. For other accounts see Fragmenta historicorum, I, 225; Baladhūrī, Ansāb al-ashrāf, III, 248–50; Ibn al-Athīr, Kāmil, V, 485–86; Ibn Kathīr, Bidāyah, X, 74; Agapius, Kitāb al-ʿunwān, 376.
226. This continues the account begun by Ṭabari at III, 120.
227. ʿAbd al-ʿAzīz b. ʿAbd al-Rahmān al-Azdi was a governor of al-Baṣrah under al-Manṣūr and brother of the renegade Khurāsānī governor whose defeat is described under the year 141. Baladhūrī, Ansāb al-ashrāf, III, 230, 257; Crone, Slaves, 173.
228. See note 109.
229. See note 77.
230. Ṭabari, Addenda et Emendanda, p. DCCXXIX. Balad (Balāṭ) was a city on the Tigris northwest of al-Mawsīl. Cornu, Répertoires, 16; Yaqūt, Buldān, I, 484–85; Le Strange, Lands, 99, 125; Dussaud, Topographie, 482, 484, 500.
This advance party went on to Balad, where they dug trenches and set up booths [aswāq] for him. News of that reached al-Mulabbid, so he came forth and encamped at Balad in the trench that Khāzim’s diggers had prepared. When Khāzim learned of that, he went out to a heavily fortified spot on the outskirts of al-Mawṣil and set up camp there. Hearing of this, al-Mulabbid crossed the Tigris from Balad and headed for Khāzim on the other side going toward al-Mawṣil. When news of that reached Khāzim as well as Ismāʿīl b. ʿAlī, the governor of al-Mawṣil, the latter ordered Khāzim to come back from his encampment [on the outskirts] so that he could cross by the bridge in al-Mawṣil. Khāzim, however, forebore doing so, preferring to make a bridge from his camp site and thereby cross [i.e., over the ditch; see below] to al-Mulabbid.

Naḍalah b. Nuʿaym b. Khazim b. ʿAbdallāh al-Nahshali was in command of Khazim’s vanguard and scouts, while the right flank was headed by Zuhayr b. Muḥammad al-ʿĀmīrī and the left by Abū Ḥammād al-Abraṣ, the mawlā of the Banū Sulaym. Khazim himself marched with the center. He kept up with al-Mulabbid and his confederates until evening fell, whereupon they took opposing positions for the night. On Wednesday morning, al-Mulabbid and his men decamped, heading for the district of ʿHzazzah. Khazim and his troops continued to keep level with them until night fell, and they resumed once more on Thursday. Al-Mulabbid and his men kept moving as if intend-
ing to escape from Khâzîm. At this, Khâzîm and his confederates marched out in their tracks, leaving behind the trench equipped with caltrops, which Khâzîm had dug against al-Mulâbbîd and his men. When Khâzîm’s force abandoned their trench, al-Mulâbbîd and his troops whirled around to attack them. Seeing that, Khâzîm threw down the caltrops in front of al-Mulâbbîd and his confederates, who then attacked Khâzîm, rolled up his right flank, and did the same to the left. Finally, they reached the center, commanded by Khâzîm himself. As he realized that, Khâzîm shouted to his men, “To the ground, to the ground!” The troops dismounted, as did al-Mulâbbîd and his forces. The latter hamstrung their mounts, and then the opposing forces flailed away with their swords until the swords were broken. At this point Khâzîm commanded Naḍâlah b. Nu‘aym, “When the dust rises and we can no longer see each other, you and your men return to your horses and remount. Then start shooting arrows.” Ibn Nu‘aym did as he was ordered, while Khâzîm’s troops fell back from the right all the way to the left flank. They then rained arrows on al-Mulâbbîd and his confederates, killing al-Mulâbbîd along with 800 of the men who had dismounted. (About 300 had been killed before they dismounted.) The rest fled, but Naḍâlah pursued them and killed another 150 men.

In this year the Pilgrimage was led by al-Fâḍl b. Šâliḥ b. ‘Ali b. ‘Abbâs,239 as both al-Wâqîḍî and others have reported. It is also said that Ibn Šâliḥ left his father in Syria as a simple pilgrim, but while he was on the road, his commissioned responsibility for the Pilgrimage ceremonies and for leading the Pilgrimage reached him, so he went on through Medina and entered the state of consecration (iḥrām)240 from there on.241

238. İbrâhîm’s edition, VII, 499, omits the second al-ard without textual citation.
239. Ţabârî, II, 1716, III, 466, 470, 484, 491, dates the birth of this cousin of al-Mansûr to 122/739-40 and notes that he became governor of the Jazîrah in 159/775-76 and was removed from that position in 161/777-78. Kennedy, Early Abbasid Caliphate, 67, 75; Lassner, Shaping, appendix E; Ziriklî, A‘lâm, V, 149.
240. In this ritual state the requisite garb for male pilgrims consists of two large pieces of unstitched cloth.
241. Ţabârî later, at III, 147, explains Abu Ja‘far’s expectations of al-Fâḍl in the search for Muḥammad b. ‘Abdallâh and his brother İbrâhîm.
Ziyād b. 'Ubaydallah was governor of Medina, Mecca, and al-Ta‘if. The governor of al-Kūfah and its Sawād was ‘Īsā b. Mūsā; of al-BAṣrah and its subdistricts, Sulaymān b. ‘Alī while its judiciary was headed by Sawwār b. ‘Abdallāh. Abū Dāwūd Khalīd b. İbrāhīm was governor of Khurāsān, and Shāliḥ b. ‘Alī was governor of Egypt.

243. Al-Ta‘if is a town in the Sarāt mountains southeast of Mecca. El’, s.v. (H. Lammens); Yaqūt, Buldān, IV, 8–12.
245. Sawwār b. ‘Abdallāh [d. 157/773–74] was the grandfather of the famous Baghdādi judge and traditionist Sawwār b. ‘Abdallāh b. Sawwār b. ‘Abdallāh al-Tamīmī [d. 245/859–60]. It is reported that, before pronouncing judgment, he raised his head heavenward and let tears well up in his eyes. Ibn Sa‘d, al-Tabaqqat al-kubrā, VII, 260–61; Ṭabarī, III, 380; Dhahabi, Siyār, XI, 544; Šafādī, Wāfī, XVI, 37.
Among the events of this year was the fact that Ṣāliḥ b. ‘Alī and al-‘Abbās b. Muḥammad stayed on in Maṭyāyah until they had completed its rebuilding. Then these two waged the summer campaign through Darb al-Ḥadath, penetrating deeply in Byzantine territory. Campaigning with Ṣāliḥ were his two sisters, Umm ʿĪsā and Lubābah, both the daughters of ‘Alī, for they had vowed that if the Umayyad reign came to an end, they


248. A narrow pass northwest of al-Ḥadath, a frontier town between Marʿash and Maṭyāyah, whose name the “Arabs changed to darb al-salāma in an attempt to exorcise the evil fate which seemed to be attached to it.” EI², s.v. al-Ḥadath (S. Ory); Yāqūt, Buldān, II, 227-29; Cornu, Répertoires, 18; Le Strange, Lands, 121-22.


250. Lubābah bt. ‘Alī b. ‘Abdallāh b. al-‘Abbās, who was married to Ibn Qutham b. al-‘Abbās b. ‘Ubaydallāh b. ʿAbbās. Ibid.

251. ‘Alī b. ‘Abdallāh b. al-‘Abbās (d. 117 or 118/735-37) was the grandfather of the first two ‘Abbāsid caliphs. EI², s.v. (K. V. Zetterstæen); Baladhuri, Ansāb al-ashrāf, III, 71-80; Tabāri, II, 1592.
would fight "in the path of God." Ja'far b. Hanżalah al-Bahrānī mounted a raid through the Malatyah pass.

In this year al-Mansūr and the Byzantine ruler worked out a ransom agreement by which the caliph recovered the Muslim prisoners from them. After that, the sources report, the Muslims had no summer campaign until 146, because Abū Ja'far was occupied with matters involving the two sons of ‘Abdallāh b. al-Hasan. Some sources say, however, that al-Hasan b. Qahṭabah conducted a summer campaign in the year 140 along with ‘Abd al-Wahhāb, the son of Ibrāhim the Imām. They say that the Byzantine leader, Constantine, along with 100,000 troops, came forward and encamped at the Jayḥān. When, however, news of the magnitude of the Muslim force reached him, he pulled back. Following that incident there was no summer campaign until 146.

In this year ‘Abd al-Raḥmān b. Mu‘āwiyyah b. Hishām b. ‘Abd al-Malik b. Marwān went to Spain, where the populace accepted his hegemony and where his descendants rule to this day.

In this year Abū Ja'far enlarged the Mosque in Mecca. Sources report that it was a very fertile year and was accordingly named “the Year of Abundance.”

252. A Qur’ānic expression first encountered in surat al-baqarah, 2, 154: “And do not say of those who are killed [fighting] in the path of God ‘they are dead.’”
253. According to Azdi, Ta’rikh al-Mawṣil, 171, Ja’far b. Hanżalah also planted crops and used lime (kils) in rebuilding the city.
254. Kennedy, “Arab Settlement,” 23, notes that at this point the city was garrisoned with 4,000 troops.
255. See also Ibn Kathīr, Bidāyah, X, 74; Ibn al-Athīr, Kāmil, V, 488.
258. The Jayḥān, or Ceyhan, River flows southwest from Elbistan to the Mediterranean. EI2, s.v. Djayḥān (M. Canard); Le Strange, Lands, 120, 122, 129-31; Yaqūt, Buldān, II, 202; Cornu, Répertoires, 6.
259. He died in 172/788, after consolidating Umayyad power from his capital in Cordova. EI2, s.v. [E. Lévi-Provençal]; Dhahabi, Siyar, VIII, 244-53; Ibn al-Athīr, Kāmil, V, 489-96.
260. Fragmenta historicorum, I, 227, calls this masjid al-ka‘bah.
261. Other sources include Fragmenta historicorum, I, 227; Ibn Kathīr, Bidāyah, X, 74-75.
In this year Sulaymān b. ‘Ali was dismissed from the governorship of al-Baṣrah and from jurisdiction over its subdistricts. Some sources record this for the year 140.

In this year al-Manṣūr appointed Sufyān b. Muṣāwiyyah262 to the governorship of al-Baṣrah previously held by Sulaymān b. ‘Ali. Sources date that to Wednesday in the middle of Ramadān.263 When Sulaymān was dismissed and Sufyān appointed, ‘Abdallāh b. ‘Ali and his confederates went into hiding, fearing for their own safety. Abū Ja‘far heard about that and forwarded a letter to Sulaymān and ʿĪsā, the sons of ‘Ali, about sending ‘Abdallāh b. ‘Ali on to him. He adjured them to do so without delay, giving a sufficiently satisfactory pledge of security for ‘Abdallāh b. ‘Ali to secure their trust.264 The caliph then wrote to Sufyān b. Muṣāwiyyah informing him of this and instructing him to pester and prod the two brothers into bringing forth ‘Abdallāh and his entourage. This Sulaymān and ʿĪsā did, bringing ‘Abdallāh, the mass of his army commanders, his closest associates, and his mawls to reach Abū Ja‘far on Thursday, the 17th of Dhū al-Ḥijjah.265

In this year Abū Ja‘far ordered the detention of ‘Abdallāh b. ‘Ali and his entourage and the execution of some of them.266

---

262. Sufyān b. Muṣāwiyyah b. Yazīd b. al-Muhallab remained governor of al-Baṣrah until 145, when he was replaced by Salm b. Qutaybah al-Bāhili, who was dismissed by Abū Ja‘far within the year. In 132 Sufyān had unsuccessfully attempted to displace this same Salm b. Qutaybah al-Bāhili as the last Umayyad governor of al-Baṣrah. Ţabarī, III, 21–23, 319, 327; Baladhuri, Ansāb al-ashrāf, III, 74–78; Pellat, Le milieu baṣrien, 280.

263. 15 Ramadān 139 would be February 10, 757, which was actually a Thursday. Wüstefeld and Mahler, Vergleichungs-Tabellen, 4; Caetani, Cronographia generale, 161.

264. According to Ya‘qūbī, Historiae, II, 442, this amān was composed by the celebrated literary figure Ibn al-Muqaffa‘ (Sourdel, “Ibn al-Muqaffa‘”), who was then in the service of ʿĪsā b. ‘Ali. The constraints against caliphal transgression of the agreement that he included in the document led to his dismissal and eventual execution. The text of this amān is reproduced in Azdī, Ta‘rīkh al-Mawṣil, 168–70, while Jahshiyārī, Wuzūrā‘, 104–5, details the grievances against Ibn al-Muqaffa‘ for which Sufyān b. Muṣāwiyyah exacted mortal vengeance.

265. Thursday, May 12, 757.

266. For other accounts, see Ya‘qūbī, Historiae, II, 442–43; Azdī, Ta‘rīkh al-Mawṣil, 170 [given for the year 138]; Ibn Kathīr, Bidāyāh, X, 75; Ibn al-Athīr, Kāmil, V, 496–97.
The Arrest of ‘Abdallāh b. ‘Alī

When Sulaymān and ‘Īsā, the sons of ‘Alī, reached Abū Ja’far, he gave them leave to enter his presence. They informed him that ‘Abdallāh b. ‘Alī was there and asked Abū Ja’far’s permission for him to enter. The caliph acceded to their request and engaged them in conversation, having already prepared a place of confinement in his palace for ‘Abdallāh b. ‘Alī and given orders that ‘Abdallāh be taken off there after ‘Īsā and Sulaymān had entered his presence. That having been done, Abū Ja’far rose from his seat and said to Sulaymān and ‘Īsā, “Hurry off with ‘Abdallāh.” When they went out without finding ‘Abdallāh in the antechamber where he had been waiting, they realized he had been arrested. Attempting to return to Abū Ja’far, however, their way was barred. At the same time those confederates of ‘Abdallāh b. ‘Alī who were present were divested of their swords and imprisoned. Khufāf b. Maṣṣūr had forewarned them of that and now rued the fact that he had come himself, saying to them, “You should do what I say. We could make a concerted attack on Abū Ja’far and, by God, no one could get in our way before we’d done away with him! Then we’d rush these doors with our swords drawn and no one would dare try and stop us without our taking his life.” And so, eventually, we’d get out of here and escape.” But they refused to obey him, so when their swords were seized and Abū Ja’far ordered their imprisonment, Khufāf began to make rude sounds in his beard and spit in his comrades’ faces. Abū Ja’far then ordered that some of them be killed in his presence and sent those remaining to Abū Dāwūd Khālid b. Ibrāhīm in Khurāsān, where the latter killed them. Other sources state that Abū Ja’far’s imprisonment of ‘Abdallāh b. ‘Alī occurred in 140.

In this year al-‘Abbās b. Muḥammad b. ‘Alī b. ‘Abdallāh b. ‘Abbās led the Pilgrimage.

267. Afātānhu nafsahu, following Ṭabārī, Addenda et Emendanda, p. DCCXXIX.
268. Yadritu  fit lihayatihi as an expression of derision or impatience. Ṭabārī, Glossarium, s.v. darata.
The governor of Mecca, Medina, and al-Ṭā‘if was Ziyād b. ʿUbaydallāh al-Ḥārithī, while ʿĪsā b. Mūsā was in charge of al-Kūfah and its administrative territory. Sufyān b. Muʿāwiyyah headed al-Baṣrah and its subdistricts, with Sawwār b. ʿAbdallāh in charge of its judiciary. Abū Dāwūd Khālid b. ʿIbrāhīm was governor of Khurāsān.
The Death of the Governor of Khurāsān and What Brought It About

It is related that one night some members of the army became so stirred up against Abū Dāwūd Khalīd b. Ibrāhīm, then Abū Ja‘far al-Manṣūr’s governor in Khurāsān, that they converged on the house where he lived near the Kushmāhān gate in the city of Marw. Perched on the edge of a protruding brick, Abū Dāwūd looked down from the parapet and began to shout out to his confederates so that they would recognize his voice. Near daybreak, however, the brick broke, and Abū Dāwūd fell onto the overhang (sutrah) of a portico at the forward section of the terrace, breaking his back. He died about the time of the afternoon prayer.

270. Also Kushmayhan, this was a village northeast of Marw on the road to Bukhārā. Barthold, Geography of Iran, 43; Cornu, Répertoires, 151; Yāqūt, Buldān, IV, 463. Le Strange, Lands, 400, gives this as the Dār Mashkān gate.
271. Other sources include Ibn al-Aṯīr, Kāmil, V, 498; Balādhwī, Ansāb al-ashrafī, III, 226–27; Ibn Kathīr, Bidāyah, X, 75.
272. Ṭabarī, Glossarium, s.v. satara.
Abū Dāwūd’s prefect of police, acted as his successor until `Abd al-Jabbār b. `Abd al-Rahmān al-Azdi arrived.

In this year Abū Ja`far appointed `Abd al-Jabbār b. `Abd al-Rahmān governor of Khurāsān. He arrived and there arrested some of the army commanders whom he is said to have suspected of promoting the cause of `Alī b. Abī Ṭālib’s descendants. Among them were Mujāshi b. Ḥurayth al-Anṣārī, commander (ṣāhib) of Bukhārā; Abū al-Mughirah, a mawlā of the Banū Tamīm (also known as Khālid b. Kathīr), who was commander of Qūhīstān; and al-Ḥarīsh b. Muḥammad al-Dhuhlī, Abū Dāwūd’s paternal first cousin. These he killed, while al-Junayd b. Khālid b. Huraym al-Taghlībī and Ma’bad b. al-Khalīl al-Muzanī were imprisoned after a severe beating. `Abd al-Jabbār confined a number of the most prominent Khurāsānī army commanders and insisted on extracting the remaining revenues due from Abū Dāwūd’s agents.

In this year Abū Ja`far al-Manṣūr went on the Pilgrimage, entering the state of consecration at al-Hirah. Upon completion of the Pilgrimage he returned to Medina and from there proceeded to Jerusalem.

---


275. Tamīm b. Mūrr was a major tribal group of central and east Arabia. EI², s.v. [G. Levi della Vida]; Caskel, Gamharat an-nasab, I, 59, II, 544.

276. Caetani, Cronographia generale, 184, 202, lists these two as governors of Bukhārā and Qūhīstān, respectively. See also Zirikli, A`lām, V, 277, II, 298.

277. Qūhīstān was the region of eastern Khurāsān centered around the town of Qāyīn. EI², s.v. [J. H. Kramers]; Cornu, Répertoires, 153; Le Strange, Lands, 352–63; Yaqūt, Buḍdān, IV, 416.

278. Ma`bad b. al-Khalīl al-Muzanī was appointed governor of Sind in 157/773 and died in 159/775–76. Tabārī, III, 380, 461.

279. To do so at such an early stage was presumably intended as a gesture of particular piety, because entering on the state of iḥrām carried various abstentions with it.

280. Dinawari, al-Akhbār al-tiwāl, 379–80, speaks of Abū Ja`far’s generosity to the people of Medina. See also Fragmenta historicorum, I, 227; Ibn Qutaybah, al-Ma`ārif, 378; Ya`qūbī, Historiae, II, 444, 469; Azdī, Ta’rikh al-Mawsil, 173; Ibn Kathīr, Bidāyah, X, 75.
For this year, the governors of the major cities were the same as the year before except for Khurāsān, its governor being ‘Abd al-Jabbār. When Abū Ja’far reached Jerusalem he prayed at the mosque there and then took the road for Syria, continuing on to sojourn at al-Raqqah. There he was brought Mansūr b. Ja‘awanah b. al-Ḥārith al-‘Āmirī of the Banū ‘Āmir b. Ša‘ṣa‘ah, whom he had executed. Leaving there, Abū Ja’far took the Euphrates as far as al-Ḥāshimiyyah, i.e., the Hāshimiyyah of al-Kūfah.

281. Sourdel, “Syrie,” 166, marks this as one of two visits that al-Mansūr made to Syria during his reign.
282. Baladhuri, Futūḥ, 192, places this execution in 141. As a former official for ‘Abdallāh b. ‘Alī, he is among those who went into hiding when ‘Abdallāh fled to al-Baṣrah in 137.
283. ‘Amir b. Ša‘ṣa‘ah were a large tribal group in western central Arabia. El, s.v. (W. Caskel); Caskel, Gamharat an-nasab, I, 92, II, 163–64.
284. Al-Ḥāshimiyyah was the early ‘Abbāsid administrative center near Madīnat Ibn Hubayrah. El, s.v. (J. Lassner); Lassner, Shaping, 151–62; Le Strange, Lands, 70–71; Yāqūt, Buldān, V, 389.
The Events of the Year

141

(MAY 14, 758–MAY 3, 759)

Among the events of this year was the revolt of the Rāwandiyah. Some of the sources state that the episode involving the Rāwandiyah and Abū Ja`far, which I am going to relate, took place in 137 or 136.

The Rāwandiyah Affair and How Abū Ja`far al-Manṣūr Dealt with Them

According to the account given on the authority of `Ali b. Muḥammad, the Rāwandiyah were a Khurāsānī group who fol-

---


lowsed Abū Muslim,\textsuperscript{287} leader of the Banū Hāshim cause.\textsuperscript{288} They are said to have believed in the transmigration of souls,\textsuperscript{289} claiming that the spirit (rūḥ) of Adam dwelt in ʿUthmān b. Ṣaḥḥāḥ;\textsuperscript{290} that their Lord, who gave them food and drink, was Abū Jaʿfar al-Manṣūr;\textsuperscript{291} and that al-Haytham b. Muʿāwiyah\textsuperscript{292} was Gabriel.

They arrived at al-Manṣūr’s castle and began to circumambulate it, saying, “This is the castle of our Lord.” Consequently al-Manṣūr sent for their leaders and imprisoned 200 of them. At this their comrades grew angry and asked, “Why were they imprisoned?” Al-Manṣūr forbade them to congregate, but they prepared a bier and, carrying the coffin\textsuperscript{293} empty with no one in it, they crossed through the city as far as the gate of the prison, threw down the bier, attacked the people, and entered the prison. After extricating their confederates, the Rā wandiyyah, then 600 strong, started to make their way back to al-Manṣūr. The populace, however, sounded the alarm, and the city gates were fastened shut so that no one could enter. There being no riding horse stabled in the castle, al-Manṣūr left there on foot. (From that day on, he began to keep one of the caliphal palace horses tethered close by in the castle compound.)

When al-Manṣūr left the castle, a mount was brought for him. Bestriding it, he was himself heading for the Rā wandiyyah mob when Maʿn b. Zāʿīdah\textsuperscript{294} came to a halt before Abū Jaʿfar and

\textsuperscript{287} According to al-Nawbakhthī, they claimed that Abū Muslim was a prophet sent by Abū Jaʿfar and that he had the power to cause death and revivification. Nawbakhthī, 
\textit{Firaq al-shiʿah}, 52.

\textsuperscript{288} For the connection of the Rā wandiyyah with Abū Muslim and the larger ʿAbbāsid cause, see Cahen, “Points de vue,” 324–32.

\textsuperscript{289} See Baghdādī, \textit{al-Farq bayna al-faraq}, 254.

\textsuperscript{290} See note 157. See also Laoust, \textit{Schismes}, 62, who gives the name as Ibn Nuhayk [Nuhaiq].

\textsuperscript{291} The \textit{imāmāh} lineage from Muḥammad to Abū Jaʿfar is given by Ashʿarī, \textit{Maqālāt al-islamiyyin}, I, 94.

\textsuperscript{292} Al-Haytham b. Muʿāwiyah al-ʿAtaki was the governor of Mecca 141–43/758–61. In 155/771–72 al-Manṣūr appointed him to al-Baṣrāh. A year later he died in Baghdad during intercourse with a slave girl, and at his burial rites the caliph prayed over his body. Ṭabarī, III, 138, 373, 378; \textit{Akhbār al-dawlah}, 218, as al-ʿAkkī; Zirikli, \textit{Aʿlām}, VIII, 105; Zambaur, \textit{Manuel}, 20.

\textsuperscript{293} According to Balādhurī, \textit{Ansāb al-ashraf}, III, 235, the coffin ostensibly held the body of a dead woman but was actually filled with weapons.

\textsuperscript{294} Abū al-Walid Maʿn b. Zāʿīdah al-Shaybānī (d. 152/769–70) was an Umayyad commander who defended Wāsiṭ against the ʿAbbāsids and allegedly killed Qaḥṭabah b. Shabīb. His rescue of al-Manṣūr won him forgiveness and ad-
threw himself into action. Hastily dismounting and tucking the lower part of this tunic (birkat al-qaba') into his belt, he grabbed the rein of al-Manṣūr's horse and said, "By God I implore you, Commander of the Faithful, to go back, for you are safe [if you do this]." Abū Naṣr Mālik b. al-Haytham then arrived and stationed himself at the castle door, saying, "Today I shall be a gatekeeper." The market folk were called out, and they hurled missiles upon the Rāwandiyah, fighting until they had exhausted them. At this point the city gate was opened so that the people could enter. Khāzīm b. Khuzaymah, arriving on a gelding, asked the Commander of the Faithful whether he should massacre the Rāwandiyah. "Yes," Abū Ja'far replied, so Khāzīm assaulted them, forcing them back against a wall. They then turned on Khāzīm and laid the commander and his forces bare to attack. But Khāzīm retaliated and again forced them back to the city wall. To al-Haytham b. Shu'bah he said, "When they wheel round against us, get behind them to the wall and kill them as they go back once more." The Rāwandiyah attacked Khāzīm, but he pretended to flee before them and, with al-Haytham b. Shu'bah coming up from behind them, they were all killed.

At that time 'Uthmān b. Nahīk went out and spoke to the Rāwandiyah. As he withdrew, they shot him in the back with an arrow, from which he died after a few days of illness. Standing at his grave until burial, Abū Ja'far prayed for 'Uthmān, saying, "May God have mercy on you, Abū Yazīd." In 'Uthmān's place as

ministrative appointments in the Yemen and Sīstān. He was killed at Bust in a surprise attack by local Khārijis. El², s.v. [H. Kennedy]; Tabarī, III, 13–16, 394–96;Balādhuri, Futuh, 401–2; Crone, Slaves, 169; Ibn Khallikān, Wafayāt, V, 244–54. 295. Fa-rāmā bi-nafshi. 296. Tabarī, Addenda et Emendanda, p. DCCXXVIX, and Glossarium, s.v. baraka. 297. Allā raja'ta, following Wright, Grammar, II, 305. 298. This scene is presented in greater detail on p. 68, below. 299. For a somewhat expanded version of this pledge, see p. 43. 300. Al-Haytham b. Shu'bah b. Zuhayr al-Tamimi [d. 156/772–73] was a mawla of al-Manṣūr who served under both Khāzīm b. Khuzaymah and Khuzaymah b. Khāzīm. Tabarī, III, 356–57, 856; Lassner, Topography, 70 (translating al-Khaṭīb al-Baghdādi's Tārikh Baghdād). 301. Fa-ītjarada luhum. Tabarī, Glossarium, s.v. tarada. 302. See p. 63, where the Rāwandiyah esteem him as the embodiment of the prophet Adam's spirit.
head of his guard, the caliph then appointed `Isā b. Nahik,\textsuperscript{303} who held that position until he died, whereupon Abū Jaʿfar named Abū al-`Abbās al-Ṭūsī\textsuperscript{304} to the post.

On that day, after the gates had been bolted, Ismāʿīl b. ʿAlī arrived and said to the gatekeeper, “Open up and you shall have 1,000 dirhams," but the gatekeeper refused. That was also the same day that al-Qaʿqāʾ b. Dirār,\textsuperscript{305} prefect of police for ʿIsā b. Mūsā, was in the city and gave proof of his courage. All of this occurred in the city of al-Hāshimiyyah near al-Kūfah.

When al-Rabiʾ came forward to seize al-Manṣūr’s bridle that day, Maʿn said to him, “This is not one of your days!” Abarwīz,\textsuperscript{306} son of the Mašmughān,\textsuperscript{307} the ruler of Dunbāwand,\textsuperscript{308} also made a gallant showing. Having quarreled with his brother, he had come to Abū Jaʿfar, who treated him graciously, providing a subsidy for him. On this day, therefore, he again came before the caliph, made obeisance to him, and asked whether he should fight the Rawandiyyah. With the caliph’s approval, he proceeded to the task. As soon as he had struck and felled one, he would withdraw [to fight another].

When the Rawandiyyah had been slain and al-Manṣūr had prayed the noon prayer, he called for dinner but said, “Bring Maʿn b. Zāʿidak here,”\textsuperscript{309} not touching his food until Maʿn arrived. The

303. ʿIsā b. Nahik al-ʿAkki, like his brother ʿUthmān, was one of the seven duʿāt in the Khurāsānī town of Abiward. After his death Abū Jaʿfar proved extraordinarily generous to his family. Akhbār al-dawlāh, 218; Omar,ʿAbbasid Caliphate, 73; Ṭabarī, III, 400; Crone, Slaves, 189.
305. For the year 147, Ṭabarī, III, 347, reports him as being in command of the police force (shurrah) of ʿIsā b. Mūsā. Caskel, Jamharat an-nasāb, I, 60, II, 465; Ibn ʿHzm, Jamharat ansāb al-ʿarab, 233.
306. In Fragmenta historicorum, I, 228, Abarwīz’s full title is given as “al-Mašmughān Mālik b. Dinār, malik of Dunbāwand.”
307. A Zoroastrian dynasty whose name means “great one of the Magians.” EP\textsuperscript{2}, s.v. (V. Minorsky).
308. Now Damāwand, the district and town, took their names from the highest peak in Ṭabaristān, a volcanic mountain mass visible from Tehran and well beyond. EP\textsuperscript{2}, s.v. Damāwand [M. Streck]: Yāqūt, Buldān, II, 462, 475–77; Le Strange, Lands, 371; Cornu, Répertoires, 40; Barthold, Geography of Iran, 123.
309. Ṭabarī, Glossarium, s.v. ṭalāʾ.
caliph asked Qutham\textsuperscript{310} to change places and had Ma‘n sit in his place. When they finished the meal, al-Manṣūr said to `Isā b. `Ali, “Abū al-‘Abbās, have you heard [of the phrase] “the lions\textsuperscript{311} among men?”” With `Isā’s affirmative response Abū Ja‘far continued, “Had you seen Ma‘n today you would realize that he is one of those lions.” “By God, Commander of the Faithful,” interjected Ma‘n, “indeed I came before you with a coward’s heart. But when I saw how you disdained them and dauntlessly advanced against them, I saw something in warfare that I had hitherto never seen among men. That emboldened me and prompted the deeds you witnessed.”

Ibn Khuzaymah said, “Commander of the Faithful, some of the Rāwandiyyah group are still alive.” To this Abū Ja‘far replied, “As I have charged you with authority in the matter, go ahead and kill them.” Then I shall kill Rizām,\textsuperscript{312} as he is one of them,” said Ibn Khuzaymah. At this Rizām took refuge with Ja‘far b. Abī Ja‘far;\textsuperscript{313} as his son had made an appeal on Rizām’s behalf,\textsuperscript{314} the caliph had granted him a guarantee of safe-conduct.

According to ‘Ali—Abū Bakr al-Hudhali:\textsuperscript{315} I was standing at the gate of the Commander of the Faithful when he made an appearance, and a man next to me said, “This is the Lord of Power!”

\textsuperscript{310} Qutham b. al-‘Abbās b. ‘Ubaydallāh b. al-‘Abbās (d. 159/775–76) was governor of al-Yamāmah from 143 until the time of his death, having died before al-Mahdi’s letter of deposition reached him. Ṭabari, III, 142, 466; Kennedy, \textit{Early Abbasid Caliphate}, 74; Zirikli, \textit{A‘ldm V}, 190. Under the year 151, Tarbari, III, 365–67, offers an account of the stratagem by which Qutham split Abū Ja‘far’s army into tribal and regional groupings for strategic reasons.


\textsuperscript{312} The \textit{mawlā} of Muhammad b. Khālid al-Qasrī, the governor of Medina who was displaced in 144 by Riyāh b. ‘Uthmān b. Hayyān al-Murri. Rizām remained steadfastly loyal to his master despite savage beatings. Ṭabari, III, 164–65.

\textsuperscript{313} Ja‘far b. Abī Ja‘far, the elder of two sons of the caliph who carried this name, was appointed governor of al-Mawṣil in 145 but predeceased his father, dying in 150/767 in Baghdad. He was buried in the cemetery of Qaraysh, and al-Manṣūr wept at his interment. Ṭabari, III, 353, 358, 442; Le Strange, \textit{Bagdad}, 109, 160; Zambaur, \textit{Manuel}, 36; Balādhuri, \textit{Ansāb al-asrāf}, III, 266–67.

\textsuperscript{314} Fa-ṭalaba fihi. Ṭabari, Glossarium, s.v. talaba.

\textsuperscript{315} Salamah b. ‘Abdallāh Abū Bakr al-Hudhali (d. 159/775–6), a Bāṣrān \textit{muhaddith}, was numbered among the close associates [ṣahābāh] of al-Manṣūr. A noted raconteur, he was once embarrassed by the caliph when reminded that he had repeated the same story. Ṣafāḍi, \textit{Wāfi}, XV, 325; Rosenthal, \textit{Muslim Historiography}, 52.
This is the one who gives us food and drink." Upon the Commander of the Faithful's return, while people were being admitted to his presence, I entered when he was alone and exclaimed, "Today I heard something amazing!" I then repeated what the man had said. Poking at the ground he remarked, "O Hudhali, when He raises them up I'd rather God send them to Hell while obedient to us, dragging them down, than send them to heaven while disobedient."316

According to Ja'far b. 'Abdallāh317—al-Faḍl b. al-Rabi318—his father:319 I heard al-Manṣūr say, "I have made three mistakes from whose evil consequences God has protected me: I had Abū Muslim killed in a cloth tent [khiraq]320 while surrounded by those who gave preference and precedence to obeying him. Had the cloth been rent asunder, I would have perished. I went forth on the day of the Rāwandiyyah revolt. Had a stray arrow struck me, I would have perished. I went off to Syria; had but two swords clashed in Iraq, the caliphate would have perished."

It has been said that Macn b. Za'īdah was in hiding from Abū Ja'far because of the blame he bore for the repeated battles he fought, together with Ibn Hubayrah,321 against the 'Abbāsid partisans. Marzūq Abū al-Khaṣib helped Macn to go into hiding and tried to seek protection for him. At the time of the Rāwandiyyah insurrection, Ma'n came to the caliph's gate and took a stand there. When al-Manṣūr asked Abū al-Khaṣib, then the caliph's chamberlain, who was at the gate, he replied, "Ma'n b. Za'īdah." At this al-Manṣūr exclaimed, "A man of the Arabs, strong-hearted, well-versed in warfare, and of able pedigree—show him

317. Ja'far b. 'Abdallāh b. Yazīd b. Rukānāh, whom Tabari cites only one other time, when recounting the events of the year 145.
320. Tabari, Glossarium, s.v. kharaqa.
321. Abū Khālid Yazīd b. 'Umar b. Hubayrah al-Fazārī [d. 132/750] was the last Umayyad governor of Iraq. He was killed after the battle of Wāsīt by order of Abū Ja'far. Tabari, II, 1984, III, 68–71; El¹, s.v. [K. V. Zetterstén]; El², s.v. [J. -C. Vadet], where the name is given as Yūsuf b. 'Umar; Dhahabi, Siyar, VI, 207–8.
When he entered al-Mansūr said, "Tell me now, Maʿn, what ought we to do?" "I think that you should summon the people to arms," replied Maʿn, "and order them to be paid." Al-Mansūr retorted, "Where would we get the people and the resources? Who would willingly venture to lay himself open to these infidels! You should not do anything [at all], Maʿn. It would be better if I were to go out and take a stand. When the people see me they will fight and prove valiant, rallying to me and pulling themselves together. If, however, I stay inside here they will become slack and careless." Taking his hand Maʿn said, "By God, Commander of the Faithful, if you do, you could be killed immediately. In God's name I implore you to think of yourself." Abū al-Khaṣīb came forward and said much the same thing to the caliph. Snatching his cloak from their grasp, Abū Jaʿfar called for his horse and leapt astride without using the stirrup. Then he adjusted his garments and headed out with Maʿn holding his bridle and Abū al-Khaṣīb at his stirrup. The caliph took his stand, and immediately a man came at him, at which the caliph said, "O Maʿn, look to that ruffian!" Maʿn fought him strenuously to the death and then did the same to four more, one right after another. The people rallied back to Abū Jaʿfar and braced themselves for the fray, and in not more than an hour annihilated the Rawandiyyah. After that Maʿn disappeared. At this Abū Jaʿfar said to Abū al-Khaṣīb, "You'd better tell me where Maʿn is!" "God's truth," he answered, "I have no idea where on earth he is." Continued Abū Jaʿfar, "Does he suppose that the Commander of the Faithful will not forgive his offense after his bravery [today]? Give him a guarantee of safe-conduct and have him come to me." Abū al-Khaṣīb did so, and the caliph commanded that Maʿn be given 10,000 dirhams and [subsequently] made him governor of the Yemen.322 [At that time] Abū al-Khaṣīb said to him, "Maʿn has already divided up what you gave him and won't have the means to do anything." "Were he to propose your [own] worth's equivalence a thousand times," retorted the caliph, "he could accomplish it."

322. More detail on the conditions of this appointment is provided in Tabari, III, 393–95.
The Events of the Year 141

In this year Abū Ja`far al-Manṣūr sent his son, Muḥammad,323 who was then heir apparent,324 to Khurāsān in command of the troops. He ordered him to settle at al-Rayy, which Muḥammad did.

In this year Abū Ja`far’s governor of Khurāsān, ‘Abd al-Jabbār b. ‘Abd al-Rahmān, renounced his allegiance.325

According to ‘Ali b. Muḥammad—someone (unspecified) who told him—Abū Ayyūb al-Khūzī: When al-Manṣūr heard that ‘Abd al-Jabbār was killing the Khurāsānī leaders, and received a letter from one of them declaring that the situation was ripe for insurrection,326 he said to Abū Ayyūb al-Khūzī, “‘Abd al-Jabbār has destroyed our base of support [shī‘atanā], doing so only because he intends to withdraw his allegiance.” In response Abū Ayyūb said to the caliph, “How petty is his trickery! Write and tell him that you intend to make a raid against Byzantium so that he should send you the Khurāsānī forces together with their cavalry and commanders. When they have left Khurāsān, then send whomever you wish against the rebels. He will be unable to refuse this.” Abū Ja`far agreed and wrote accordingly. In answer ‘Abd al-Jabbār wrote, “The Turks have been stirred up. If you disperse the troops, Khurāsān will be lost.” Tossing the letter at Abū Ayyūb, Abū Ja`far asked what he advised now and was told, “He’s played into your hands! Write and tell him: ‘As Khurāsān is more important to me than anything else, I am sending on to you my own forces.’ Then dispatch the troops to him so that they will be in Khurāsān and, if he is at the point of renouncing allegiance, they can grab him by the neck.” Upon receipt of that letter ‘Abd

323. Abū `Abdallāh Muḥammad, whose regnal title was al-Mahdī, was the third ‘Abbāsid caliph. El², s.v. al-Mahdī (H. Kennedy); S. Moscati, “Studi storici”; Omar, “Observations.”

324. Wa-huwa yawma'idhin waliyyu 'ahdin. At the time of his death al-Saffāh had designated 'Īsā b. Mūsā to succeed Abū Ja`far. The latter’s successful efforts to dislodge ‘Īsā in favor of his own son Muḥammad are placed by Tabari among the events of year 147. See also Kennedy, “Succession Disputes,” 29–33.


326. Qad naghila al-adīmu. Tabari, Glossarium, s.v. naghila.
Abū Jaʿfar wrote to Abū Jaʿfar, "The situation in Khurasān has never been worse than this year. The troops will die if they come to Khurasān, because of the shortages and high prices they will encounter here." When the letter reached Abū Jaʿfar, he threw it at Abū Ayyūb, saying, "Now he has really shown his hand and renounced his allegiance; debate with him no more."

Abū Jaʿfar then sent Muḥammad b. al-Manṣūr against ʿAbd al-Jabbār with orders to encamp at al-Rayy. Al-Mahdi went there and sent Khāzim b. Khuzaymah ahead to fight as his vanguard while he himself moved on to an encampment at Naysābūr. When the people of Marw al-Rūdh heard that Khāzim b. Khuzaymah had advanced against ʿAbd al-Jabbār, they moved [also] against him from their own district. Declaring war on him, they fought a fierce battle that ended in the rebel's defeat. He fled as a fugitive, finding refuge in a cotton plantation (maʿtabah) where he went into hiding. One of the people of Marw al-Rūdh, al-Mujashshir b. Muzāhim, came across him there and took him prisoner. When Khāzim arrived, al-Mujashshir brought ʿAbd al-Jabbār to him. Khāzim, in turn, dressed him in a woolen shift and mounted him on a camel, with his face to the camel's rump, all the way to al-Manṣūr. With him were his sons and confederates, who were extensively tortured. They were then beaten with whips until the caliph had extracted from them what moneys he could, at which point he commanded al-Musayyab b. Zuhayr.
to chop ‘Abd al-Jabbâr’s hands and feet off and then to behead him. Al-Musayyab did so. Al-Manṣûr further commanded that ‘Abd al-Jabbâr’s sons be sent to Dahlak, an island just off the coast of the Yemen, where they remained until attacked by raiders from al-Hind and taken prisoner as part of a larger group. Eventually they [i.e., members of the group] were ransomed, with some being saved. The son of ‘Abd al-Jabbâr was among those rescued. He was registered on the diwân [i.e., for a stipend]. ‘Abd al-Rahmân b. ‘Abd al-Jabbâr became the companion of caliphs, and remained thus until he died in Egypt during the caliphate of Hârûn [al-Rashid] in 170.

In this year the [re]building of al-Maṣṣîsah was brought to completion by Jibra’il b. Yahya al-Khurasani, and Muḥammad, the son of Ibrâhîm the Imâm, took up a frontier posting in Malâtyah.

The sources offer differing accounts of the affair involving ‘Abd al-Jabbâr. Al-Wâqidi said that the episode occurred in 142, while others have said it was in 141.


---

Saffâb, al-Manṣûr, and Hârûn al-Rashid and governor of Khurâsân and the Jazîrah for al-Mahdi. He died at Minâ and was buried at al-‘Aqabah. Akhâbâr al-dawlah, 219; Khalîfah b. Khayyât, Ta’rîkh, II, 687, 697; Crone, Slaves, 186-87; Zîtriklî, A’lâm, VII, 225.

334. Dahlak is an island archipelago that actually lies closer to the coast of Ethiopia. Eī, s.v. (S. H. Longrigg); Cornu, Répertoires, 72; Yaqût, Buildân, II, 492.

335. Hârûn al-Rashid, the grandson of al-Manṣûr, was the fifth ‘Abbâsid caliph, ruling 170-93/786-809. Eī, s.v. (F. Omar).

336. Classical Mopsuestis and present-day Misis, al-Maṣṣîsah was a town on the west bank of the Jayhân about twenty-five kilometers north of the Mediterranean coast. According to Baladhuri, Futûh, 166, al-Manṣûr built a great mosque there and called the city al-Ma‘mûrah. Eī, s.v. (E. Honigmann); Cornu, Répertoires, 9; Yaqût, Buildân, V, 144-45; Dussaud, Topographie, 306.

337. Jibra’il b. Yahya al-Bajali, a Khurasânî officer, in 147/764-75 led an unsuccessful attempt to repel a Turkish attack on Armenia and later served as governor of Samarqand. Ṭabarî, III, 328, 459; Caetani, Cronographia generale, 222; Crone, Slaves, 179.


339. Friday, July 21, 758.
it was on the fourteenth— and was put to flight on Saturday, the sixth of Rabī‘ I in 142.

According to Aḥmad b. al-Ḥārith—Khalīfah b. Khayyāṭ:

When al-Mansūr sent al-Mahdī to al-Rayy—this occurred before the building of Bagdad—he sent him to fight ʿAbd al-Jabbār b. ʿAbd al-Raḥmān. Al-Mahdī, however, took care of the situation through others who actually did the fighting and defeated ʿAbd al-Jabbār. Abū Jaʿfar was unwilling that the expenses provided for al-Mahdī should be wasted, so he wrote telling him to raid Ṭabaristān, to encamp at al-Rayy, and to dispatch Abū al-Khaṣīb and Khāzīm b. Khuzaymah with troops against the Iṣbahbadh.

At that time the Iṣbahbadh was feuding with the Maṣmughān, the king of Dūnbāwand, and was encamped opposite him. Word reached the Iṣbahbadh that the caliph’s troops had entered his territory and that Abū al-Khaṣīb had moved into Sāriyah. That news, in turn, greatly troubled the Maṣmughān, who said to the Iṣbahbadh: “When they come against you, they come against me.” With this they agreed to wage war against the Muslims. The Iṣbahbadh went off to his home territory and fought lengthy battles against the Muslims.

Abū Jaʿfar dispatched ʿUmar b. al-ʿAlāʾ, of whom Bashshār [b. Burd] says:

---

340. Tuesday, July 25, 758.
341. Sunday, July 7, 759.
343. Khalīfah b. Khayyāṭ al-Uṣfuri [d. 240/854], known as Shabāb, was a Baṣrāni historian and the third generation of a line of distinguished muḥaddithūn. EP, s.v. [S. Zakkar]; GAS, I, 110; Ibn Khalīkān, Wafayāt, II, 143–44.
345. Sāriyah is a town (now Sārī) in Ṭabaristān about sixty-five kilometers east of Amul. Le Strange, Lands, 370; Cornu, Répertoires, 143; Barthold, Geography of Iran, 232; Yāqūt, Buldān, III, 170–71.
347. Abū Muʿādh was a blind Baṣrāni poet who was active in the literary life of Baghdad from its founding until his violent death in 169/785–86. EP, s.v. [R. Blachère]; Ṭabarī, III, 538–39.
If you come to him as counselor—a useless task for the misguided—say to the caliph:

When enemy wars awaken you,
rouse `Umar for them and rest again,
A fine young man who does not easily forget a grudge
and drinks no water unmixed with blood.

The caliph sent `Umar at the suggestion of the Masmughan’s brother, Abarwiz, who said to him, “O Commander of the Faithful, `Umar knows the land of Tabaristan better than anyone, so send him.” Abarwiz had come to know `Umar during the period of Sunbadh’s revolt and that of the Rawandiyyah. Abu Ja’far, therefore, sent Khâzîm b. Khuzaymah to join `Umar, who entered and conquered al-Rûyân. He then took the citadel of al-Taq, as well as its contents, in a protracted battle. Waging a relentless war, Khâzîm conquered Tabaristan and killed many of its inhabitants. Subsequently the Ishbahbadh entered his citadel and appealed for clemency on the condition that he surrender the stronghold with all his treasures. Al-Mahdi wrote Abu Ja’far to that effect, so the caliph dispatched Šâliḥ, the šâhib al-mušalla, with a team who inventoried the fortress contents and then left. Accepting this, the Ishbahbadh went on to the district of Jilân in the province of Daylam, where he eventually

---

348. He is cited as son of the Masmughan on p. 65.
349. Al-Rûyân is the name of a town and a mountainous region immediately north of al-Rayy. Yaqût, Buldân, III, 104–5; Cornu, Répertoires, 142; Le Strange, Lands, 373–74; Barthold, Geography of Iran, 233.
350. A. D. H. Bivar [El2, s.v. Hisn. ii. Iran] cites Yaqût, describing this fortress as “surrounded by unscaleable mountains and entered only by a long tunnel. The entrance was closed by a stone so large that 500 men were required to move it. Inside the fortress was a stream of water.” Bivar cites Awliya’ Allah Amuli’s Ta’rîkh-i Rûyân in locating al-Taq “to the south of Sâri, beyond the gorge of Kûlâ.” Yaqût, Buldân, IV, 6.
351. According to Sourdel, “Questions,” 131–32, 146, the mušalla was the prayer carpet used to cover the caliph’s seat and thus one of the royal insignia; the šâhib al-mušalla was the palace official charged with its care and placement. Šâliḥ served from the reign of al-Manṣûr to that of al-Amin. Tabari, III, 367, 576; al-Khaṭīb al-Baghdâdî, Ta’rîkh Baghdad, XI, 439–40; Jahshiyârî, Wuzârâ’, 108, Lassnet, Shaping, 217.
352. Jilân was the region of Persia that lay south of the Caspian Sea and north of the Alburz range. El2, s.v. Gilân [B. Spuler]; Le Strange, Lands, 172–75; Yaqût, Buldân, II, 201–2.
353. Daylam was the mountainous region behind the Jilân coastal area. At various times both terms Jilân and Daylam were used to designate the province at
The Iṣbahbadh’s daughter was taken captive, later becoming the mother of Ibrāhīm b. al-ʿAbbās b. Muḥammad. The force then turned their attention to the Masmughān. Finally, they seized him along with al-Baḥtariyyah, who became the mother of Mansūr b. Ibrāhīm b. al-Mahdi, and $\text{ŞMİR/ŞMIR}$, also the daughter of the Masmughān, who became ʿAlī b. Rayṭah’s concubine. This was the first conquest of Ṭabaristan.

When the Masmughān died, the inhabitants of that mountainous region became wild men (ḥūziyyah), reverting to a savage state like the asses of the wilderness.

In this year Ziyād b. ʿUbaydallāh al-Ḥarithī was dismissed as governor of Medina, Mecca, and al-Ṭāʾif. Muḥammad b. Khālid b. ʿAbdallāh al-Qasrī was put in charge of Medina, arriving there in the southwest corner of the Caspian Sea. The tenth-century geographer al-Muqaddāsī designated the entire southern rim of the Caspian, including Ṭabaristan, as Daylam. \textit{EI²}, s.v. [V. Minorsky]; Le Strange, \textit{Lands}, 173; Cornu, \textit{Répertoires}, 140; Yaqūt, \textit{Buldān}, II, 544.

354. An alternative account of his subsequent activities and eventual suicide is provided in year 142.

355. Ibrāhīm b. al-Mahdi [d. 224/839] held power in Baghdad as an anticaliph for about two years during the reign of his nephew, al-Maʾmūn. After a period in hiding, he was eventually discovered, imprisoned, and then pardoned. \textit{EI²}, s.v. [D. Sourdel], where his mother’s name is give as Shiklah; but see Ṭabarī, III, 140.

356. The name is offered tentatively as Bakhtariyyah by Minorsky, \textit{EI²}, s.v. al-Masmughān. She is later identified in Ṭabarī, III, 140, as the niece of the Iṣbahbadh. See also Vasmer, ”Die Eroberung Ṭabaristāns,” 87, 100; Le Strange, \textit{Lands}, 371-72.

357. Mansūr b. Muḥammad b. ʿAbdallāh b. Muḥammad b. ʿAlī [d. 236/850], son of the third ʿAbbāsid caliph, accepted the military command (imrah) of Baghdad in 201/816 but refused to compromise the caliphate of his uncle, al-Maʾmūn, by acting as anticaliph. Baladhuri, \textit{Ansāb al-ashrāf}, III, 278; Ṭabarī, III, 1001; Zīrīkli, \textit{Aʾlām}, VII, 303.

358. This name is offered tentatively as Smyr by Minorsky, \textit{EI²}, s.v. al-Masmughān; Ibrāhīm’s edition, VII, 511, gives the radicals ŞYMIR.

359. Rayṭah was the daughter of Abū al-ʿAbbās and bore two sons to al-Mahdi, whose names were ʿAlī and ʿAbdallāh. The former led the Pilgrimage in 164 and 168. Baladhuri, \textit{Ansāb al-ashrāf}, III, 180; Ṭabarī, III, 501, 522; \textit{EI²}, s.v. al-Mahdi [H. Kennedy].


The Events of the Year 141

in the month of Rajab. The Khurāsānī, al-Haytham b. Muʿāwiyyah al-ʿAtaki, was made governor of al-Ṭāʾif and Mecca.

In this year Mūsā b. Kaʿb died. He had been al-Manṣūr’s prefect of police, governor of Egypt, and governor of al-Hind. He was succeeded there by his son, ʿUyaynah.

In this year Mūsā b. Kaʿb was dismissed as governor of Egypt. Muḥammad b. al-Asḥath was then appointed governor, but he, in turn, was dismissed from the post, and Nawfal b. al-Furāt was named governor.

Ṣāliḥ b. ʿAlī b. ʿAbdallāh b. ʿAbbās, the governor of Qinnasrin, Ḥims, and Damascus, led the Pilgrimage in this year.

The governor of Medina was Muḥammad b. Khālid b. ʿAbdallāh al-Qasrī, of Mecca and al-Ṭāʾif, al-Haytham b. Muʿāwiyyah, of al-Kūfah and its administrative territory, Ḥisā b. Mūsā; of al-Ḍabīrah and its subdistricts, Sufyān b. Muʿāwiyyah; in charge of the judiciary of al-Ḍabīrah was Sawwār b. ʿAbdallāh. The governor of

362. Mūsā b. Kaʿb al-Tamīmī, a leading member of the ʿAbbāsid revolution as naqīb and officer, served as head of the shurtah for both al-Saffah and al-Manṣūr and as governor of Egypt for the latter. Akhbār al-dawlah, 216; Baladhuri, Futūḥ, 445; Crone, Slaves, 186.

363. More properly, of the province of al-Sind; al-Hind generally referred to that part of India that lay beyond the Muslim conquests. EI 2, s.v. al-Hind. 1 (S. Maqbul Ahmad).

364. ʿUyaynah b. Mūsā was an ʿAbbāsid dāʿī; he served as deputy governor of India until the appearance of ʿUmar b. Ḥafs b. ʿUthmān b. Abī Sufrah. For the circumstances of this transfer of power, see under year 142 below. Akhbār al-dawlah, 221; Zambaur, Manuel, 279.

365. For a recently discovered letter dated to this last year of his administration, see Hinds and Sakkout, “Letter from the Governor of Egypt.”

366. Nawfal b. al-Furāt was actually charged with fiscal administration as sāhib al-kharāj and made directly responsible to the caliph. Kindī, Wulāh, 108–9; Kennedy, “Central Government and Provincial Elites,” 33.

367. Known in ancient times as Chalkis and mentioned in the Babylonian Talmud as Kannishrayya, its ruins lie about twenty kilometers southwest of Alepp. EI 2, s.v. [N. Elisséeff]; Cornu, Répertoires, 11; Yāqūt, Buldān, IV, 403–4; Dussaud, Topographie, 450–77. For a recent study of its significance in the Muslim conquest of northern Syria, see Kaegi, Byzantium, 159–71.

368. Present-day Homs, this Syrian city lies about 140 kilometers north of Damascus. As Emesa, it was an ecclesiastical center in the patristic Christian period. EI 2, s.v. [N. Elisséeff]; Cornu, Répertoires, 7; Yaqut, Buldān, II, 302–5; Dussaud, Topographie, 110–15.
Khurāsān was al-Mahdi, whose successor there was al-Sari b. 'Abdallāh,\textsuperscript{369} while the governor of Egypt was Nawfal b. al-Furāt.

\textsuperscript{369} Al-Sari b. 'Abdallāh b. al-Hārith b. 'Abbās was removed as governor of Mecca in 146/763–64. Tabari, III, 328. For his defense of Mecca during Muhammad b. 'Abdallāh's rebellion, see under year 145.
The Events of the Year

I42
(MAY 4, 759—APRIL 211, 760)

Among the events of this year was 'Uyaynah b. Mūsā b. Ka'ab's renunciation of allegiance in al-Sind.370

Why 'Uyaynah b. Mūsā b. Ka'ab Renounced His Allegiance

It has been said that the reason for his renunciation of allegiance was as follows:371 Al-Musayyab b. Zuhayr was the deputy to Mūsā b. Ka'ab as prefect of police, and when Mūsā died,372 al-Musayyab took over the full office of his duties with the police forces. Fearing that al-Manṣūr would write to 'Uyaynah about

---

370. Al-Sind was the province surrounding the lower reaches of the Indus River; it covers roughly the same area as the modern Pakistani province of Sind. Ell, s.v. (T. W. Haig).
372. Cf. p. 75.
assuming these responsibilities and would appoint him rather than al-Musayyab, the latter wrote anonymously to `Uyaynah a line of poetry:

`Abbasid Authority Affirmed

[139] Your territory shall be your [final] plot of earth should you come to us,
so sleep a sleep that holds no dreams.

When Abū Ja`far heard about `Uyaynah’s renunciation, he set out for an encampment with his army near the large embankment in al-Baṣrah and dispatched `Umar b. Ḥafṣ b. Abī Ṣufrah al-Ataki to take over al-Sind and al-Hind and to fight `Uyaynah b. Mūsā. Consequently, `Umar went off to al-Sind and al-Hind, where he took forcible control.

In this year the Iṣbahbadh of Tabaristān abrogated the pact between the Muslims and himself, killing the Muslims who lived in his country.

The Affair of the Iṣbahbadh and the Muslims

It is related that when Abū Ja`far heard the news about the Iṣbahbadh and what he had done to the Muslims, he sent Khazim b. Khuzaymah and Rawḥ b. Ḥātim against him, together with...
Marzūq (i.e., Abū al-Khaṣīb, the mawla of Abū Jaʿfar). They besieged the Iṣbahbadh’s fortress, blockading him and those who were there with him until the stalemate became too prolonged. So Abū al-Khaṣīb resorted to a stratagem to solve the matter. He first told his confederates to beat him and shave his head and beard, which they did, and then he made his way to the Iṣbahbadh, the commander of the fortress. Abū Khaṣīb said to him, “I have been treated atrociously; I was beaten and my head and beard were shaved.” “My confederates did that,” he continued, “on the mere suspicion that my sympathies lie with you.” Abū al-Khaṣīb went on to tell the Iṣbahbadh that he was on his side and would point out the weak spot in the Muslim campsite.

The Iṣbahbadh accepted Abū Kaṣīb’s proposal, making him one of his close circle and showing him special favor. Now the gate of their city consisted of a single rock, counterweighted, which men raised and lowered when the gate was opened or closed. The Iṣbahbadh had charged his most trusted associates with this task, rotating the duty among them. Abū al-Khaṣīb therefore said to him, “It seems to me that you neither trust me nor accept my sincerity!” “What gives you that idea?” asked the Iṣbahbadh. “The reason is,” replied Abū al-Khaṣīb, “that you neither ask me to help with what concerns you most nor do you authorize me to do what you entrust only to your most reliable men.” After that the Iṣbahbadh began to seek Abū al-Khaṣīb’s help and was sufficiently pleased with what he saw to trust him enough to place him among those who took turns in opening and closing the gate of his city. Abū Khaṣīb carried out that duty for the Iṣbahbadh, winning the latter’s full confidence. At this point Abū al-Khaṣīb wrote a letter to Rawḥ b. Ḥātim and Khāzīm b. Khuzaymah, placed it in an arrow, and shot it to them. He informed them that this trickery had been successful and gave them a designated night when he would open the gate. In the course of the appointed night, the gate was opened for the caliph’s forces, and they killed the warriors inside the city, taking the children captive. Al-Baḥṭariyyah, who became the mother of Manṣūr b. al-Mahdī, was the four Rāshidūn. In Balādhuri, Ansāb al-ashrāf, III, 249, Rawḥ b. Ḥātim is mentioned as one of those whom Abū Jaʿfar sent against Mulabbad b. Ḥarmalah. See the section on year 138.
seized. Her mother was Bākand, daughter of the Iṣbahbadh known as al-Āṣamm ["the Deaf"], not the Iṣbahbadh who was king; that title was held by Bākand’s brother. Shaklah, who became the mother of Ibrāhīm b. al-Mahdī, was also taken. She was the daughter of Kharnābān, al-Maṣmughān’s steward. The Iṣbahbadh killed himself by licking a seal he possessed that contained poison.

Some sources say that Rawḥ b. Ḥātim and Khāzīm b. Khuzaymah entered Ṭabaristān in 143.

In this year al-マンṣūr had the qiblah built in al-Ḥimmān for the people of al- Başrah, i.e., the prayer orientation for their feast day. He charged Salamāh b. Sa`īd b. Jābir with its construction; at that time Salamāh was Abū Ja`far’s representative for the Eu-

phrates district and al-Ubullah. After fasting for the month of Ramadān, Abū Ja`far said the ritual prayer at the qiblah of al-Ḥimmān on the day of [ʿId al-Fitr].

In this year on Friday night, 21 Jumādā II, Sulaymān b. ʿAlī b. ʿAbdallāh died in al- Başrah at the age of fifty-nine. ʿAbd al-Šamad b. ʿAlī said the prayers of the dead for him.

379. Sourdel, EI², s.v. Ibrāhīm b. al-Mahdī, gives the name as Shiklah. Minorsky, EI², s.v. al-Maṣmughān, follows the Leiden text’s spelling but suggests the identi-
fication of this woman with the daughter of al-Maṣmughān mentioned on p. 74.
380. In the Leiden text the fourth consonant is unmarked. Ibrāhīm’s edition, VII, 513, reads “Khunādān.”
381. Yāqūt, Buldān, II, 300, identifies this as a place near al- Başrah that takes it name from the Banū Ḥimmān b. Sa’d b. Zayd Manāb b. Ṭāmīm. Caskel, Ǧamḥarat an-nasab, I, 75, II, 324. Ibn Kathīr Bidāyah, X, 78, gives the place name as al-Jabbān.
382. See also Ibn Kathīr, Bidāyah, X, 78.
383. Al-Ubullah, originally a town east of al- Başrah on the right bank of the Ti-
gris, is now part of the present-day city of al- Başrah. The Nahr al-Ubullah was the main canal connecting al- Başrah to the Tigris. EI¹, s.v. al-Obolla [J. H. Kramers]; EI², s.v. al- Başra [C. Pellat]; Yāqūt, Buldān, I, 76–78; Pellat, Le milieu baṣtien, 12–13.
384. The feast of ʿI Shawwāl, which celebrates completion of the fast of Ramaḍān. EI², s.v. [E. Mittwoch].
386. Cf. Ṭabarī, III, 421, for the year 158, where Sulaymān is listed as one of the paternal uncles to whom al-マンṣūr gave a million dirhams.
In this year Nawfal b. al-Furat was dismissed as governor of Egypt and Muḥammad b. al-Ashʿath was given that position. Then Muḥammad was dismissed from the post, and Nawfal b. al-Furat was reappointed. Finally, Nawfal was dismissed, and Ḥumayd b. Qaḥṭabah was charged with the governorship.


In this year, according to al-Wāqidi, Abū Jaʿfar appointed his brother, al-ʿAbbās b. Muḥammad, governor of the Jazirah and the Byzantine frontiers (al-thughūr)387 and placed a number of the army commanders under his jurisdiction. He stayed there for some time.

387. The thughūr were the fortresses guarding the frontier zone in Syria and Mesopotamia. El¹, s.v. (E. Honigmann); Yāqūt, Buldān, II, 79–81.
The Events of the Year

I43
(April 22, 760–April 10, 761)

In this year al-Manṣūr authorized the people to raid the territory of Daylam.388

The Raid on al-Daylam

It is said that when Abū Jaʿfar had news from al-Daylam that the Daylamites were assaulting and killing Muslims in a large-scale massacre, he dispatched Ḥabib b. ʿAbdallāh b. Rughbān to al-Baṣrah. At that time Ismāʿīl b. ʿAlī was the governor of al-Baṣrah.389 The caliph ordered Ismāʿīl to to make a list of all those in al-Baṣrah who had 10,000 dirhams or more and to enjoin each of those who possessed that sum to go forth personally to wage

388. For other accounts see Ibn al-Athir, Kāmil, V, 512; Ibn Kathīr, Bidāyah, X, 80.
389. Ṭabarī, III, 124, records Sulaymān b. ʿAlī as the predecessor to Sufyān b. Muʿāwiyah, while Zambaur, Manuel, 24, gives ʿAbdallāh b. ʿAlī.
The Events of the Year 143

war (jihād) against al-Daylam. Abū Ja'far sent someone else to al-Kūfah for the same purpose.

In this year al-Haytham b. Muṭāwiyyah was dismissed as governor of Mecca and al-Ṭā‘īf, and al-Sāri b. ‘Abdallāh b. al-Ḥārith b. al-‘Abbās b. ‘Abd al-Muṭṭalib was appointed in his stead. His commission for that post reached al-Sāri while he was in al-Yamāmah. He went to Mecca, therefore, and Abū Ja'far sent to al-Yamāmah Qutham b. al-‘Abbās b. ‘Ubaydallāh b. ‘Abbās.

In this year Ḥumayd b. Ḍaḥtabah was dismissed as governor of Egypt, and Nawfal b. al-Furāt was appointed. Then Nawfal was dismissed, and Yazīd b. Ḥātim appointed.

‘Īsā b. Mūsā b. Muḥammad b. ‘Alī b. ‘Abdallāh b. ‘Abbās, who was then governor of al-Kūfah and its Sawād, led the Pilgrimage in this year. The governor of Mecca was al-Sāri b. ‘Abdallāh b. al-Ḥārith. Al-Baṣrah and its subdistricts were under the jurisdiction of Sufyān b. Muṭāwiyyah, while its judiciary was administered by Sawwār b. ‘Abdallāh. Yazīd b. Ḥātim governed Egypt.

390. While this term has acquired spiritual connotations within developed Islamic thought, it retains the signification of military action for the expansion and defense of Muslim territory. EP, s.v. (E. Tynan).
391. Al-Yamāmah is a district in central Arabia that now includes the region around Riyyād. EI, s.v. (A. Grohmann); Yāqūt, Buldān, V, 441–48.
392. Tabari, Addenda et Emendanda, p. DCCXXX.
Among the events of this year was the raid against Daylam, which Muḥammad, the son of Abū al-‘Abbās ‘Abdallāh b. Muḥammad b. ‘Ali, i.e., the son of the [former] Commander of the Faithful, 394 made against Daylam with troops drawn from al-Kūfah, al- Bsrah, Wāsiṭ, 395 al-Mawṣil, and the Ḥazīrah.

In this year Muḥammad b. Abī Jaʿfar, al-Mahdī, left Khurāsān for Iraq. Abū Jaʿfar went to Qarmāsīn, 396 where his son Muḥam-


395. Wāsiṭ was the Umayyad stronghold in Iraq created by al-Hajjāj b. Yūsuf. EI¹, s.v. [M. Streck]; Yāqūt, Buldān, V, 347–53.

396. Qarmāsīn, present-day Kirmānshāh, is an Iranian town that lies southwest of Hamadḥān. EI², s.v. Kirmānshāh [A. K. S. Lambton]; Yāqūt, Buldān, IV, 330; Le Strange, Lands, 186–87.
In this year, on his arrival in Khurasan, Muhammad b. Abi Ja’far consummated his marriage with Rayţah bt. Abi al-`Abbās, his paternal first cousin.

Abū Ja’far al-Mansūr led the Pilgrimage in this year, having appointed Khāzim b. Khuzaymah as deputy commander of his army camp and of his storehouse.

In this year Abū Ja’far appointed Riyāḥ b. ‘Uthmān al-Murri governor of Medina and relieved Muḥammad b. Khālid b. ‘Abdallāh al-Qasri of that post.

The reason Abū Ja’far Dismissed Muḥammad b. Khālid and Appointed Riyāḥ b. ‘Uthmān, Having Removed Ziyād b. ‘Ubaydallāh al-Ḥarīthi at the Instance of Muḥammad b. Khālid

The reason why the caliph dismissed Ziyād as governor of Medina is as follows: Abū Ja’far was preoccupied with the problem of Muḥammad and Ibrāḥīm, the sons of ‘Abdallāh b. Ḥasan b. ‘Ali b. Abi Talib, and with their absence from his au-

---

397. She bore two sons to Muḥammad and is described by Baladhuri, Ansāb al-ashraf, III, 180, as a person of strength and power. Ṭabarî, III, 445–46, relates a macabre incident involving Rayţah and her husband at the time of Abū Ja’far’s death.


400. Muḥammad b. ‘Abdallāh b. Ḥasan b. Ḥasan, known as “the Pure Soul” (al-nafs al-zakiyyah), was the great-great-grandson of ‘Ali and Fāṭimah through their son Ḥasan. El’, s.v. (F. Buhl).

401. Ibrāḥīm b. ‘Abdallāh b. Ḥasan b. Ḥasan was the full brother of Muḥammad b. ‘Abdallāh through their mother Hind b. Abi ‘Ubaydah and was a corevolutionary with him. El’, s.v. (L. Vecchia Vaglieri), and El’, s.v. (F. Buhl).

402. ‘Abdallāh b. Ḥasan b. Ḥasan b. ‘Ali b. Abi Ṭalib was the acknowledged elder of the Ḥasanids. During the reign of the Umayyad Sulaymān b. ‘Abd al-Malik, he was praised and accorded favor by the caliph, while during the ca-
dience with the rest of the Banū Hāshim who had paid their allegiance to him during the life of his brother Abū al-ʿAbbās, in the year when he had made the Pilgrimage in company with Abū Muslim.

It has been recounted that Muḥammad used to say that Abū Jaʿfar was among those who rendered the oath of allegiance to him on the night when the Banū Hāshim, together with the rest of the Muʿtazilah who were there with them, deliberated in Mecca about whom they should choose as caliph. (This was at the time when the situation of the Marwānids was unstable.) Abū Jaʿfar asked about Muḥammad and Ibrāhīm, and Ziyād b. ʿUbaydallāh said to him, “How worried you are about them! I will bring them to you.” At that time Ziyād was together with Abū Jaʿfar during the latter’s arrival in Mecca in the year 136. Abū Jaʿfar reinstalled Ziyād as governor [of Medina] and made him responsible for Muḥammad and Ibrāhīm.

According to Abū Zayd ʿUmar b. Shabbah—Muḥammad b. Ismāʿīl—ʿAbd al-ʿAzīz b. ʿImrān—ʿAbdallāh b. Abī ʿUbaydah...
b. Muḥammad b. ʿAmmār b. Yāsir: When Abū Jaʿfar was appointed caliph, his sole concern was searching for Muḥammad, making inquiries about him and about his intentions. He summoned the entire Banū Ḥāshim, man by man, speaking to each of them privately and asking about Muḥammad. “Commander of the Faithful,” they kept saying, “he well knows that you are aware of the fact that he sought this position before today. While he fears you for his own sake, he neither intends conflict with you nor wishes to be disobedient to you.” Each made a similar speech, except Hasan b. Zayd, who gave the caliph his own account, saying, “By God, I don’t feel secure against the possibility of his making an assault against you, for he is certainly someone who does not sleep for thought of you, so take prudent care.” Ibn Abī Ubaydah’s account goes: “Be on guard against one who never sleeps.”

According to Muḥammad: I heard my grandfather, Mūsā b. ʿAbdallāh111 say, “O God, seek out Ḥasan b. Zayd for our bloodshed.” Mūsā himself said, “By God, I heard my father say ‘I testify to the fact that Abū Jaʿfar informed me of something that only Hasan b. Zayd had heard from me.’”

According to Muḥammad b. Ismāʿīl—al-Qasim b. Muḥammad b. ʿAbdallāh b. ʿAmr b. ʿUthmān b. ʿAffān: Muḥammad b. Wahb al-Sulami told me that my father said, “Abū Jaʿfar told me something that only my brother, ʿAbdallāh b. Ḥasan, and

---

1608 or 1708. As a muhaddith he was judged weak or untrustworthy by most authorities. Šafādi, Wāfi, XVIII, 557; al-Khaṭīb al-Baghdādi, Taʿrikh Baghdādī, X, 440–42; Ibn Ḥajar, Tahdhib, VI, 312–13.

408. During the reign of al-Mahdī, he was brought before the caliph as a suspected Qadari. Tabārī, III, 534.


412. Al-Qasim b. Muḥammad b. ʿAbdallāh b. ʿAmr b. ʿUthmān b. ʿAffān was a nephew of Muḥammad and Ibrāhīm whose sister was Ibrāhīm’s wife. For his father, whose sobriquet was “the Brocade,” see note 592. Tabārī, III, 173–79.
Hasan b. Zayd heard from me. I testify that 'Abdallah did not tell it to the caliph, nor does the latter have knowledge of the hidden.413

According to Muḥammad: In the year when he made the Pilgrimage, Abū Jaʿfar asked 'Abdallah b. Ḥasan about Muḥammad's whereabouts, but 'Abdallah gave him the standard Ḥashimi speech. The caliph told him that he would not be satisfied until 'Abdallah brought Muḥammad to him.

According to Muḥammad—his mother414—her father415—his father:416 I said to Sulaymān b. 'Alī, "O my brother, you know that I am related to you by marriage and kinship, so what do you think?" Sulaymān said, "By God, it is as though I could look at 'Abdallah b. 'Alī417 at the time when the veil has passed between us and he is signaling to us, 'This is what you have done to me. If he [Abū Jaʿfar] were a forgiving person, surely he would forgive his uncle.' " Sulaymān accepted 'Abdallah's opinion. Muḥammad continued: The family of 'Abdallah [b. Ḥasan] came to see this as establishing a close connection for them with Sulaymān.

According to Abū Zayd—Saʿīd b. Huraym418—Kulthūm al-Marāʾī—Yahyā b. Khalīd b. Barmak:419 Abū Jaʿfar bought some slaves held by the bedouins. He gave one of them a camel, another two camels, and a third several camels. Then he sent them in different directions to search for Muḥammad in the hinterlands of Medina. Any one of them would appear at some watering place as though a passerby or one lost, and they would seek information about him and spy about.

413. A further account of Ḥasan b. Zayd's mode of operation is given in text, III, 149–50.
415. Mūsā b. 'Abdallāh.
416. 'Abdallāh b. Ḥasan.
417. For the account of his revolt against Abū Jaʿfar, see pp. 8–18.
418. Saʿīd b. Huraym al-Kāṭīb was affiliated with the Bayt al-Ḥikmah during the caliphate of al-Maʿmūn and renowned for his eloquence. Ṣafādī, Wāfī, XV, 269.
419. Yahyā b. Khalīd b. Barmak, a governor of Ādharbāyjān for al-Manṣūr, is most noted as the powerful vizier of Ḥārūn al-Rashid who eventually fell from favor and died in prison in 190/805. EI¹, s.v. [K. V. Zetterstén]; Zambaur, Manuel, 177; Sourdail, Vizirat 'Abbāside, I, 127–82.
According to Abū Zayd—Muhammad b. `Abbād b. Ḥabīb al-Muhallabi:420 Al-Sindi,421 the Commander of the Faithful's mawlā, said to me, “Do you know what elevated ‘Uqbah b. Salm422 in the opinion of the Commander of the Faithful?” When I expressed ignorance, he went on to explain: “My uncle, ‘Umar b. Ḥafṣ, sent a delegation from al-Sindi led by ‘Uqbah. They entered Abū Jaʿfar’s presence, and when they had concluded their petitions they got up to go. The caliph, however, asked ‘Uqbah to stay behind and told him to sit down. Then the caliph said to him, ‘Who are you?’ ‘A member of the Commander of the Faithful’s army and his following,’ ‘Uqbah replied: ‘I am an associate of ‘Umar b. Ḥafṣ.’ ‘What’s your name?’ asked the caliph. “‘Uqbah b. Salm b. Nāfi,’ he replied. ‘Who are your people?’ inquired the caliph. ‘I am an Azdi of the Banū Hunā’ah.’423 The caliph continued, ‘I find you to be of prepossessing appearance and good standing. In fact, I want you for an affair that preoccupies me and for which I continue to seek a man. Perhaps you are just the person. If you can settle it for me, I shall elevate your rank.’ ‘Uqbah said, ‘I hope that I can confirm the Commander of the Faithful’s estimate of me: ‘Keep yourself hidden and keep quiet about your mission,’ said the caliph; ‘come back to me on a day and at a time I will designate.’ ‘Uqbah returned at the appointed time and the caliph said to him, ‘These cousins of ours have insisted upon assailing our regnal authority and seizing it.’424 In Khurāsān they have a faction [shīʿatun] in such and such a village which corre-

420. Muhammad b. ‘Abbād b. Ḥabīb al-Muhallabi was governor of al-Baṣrah for al-Maʾmūn, who, according to Dhahabi, Siyar, X, 190, reimbursed him for the debt incurred by his extreme generosity there. He died in al-Baṣrah in 216/831. Zirikli, Aʾlām, VI, 181; Safādī, Wāfi, III, 183.

421. Ibrāhīm al-Sindi b. Shāhak was an ‘Abbāsid governor in Syria and later the member of Hārūn al-Rashid’s shurtah responsible for multilaterating and displaying Jaʿfar b. Yahyā al-Barmakī’s corpse in Baghdad. Tabari, III, 680; EPS, s.v. Ibrāhīm b. al-Sindi (C. Pellat); Zambaur, Manuel, 28; Jahshiyārī, Wuzarā, 216–37.

422. ‘Uqbah b. Salm b. Nāfi’ al-Hunāʾī later supported al-Mansūr’s successful efforts to change the succession from his nephew Isā b. Mūsā to his own son al-Mahdi and is mentioned as governor of al-Baṣrah in 150/767–68. Tabari, III, 344, 359; Zambaur, Manuel, 40.

423. For Hunāʾah b. Mālik as a clan of Azd, see Caskel, Jamhurat an-nasab, I, 211, II, 286; Ibn ʿAzm, Jamharat ansāb al-ʿarab, 379.

spond with them and send contributions (ṣadaqāt)\textsuperscript{425} to them of their wealth and fine local products. So leave here with some good fabrics, as well as various delicacies and specie, proceeding, in disguise and carrying a letter that you’ve written [as if] from the people of this village, until you reach them [i.e., ʿAbdallāh and those with him]. Then conduct an inspection of their area. If they really have broken away from their former way of thinking, then by all means show them affection and sheathe your sword. But if they maintain their posture, I shall know that and shall be cautious and wary.\textsuperscript{426} Venture forth, then, until you make contact with ʿAbdallāh b. Ḥasan, doing so with every appearance of being a homespun and humble fellow. If he rebuffs you—as well he might—then be patient and return to him again. If he does it again, remain patient until he becomes friendly with you and his attitude toward you softens. When you clearly see what is in his heart, hurry back to me.’

Al-Sindi continued: ‘Uqbah journeyed until he reached ʿAbdallāh and met with him, letter in hand. ʿAbdallāh, however, refused to have anything to do with ‘Uqbah and drove him away, saying, ‘I don’t know those people.’ ‘Uqbah kept going away and coming back to him until ʿAbdallāh finally accepted his letter and his fine things and grew friendly toward him. ‘Uqbah asked him for the reply, but ‘Abdallāh said, ‘I am not going to write a letter to anyone; you can be my letter to them. Greet them from me and tell them that my sons will come out in open opposition at such and such a time.’ ‘Uqbah then journeyed back to Abū Jaʿfar and gave him the report.’\textsuperscript{427}

According to Abū Zayd—Ayyūb b. ‘Umar\textsuperscript{428}—Mūsā b. ‘Abd al-ʿAzīz b. ‘Umar b. ‘Abd al-Raḥmān b. ‘Awf: In the year 138 Abū Jaʿfar charged al-Fadl b. ʿAlī with responsibility for the Pilgrimage celebrations, saying to him, ‘If your eye lights upon Muḥammad and ʿIbrāhīm, the sons of ʿAbdallāh b. Ḥasan, make

\textsuperscript{425} Ṣadaqāt is a term that carries the technical sense of voluntary alms offered for pious motives. El\textsuperscript{1}, s.v. Sadaqa (T. H. Weir).

\textsuperscript{426} Ibrahim’s edition, VII, 520, adds minhum.

\textsuperscript{427} The account is continued on p. 96, below.

\textsuperscript{428} Ayyūb b. ‘Umar b. Abī ‘Amr b. Nuʿaym b. Māhān’s father was asked to identify Muḥammad b. ʿAbdallāh’s severed head but pleaded confusion and was later released by ʿĪsā b. Mūsā. See Tabari, III, 249; Ibrahim’s edition, VII, 580, for this vocalization.
sure they do not get away from you. If you don’t see them, however, don’t ask about them.” Al-Fadl arrived in Medina, and its entire populace came to meet him, including ‘Abdallāh b. Hasan and the rest of the Hasanids, save Muḥammad and Ibrāhīm, the sons of ‘Abdallāh b. Hasan. Al-Fadl said nothing until he had completed the Pilgrimage ritual. He then went on to al-Sayyālah,429 where he said to ‘Abdallāh b. Hasan, “What kept your two sons from coming to meet me in company with their family?” “By God,” rejoined ‘Abdallāh, “neither misgivings nor evil intentions prevented them. Rather, avid for the hunt and in pursuit of it, they were not present with their families for good reasons, not wicked ones.” Al-Fadl did not answer him but sat down on a bench that had been set up for him in al-Sayyālah. ‘Abdallāh ordered his herdsmen to pasture his camels for him, and he commanded one of them to draw milk over honey in a big tumbler and then to go up to the bench with it. ‘Abdallāh beckoned him to give the drink to al-Fadl b. Šāliḥ, so the man went straight to him. When he drew close to him, al-Fadl bawled at him angrily, saying, “Away with you, you sucker at your mother’s clitoris.”430 At this the herdsman turned tail, and ‘Abdallāh, who was a very mild-mannered sort, jumped to his feet, reached for the cup and began to walk with it over to al-Fadl. When the latter saw him walking toward him, he felt embarrassed before him, so he accepted the cup and drank.

According to Abū Zayd—Muḥammad b. Yahyā431—his father—his father: Ziyād b. ‘Ubaydallāh had a Kūfīan secretary named Ḥafṣ b. ‘Umar. He had Shi‘ī sympathies and frustrated Ziyād’s efforts to look for Muḥammad. ‘Abdallāh b. Sa‘īd432 wrote to Abū Ja‘far about him and had him brought down to the caliph.433

429. Al-Sayyālah was a stage on the route between Mecca and Medina. Yaqūt, Buldān, III, 292; Cornu, Répertoires, 85.
430. Ya māṣṣa bāzrah ummihi, which is repeated, in abbreviated form, by Abū Ja‘far on III, 150.
432. ‘Abdallāh b. Sa‘īd (following Ṭabarī, Addenda et Emendanda, p. DCCXXXII) was a confidential agent for Abū Ja‘far and custodian of the voluntary alms. Ṭabarī, III, 169.
433. Fa-haddarahu ilayhi. Ṭabarī, Addenda et Emendanda, p. DCCXXXI.
Ziyād, however, wrote to ʿĪsā b. ʿAli and ʿAbdallāh b. al-Rabīʿ al-Ḥārithi about his secretary, and the two of them freed him to return to Ziyād.

According to ʿAle b. Muḥammad: Muḥammad reached al- Başra covertly with forty men. They went to ʿAbd al-Rāhmān b. Uthmān b. ʿAbd al-Rāhmān b. al-Ḥārith b. Hishām, who said to him, “You have destroyed me and publicly exposed me. Stay with me but send your confederates away.” Muḥammad, however, refused, so ʿAbd al-Rāhmān said, “You may not stay with me; go stay with the Banū Rāsib.” This Muḥammad did.

According to ʿUmar—Sulaymān b. Muḥammad al-Sārī—Abū Habbār al-Muzānī: We stayed in al- Başra with Muḥammad b. Abdallāh, who summoned the people to his cause.

According to ʿUmar—Īsā b. Abdallāh: ʿAbd Jaʿfar said, “I crave absolutely nothing for myself when I remember the place of the Banū Rāsib in al- Başra.”

According to ʿUmar—Abū ʿĀṣim al-Nābil—Ibn Jashīb al- Lihbī: I stayed with the Banū Rāsib in the days of Ibn Muʿawiyah and one day a young man from there asked me my name. One of their elders slapped him, saying, “What business is

---

435. According to Kennedy, Early Abbasid Caliphate, 202, the Banū Rāsib had “connections with previous pretenders, notably Ibn Ḥanafiyya and ʿAbd Allah b. Muʿawiyah.” Caskel, Gamharat an-nasab, I, 327, II, 485.
436. Abū Habbār al-Muzānī was sent to warn Muḥammad b. Abdallāh about a spy sent over by Abū Jaʿfar but escaped caliphal punishment because of confusion about his name. Tabari, III, 157-58.
438. Abū ʿĀṣim al-Nābil al-Ḍabhāk b. Makhklad [d. 212/828] was a Baṣra muladdith whose transmissions were regarded as trustworthy. EI², Suppl., s.v. [C. Pellat]; Ibn Ḥajar, Tahdhib, IV, 395-97; Ṣafādī, Waḥi, XVI, 359-60.
439. Lihb b. Ahjān were a clan of the Banū Azd. Caskel, Gamharat an-nasab, I, 210, II, 378.
440. ʿAbdallāh b. Muʿawiyah was Jaʿfar b. Abī Ṭālib's great-grandson. He asserted his claim to the imāmāte in al- Kūfah in 127/744 and eventually attracted a sufficient following to win control of Fārs, Ḥulwān, Iṣfahān, and al-Rayy. He was probably executed by Abū Muslim, although other traditions mention his death by poisoning in Harāt. EI², s.v. [K. V. Zetterstēen]; Maṣʿūdi, Murūj, VI, 67-68; Laoust, Schismes, 35-36.
it of yours?" Then he looked at an old man who was sitting in front of him and said, "Do you see this old man? His father settled with us in the days of al-Hajjāj and remained until this son of his was born. That young man has now matured and reached this age and, by God, to this day we know neither his name, nor his father's name, nor who his people are!"

According to 'Umar—Muḥammad b. al-Hudhayl al-Za'farānī: Muḥammad arrived and stayed with 'Abdallāh b. Shaybān, one of the Banū Murrah b. Ubayd. He remained for six days and then left. News of his arrival at al-Baṣrah having reached Abū Ja'far, the caliph advanced in great haste but halted at the Great Bridge. We urged 'Amr to go and meet him, but he refused until we became angry with him. At this he went and met with him. "O Abū 'Uthmān," said the caliph, "is there anyone in al-Baṣrah whom we should fear in respect of our dominion?" "No," replied 'Amr. The caliph continued, "Should I be content with your word alone and leave?" 'Amr responded affirmatively, so the caliph left. Muḥammad had, in fact, already left before the arrival of Abū Ja'far.

According to 'Alī b. Muḥammad—'Āmir b. Abī Muḥammad: Abū Ja'far asked 'Amr b. Ubayd, "Have you given an oath of allegiance to Muḥammad?" "By God," he replied, "were the people to give me authority over their affairs, I would not acknowledge any place for those two [i.e., Muḥammad and Ibrāhim]."
According to `Ali—Ayyūb al-Qazzāz: I said to `Amr, "What would you say about a man who was content to endure the loss of his claim?" "I am that man," he said. "How can that be?" I responded. "Were you to issue a summons [to the cause], thirty thousand would answer you!" "By God," he said, "I don't know where there are even three who, having spoken, do what they promise. Were I to know them, I would be a fourth for them."

According to Abū Zayd—Ubaydallāh b. Muḥammad b. Hafṣ—his father: In dread of Abū Ja`far, Muḥammad and ʿĪbrahīm went to `Adan and then to al-Sind, to al-Kūfah, and finally to Medina.

According to ʿUmar—Muḥammad b. Yaḥyā—al-Hārith b. ʿIshāq: Ziyād guaranteed the Commander of the Faithful that he would produce for him the two sons of `Abdallāh. The caliph therefore installed him as governor of Medina. When Ḥasan b. Zayd found out anything about Muḥammad and ʿĪbrahīm's situation, he kept quiet about it until they had left wherever they were. Then he would inform Abū Ja`far, and whatever traces he had mentioned would be found. The caliph accepted the truth of what Ziyād reported to him until the year 140. At that time Abū Ja`far made the Pilgrimage and distributed gifts (qusūm)448 in which he especially favored the family of Abū Ṭalib. As the sons of `Abdallāh did not present themselves to him, he sent for `Abdallāh and asked about them. `Abdallāh expressed ignorance of their whereabouts, to the point that he and the caliph spoke rudely to each other and Abū Ja`far told him to "Go suck!" "0 Abū Ja`far," `Abdallāh replied, "by which of my mothers would you have me suck? By Fatimah, daughter of the Messenger of God? Or by Fātimah bt. Asad? Or by Fātimah bt. Ṭalib. 450

446. `Ubaydallāh b. Muḥammad b. Hafṣ b. Maʿmar al-Taymi [d. 228/843], also Ibn ʿAʾishah or al-ʿAyshi, was a Bāṣran historian and muḥaddith who traced his lineage from ʿAʾishah bt. Ṭalḥah, niece of the Prophet Muḥammad's wife and granddaughter of Abū Bakr. Dhahabi, Siyar, X, 564–67; Zirikli, Aʾlām, IV, 196; Rosenthal, Muslim Historiography, 505.

447. `Adan, i.e., Aden, is a peninsular seaport in the Yemen. Yaqūt, Buldān, IV, 89–90; ʿEṣṣ, s.v. [O. Lofgren].

448. ʿAdan, Glossarium, s.v. qasama.

449. Fātimah was the most famous of the Prophet's daughters. She was the wife of ʿAli b. Abi Ṭalib, mother of al-Ḥasan and al-Ḥusayn and thus great-great-grandmother of `Abdallāh. ʿEṣṣ, s.v. [L. Veccia Vaglieri].

The Events of the Year 144


Al-Musayyab b. Zuhayr jumped up and said, “Call upon me, Commander of the Faithful, to behead the son of a bitch!” Ziyād b. ‘Ubaydallah stood up and threw his mantle (ridā) over ‘Abdallāh, saying, “Give him to me, Commander of the Faithful. I will produce his two sons for you.” Thus did he get ‘Abdallāh away from Abū Ja’far.


Would you [with the likes of] al-Jarba’ or Ḥukākah vie against Umm al-Fadl and the daughter of Mishrah?


452. Umm Ishāq bt. Talḥah b. ‘Ubaydallāh was the mother of Fāṭimah bt. al-Husayn. Ibn Sa’d, al-Ṭabaqāt al-kubrā, V, 319; Ḥisfāḥānī, Maqāṭīl, 179.

453. Khadijah bt. Khuwaylid was the first wife of the Prophet and mother of Fāṭimah. El2, s.v. (W. Montgomery Watt); Dhahabi, Siyar, II, 109–17.

454. Al-Jarba’ bt. Qasāmah b. Zuhayr, the mother of Umm Ishāq bt. Talḥah, was thus named because of her beauty, a beauty so extraordinary that other women would shun her to avoid comparison. Ḥisfāḥānī, Maqāṭīl, 179; Lane, Lexicon, II, 404.

455. The Banū Ṭayyi’ were an ancient Yamanī tribal group who migrated to the northern part of the peninsula. El1, s.v. Ta’iy [H. H. Brāu]; Caskel, Gamḥarāt annasab, I, 176, II, 555.


457. Fa-takhallašahu minhu. Ṭabarī, Glossarium, s.v. khalasa.


459. According to Lane, Lexicon, II, 404, an additional meaning of al-jarba’ is “the sky, . . . its stars being likened to the marks of jarab (mange or scab),” while ḥukākah is defined (ibid., 615) as the residue from anything scraped or scratched.

460. Lubābah bt. al-Hārith b. Ḥazīn b. Bujayr (also Lubābah al-Kubrā) was the wife of al-‘Abbās b. ‘Abd al-Muṭṭalib b. Hāshim, the Prophet’s uncle and the man from whom the dynasty took its name. Ṭabarī, III, 2335; Dhahabi, Siyar, II, 314–15; Ḥisfāḥānī, Maqāṭīl, 20.

461. Za’rāh b. Mishrāb b. Ma’di was the wife of ‘Abdallāh b. al-‘Abbās b. ‘Abd al-Muṭṭalib b. Hāshim, i.e., Ibn ‘Abbās, the famous Qur’ānic exegete (muflissir) and muhaddith. Ṭabarī, III, 2335.
From them descends but one chaste woman of noble lineage, held by her people in highest esteem.

According to 'Umar—Muhammad b. 'Abbad: Al-Sindi, the mawla of the Commander of the Faithful, told me that when 'Uqbah b. Salm had made his report to Abū Ja'far, the caliph decided to make the Pilgrimage and said to 'Uqbah, "When I reach such and such a place, the Ḥasanids, led by 'Abdallāh, will come to meet me. I shall treat him with deference, seat him in the place of honor, and call for the morning repast. After we have finished our meal, I will catch your eye, and you go stand right in front of him. He will avert his glance from you, so go round behind him until you can touch his back with your big toe, doing so until he is forced to look at you. That's all you need to do, but beware lest he sees you while he is eating."

Abū Ja'far then set off, pressing on through to the region where the Ḥasanids came to meet him. He seated 'Abdallāh beside him and called for the meal. When they had eaten it, Abū Ja'far called for its removal. He then turned to 'Abdallāh and said, "Abū Muhammad, surely, recognizing the covenants and compacts you've given me, you wish me no evil nor conspire against me as ruler."462 "That is so, Commander of the Faithful," he replied. At this Abū Ja'far glanced at 'Uqbah, who circled around until he stood in front of 'Abdallāh, but the latter turned away from him. 'Uqbah then went around463 until he stood behind 'Abdallāh's back, and touched him with his toe, at which 'Abdallāh lifted up his head and looked at him. Realizing the situation, 'Abdallāh rushed over to kneel before Abū Ja'far and said, "Forgive me, Commander of the Faithful, and may God forgive you." The caliph retorted, "May God not forgive me if I forgive you." Then he ordered him to be confined.

According to 'Umar—Bakr b. 'Abdallāh b. 'Āsim, the mawla of Quraybah bt. 'Abd al-Raḥmān b. Abi Bakr al-Ṣiddiq464—'Ali b.

464. Quraybah bt. 'Abd al-Raḥmān b. Abi Bakr al-Ṣiddiq was the daughter of the first caliph's eldest son, and niece of Muḥammad's wife 'A'ishah. Dhahabi, Siyar, II, 471–73.
The Events of the Year 144

Rabāh b. Shabīb, the brother of Ibrāhīm—Ṣāliḥ, the sāhib al-musallā: I was standing in attendance on Abū Ja‘far while he was having breakfast in Awtās on his way to Mecca. With him at table were ‘Abdallāh b. Ḥasan, Abū al-Karrām al-Ja‘fari, and a group of the Bānū al-‘Abbās. He turned to ‘Abdallāh and said, “O Abū Muḥammad, I see that Muḥammad and Ibrāhīm feel an aversion to my company. I am most desirous that they be my friends, that they come to me so that I can establish close contact and be on personal terms with them.” ‘Abdallāh bowed his head in silence for a long time. Then he raised his head and said, “By your right [to know the truth], Commander of the Faithful, I have no knowledge of them or of what land they’re in. They have entirely left my control.” Abū Ja‘far continued, “Don’t say this. Abū Muḥammad, write to them and to someone who will convey your letter to them.”

On this day Abū Ja‘far ignored the greater part of his morning repast, turning instead toward ‘Abdallāh. While ‘Abdallāh swore that he had no idea where Muḥammad and Ibrāhīm were, Abū Ja‘far kept repeating, “Don’t say this, Abū Muḥammad, don’t say this, Abū Muḥammad, don’t say this, Abū Muḥammad.” The reason why Muḥammad was so strenuously avoiding Abū Ja‘far was because in Mecca, with certain of the Mu’tazilah, Abū Ja‘far had contracted to support his claim.


---

465. İşfahānī, Maqātīl, 213, gives the name as ‘Alī b. Riyāh.
466. Awtās was a stop on the route from al-Baṣrah to Mecca. Yaqūt, Buldān, I, 281; Cornu, Répertoires, 71.
467. Tabari, Addenda et Emendanda, p. DCCXXXI, for the addition of “al-Ja‘fari”; İşfahānī, Maqātīl, 213, omits.
468. Ya’nisd bi with Tabari, Addenda et Emendanda, p. DCCXXXI.
469. Lā ta‘fal. Tabari, Glossarium, s.v. fa‘ala.
470. Wa-kāna shiddatu harabi Muḥammadin min Abi Ja‘far. Tabari, Glossarium, s.v. haraba.
471. See the account on p. 86. Sources cited by Elad, “Siege of al-Wāsiṭ,” 84, specify the location of this meeting as a village near Medina called al-Abwā‘.
they and I were in his presence while he was busy looking at a letter. At this point al-Mahdi [the caliph-designate] began to speak, but his Arabic was full of mistakes. 'Abdallah said, "Commander of the Faithful, will you put this fellow in the hands of someone who could correct his speech? He speaks as carelessly as the slave girl!" The caliph didn't catch on, so I winked at 'Abdallah, but he didn't notice and took up the subject again with Abū Ja'far. But the caliph would not rise to it and said, "Where is your son?" "I don't know," replied 'Abdallah. The caliph said, "You must bring him to me," to which 'Abdallah responded, "If he were right under my feet, I would not raise them from him." At this Abū Ja'far said, "O Rabî', take him into custody."

According to 'Umar—Mūsā b. Sa'id b. 'Abd al-Rahmān al-Jumahī: Abū Ja'far felt continuing resentment against 'Abdallah b. Hasan for having taken Abū al-'Abbās for use in a pastiche:

Haven't you seen Hawshab about to build dwellings for use of the Banū Nutaylah?

In fact, when he ordered 'Abdallah's imprisonment, the caliph said, "Were you not the one who said of Abū al-'Abbās:

Haven't you seen Hawshab about to build dwellings for use of the Banū Nutaylah?

even though he had great trust in you and treated you most kindly?"

473. Ya'fiku 'afk al-amah. Tabari, Addenda et Emendanda, p. DCCXXXI, and Glossarium, s.v. ghafala.
474. Fa-lam yantabih lahā, following Ibrahim's edition, VII, 524, and Tabari, Addenda et Emendanda, p. DCCXXXI.
475. He is also cited on p. 152.
476. Variants of this name include "Buqaylah" (Leiden text) and "Nufaylah" (Addenda et Emendanda, p. DCCXXXI). Nutaylah bt. Janab b. Kulayb b. Malik b. 'Amr is mentioned by Tabari, III, 2311, as the mother of al-'Abbās b. 'Abd al-Mu'talib b. Hāshim. Ibrahim's edition, VII, 525, and Isfahani, Maqātil, 175, complete the quatrain, quoting from the latter's Kitāb al-aghānī: "He hopes to live the span of Noah/but God's command comes to pass each night." Tabari, III, 2507, also offers a variant: "Haven't you seen Hawshab recently building/palaces for the Banū Nutaylah? He hopes to live the span of Noah/but God's command befalls (yatraqu) each night."
According to 'Umar—Muḥammad b. Yaḥyā—al-Ḥarīth b. Iṣḥāq—Abū Ḥunayn: I came to see 'Abdallāh b. Ḥasan when he was in prison. He asked, "Did anything of note happen today?" "Yes," I said, "the caliph commanded that your household goods and slaves be sold, but I didn't see anyone offering a bid." 'Abdallāh exclaimed, "And yet, you know, Abū Ḥunayn, I swear, had my daughters and I been brought forth as slaves, we would have been bought!"

According to 'Umar—Muḥammad b. Yaḥyā—al-Ḥarīth b. Iṣḥāq: Abū Ja‘far left while 'Abdallāh b. Ḥasan was imprisoned. He remained in confinement for three years.

According to 'Umar—'Abdallāh b. Iṣḥāq b. al-Qāsim b. Iṣḥāq b. 'Uthmān, the mawla of the family of 'Amr b. 'Uthmān—Abū Ḥabbār al-Muzani: When Abū Ja‘far made the Pilgrimage in 140, Muḥammad and Ibrāhīm, the sons of 'Abdallāh who were in hiding, made the Pilgrimage in that year, too. [Those who supported their cause] met, therefore, in Mecca, intending treachery against Abū Ja‘far. Al-Ashtar 'Abdallāh b. Muḥammad b. 'Abdallāh477 said to them, "I will deal with him for you." Muḥammad declared, "No, by God, I will not assassinate him before I have summoned him to our cause." This wrecked their plans and what they had agreed upon. Incidentally, one of Abū Ja‘far’s Khurāsānī army commanders had collaborated with them in this.478 Ismā‘īl b. Ja‘far b. Muḥammad al-A‘raj479 presented himself to Abū Ja‘far and reported their scheme to him. Consequently, the caliph sent in search of the army officer, but without success. He did, however, succeed in seizing a group of his associates. The man himself got away, together with a slave with whom he had entrusted the sum of roughly 2,000 dinārs, which the slave had brought to

---

477. Al-Ashtar 'Abdallāh b. Muḥammad b. 'Abdallāh was sent by his father to solicit the support of 'Umar b. Ḥaḍī during the time when he was governor of Sind. He was killed in 151/768–69 by 'Umar's replacement as governor, Hishām b. 'Amr al-Ṭaghlibī. Tabar'i, III, 360–64; Ḥafṣ, Maqātil, 310–14.

478. Ibn al-Aṯīr, Kamīl, V, 518, identifies him as Khālid b. Ḥāḍī b. Ḥassān who was known as Abū al-ʿAsākīr. See the account on p. 102.

him when he was with Muhammad. The latter, in turn, divided it up among his associates.480

According to Abū Habbār: Muḥammad ordered me to buy camels for the man, to outfit him, and to transport him in a domed litter (qubbah).481 Accordingly, I placed him in a camel train and set off with him in the direction of Medina until I had conveyed him there. Then Muḥammad arrived and brought the man to his father, ʿAbdallāh. ʿAbdallāh dispatched both the officer and his slave to a certain district in Khurāsān. Abū Jaʿfar began to kill the associates of this army officer whose situation we have just mentioned.

According to ʿUmar—Muḥammad b. Yaḥyā b. Muḥammad—his father—his father: I came to Ziyād b. ʿUbaydallāh one morning when Abū Jaʿfar was in Medina. He said, “Let me tell you about a remarkable experience I had last night. The messengers of the Commander of the Faithful roused me at midnight. (Now Ziyād had moved because of the Commander of the Faithful’s arrival at his house in al-Balāt.)482 His messengers banged on the door, and I emerged [from my bed chamber] wearing nothing but my waist wrapper (izār).483 I awoke my slaves and eunuchs in the gallery of the house, telling them, “Even if they tear down the house, none of you must say anything to them.” Ziyād continued, “They knocked for a long time and then went away. They stayed away for a while and then showed up again with a battering ram, which made it seem like484 they had with them again as many men or twice that number. They banged on the gate with iron clubs and shouted out, but still no one spoke to them. At this they went back and stayed away for another while. Then they brought something that there was no resisting. I thought, “By God, they are pulling down the house around me,” so I ordered [the gate] to be opened, and I went out to them. They started to

480. The pronouns here do not allow a definite assignment of the action.
481. Ṭabarī, Glossarium, s.v. qabba.
482. Ṭabarī, Addenda et Emendanda, p. DCXXX, notes this as the site of al-Zawrāʾ, ʿUthmān b. ʿAffān’s house in Medina. Ṭabarī, I, 2827.
484. Shabih an. Ṭabarī, Glossarium, s.v. shabbaha.
rush at me, intending to carry me off. I now began to hear one of them express condolences all the way to their handing me over to the Dār Marwān. 485 Two men grabbed me by the upper arms and made me quick-step over the ground [like an ostrich] 486 or some such until they brought me to the antechamber of the great dome. There I saw al-Rabī‘ standing, who said, “Alas, Ziyād, what have you done to us and to yourself during this night?” He led me forward and drew back the curtain covering the door of the domed room. He then made me enter, standing between me between the two doors. At the sides of the domed room there were glowing candles and a servant standing beside each. On a carpet, sitting back on his heels supported only by his sword straps, with neither cushion nor prayer rug under him, was Abū Ja‘far. He had his head bowed and was scratching at his hand with a mace. Al-Rabī‘ informed me that he had been like this from the time of the dusk prayer until this hour. I stood there for so long that I expected the dawn would be called, affording me some relief. He spoke not a single word to me. Finally, he raised his head to me and said, “You son of a bitch, where are Muḥammad and Ibrāhīm?” He then bowed his head again, scratching even longer than before. Raising his head for a second time, he repeated, “Where are Muḥammad and Ibrāhīm, you son of a bitch? May God kill me if I do not kill you.” I said to him, “Hear me; let me speak to you.” “Speak,” he said. I then said to him, “You scared them away; you sent a messenger with the money you ordered divided among the Banū Ḥāshim. Stopping in al-Qādisiyah, 487 he drew forth a knife, sharpened it, and announced, ‘The Commander of the Faithful sent me to slaughter Muḥammad and Ibrāhīm.’ The two of them heard about that and fled.” “Leave me,” he said, so I went away.

485. The governor’s residence, its name deriving from the Umayyad caliph, Marwān b. al-Ḥakam, who served twice as governor of Medina, i.e., 41-48/661-68 and 54-57/674-77. EI², s.v. Marwān I b. al-Ḥakam [C. E. Bosworth].
487. Al-Qādisiyah was the first stage southwest of al-Ḵūfah on the road to Mecca and site of the Muslim victory against the army of Yazdajird III. Yaqūt, Buldān, IV, 291-93; Le Strange, Lands, 76; EI², s.v. [L. Veccia Vaglieri].
According to ‘Umar—‘Abdallāh b. Rāshid b. Yazīd, who was nicknamed “al-Akkār” [the ploughman], a man from Fayd—one of the mawla of the Banū Maḥūl, the wheat dealers: ‘Abdawayh and certain associates of his were in Mecca in the year that Abū Ja’far made the Pilgrimage. ‘Abdawayh said to his confederates, “Between [the hills of] al-Šafā and al-Marwah I intend to run this lance [harbah] through Abū Ja’far’s mouth.” ‘Abdallāh b. Ḥasan heard about that and forbade him to do so, saying, “You are in an exalted place [i.e., holy ground], and I don’t think you should do that.” Abū Ja’far had an army officer by the name of Khālid b. Ḥassān, also called “Abū ‘Asākir” [Master of the Troops], who commanded 1,000 men and who had supported ‘Abdawayh and his confederates. Abū Ja’far said to him, “Tell me about yourself and about ‘Abdawayh and al-‘Uṭāridī. What did you intend to do in Mecca?” When Khālid had described his plans, the caliph asked, “What held you back?” To this Khālid responded, “‘Abdallāh b. Ḥasan.” The caliph then made away with him, and he has not been seen up to the present.

According to ‘Umar—Muḥammad b. Yaḥyā—al-Ḥārith b. Ishāq: Once ‘Abdallāh had been arrested, Abū Ja’far intensified the search for his two sons. He sent one of his spies along with a letter he had written as if it were addressed to Muḥammad from his supporters [al-ši‘ah], in which they reminded Muḥammad of their obedience to him and their eagerness for action. He also sent money and fine things with the spy. The man arrived in Medina and, having presented himself to ‘Abdallāh b. Ḥasan, asked him where Muḥammad was. ‘Abdallāh told him that Muḥammad

488. Fayd was a settlement in the north-central area of the Arabian peninsula that lay about halfway along the pilgrimage route from al-Kūfah to Mecca and Medina. El2, Suppl., s.v. [C. E. Bosworth]; Yāqūt, Buldān, IV, 282–83; Cornu, Répertoires, 91.
490. Al-Šafā and al-Marwah are two little hills in Mecca that form the site of part of the mandated Pilgrimage rituals. El1, s.v. al-Šafā [B. Joel], and Sa’y [M. Gaudefroy-Demombynes].
491. The harbah, or ‘anazah, was a symbol of sovereign authority. Tabari, Glossarium, s.v. hariba; El2, s.v. ‘Anaza [G. C. Miles].
492. Fi mawdīf in ‘azimin. Tabari, Glossarium, s.v. ‘azuma.
493. ‘Uṭārid b. ‘Awf were a subgroup of the Banū Tamīm. Caskel, Ğamharat an-nasab, I, 77, II, 580.
was on the mountain of Juhaynah and said, "Make your way to 'Ali b. Hasan, the pious man known as 'al-Agharr [the illustrious, the noble] who is at Dhū al-Abar. He will guide you." The spy went to al-Agharr, and the latter guided him. Now Abū Ja'far had a confidential scribe who was sympathetic to the cause of the shi'ah. He wrote to 'Abdallāh b. Hasan, telling him about that spy and [the true nature of] what had been sent to him. When the letter reached 'Abdallāh, they were frightened and sent Abū Habbār to 'Ali b. Hasan and to Muhammad to warn them about the man. Abū Habbār got as far as 'Ali b. Hasan, who, upon questioning, informed Abū Habbār that he had guided the spy to Muhammad. Abū Habbār said, "Then I came to where Muḥammad was and found him sitting in a cave together with 'Abdallāh b. 'Āmir al-Aslami, the two sons of Shujā', and others. The man [i.e., the spy] was with them, speaking the loudest and acting the jolliest. When he saw me, a certain air of distrust appeared on him, but I sat down with the group and conversed for a time. Then I leaned over to Muḥammad and said that I needed something. He got up, as did I, and I told him about the man. Reciting the formula "We are God's and to Him is our return," he asked my opinion. I said, "You can do one of three things, as you wish." "What are they?" he asked. I said, "You could let me kill the man." To this he replied, "I must not let myself shed blood except under compulsion. What else?" I said, "You could clap him in irons and carry him with you wherever you roam." To this Muḥammad responded, "Are we to be concerned about him in addition to our fear and haste? What else?" I said, "You could

494. The territory belonging to the tribe so named, a division of the Quḍā'ah, lay along the northwestern littoral of the Arabian peninsula. Mount Raḍwā (see Ṭabarī, III, 166, below) lies within this region. El¹, s.v. Djuhaina [C. H. Becker]; El², s.v. Kudā'ā [M. J. Kister]; Yāqūt, Buldān, I, 194–95.

495. This is 'Ali b. al-Hasan b. al-Hasan b. al-Hasan ("al-Muthallath"); 'Ali b. Abī Ṭālib, who was also known as 'Ali b. 'Abīd and 'Ali al-Khayr. Isfahānī, Magātīl, 190–95; El², s.v. al-Husayn b. 'Ali, Ṣāḥib Fakhkh (L. Veccia Vaglieri).

496. Conjectural vocalization. There is no reference to this place in the standard geographical literature.

497. Abu 'Amir al-Madani (d. 150/767) was a traditionist characterized variously as weak and as trustworthy. Ibn Ḥajar, Tahdhib, V, 241; Van Arendonk, Débuts, 313–328; Van Arendonk, Opkomst, 286–87.

498. زاهرا 'اللهي al-nakara. Ṭabarī, Glossarium, s.v. nakira.

499. Qur'ān 2:156.
bind and fetter him and leave him with someone you trust here on Juhaynah.’ ‘That’s what I’ll do,’ he said. We returned [to the group]. The man, however, had taken alarm and fled. I asked where he was, and they said, ‘He stood up with his water bag and poured some water from it. Then he went behind that projecting rock as if to perform his ablution.’ We went all over the mountain and its environs, but it was if the earth had closed over him.

The spy proceeded on foot until he got onto the road. There some desert Arabs passed him, carrying a load to Medina. He said to one of them, ‘Empty this grain sack and put me in it; I will deal equitably with its owner, and your reward will be such and such.’ The man agreed and emptied the sack and transported the spy as far as Medina. The latter then went to Abū Ja‘far and gave him a complete report. Having forgotten both Abū Habbār’s name and patronymic, he [gratuitously] gave it as ‘Wabr’. Abū Ja‘far therefore wrote in search of Wabr [instead of Abū Habbār] al-Muzānī. A certain man by that name was brought to the caliph, who questioned him regarding the story of Muḥammad and what the spy had told him. The man swore that he knew nothing about this, but at the caliph’s command he was given 700 lashes and confined until Abū Ja‘far died.

According to ʿUmar—Muḥammad b. Yaḥyā—al-Ḥārith b. Iṣhāq: Abū Ja‘far remained intent on searching for Muḥammad, so he wrote urging Ziyād b. ʿUbayḍallāh al-Ḥārithī to redeem the pledges he had given. Now Muḥammad actually came to Medina, and Ziyād heard of this. Ziyād acted graciously toward him, giving him a guarantee of safety so that he could show his face to the people in company with Ziyād. Muḥammad promised to do so. Ziyād then mounted before dawn, having made an appointment [to meet] Muḥammad at the camel market. The two met there, and Muḥammad showed himself quite openly with no attempt at concealment. Ziyād stood right beside him.
and declared, “This man, O people, is Muḥammad b. ‘Abdallāh b. Ḥasan.” Then he turned to him and said, “Take yourself to any place you wish in God’s lands.” Muḥammad went into hiding, and repeated reports of that incident continued to Abū Ja‘far.

According to ‘Umar—‘Īsā b. ‘Abdallāh—someone whom he trusted: Ibrāhīm b. ‘Abdallāh entered Ziyād’s presence wearing a mail shirt under his clothing. Ziyād touched it and said, “Abū Ishāq, it’s as if you suspect me of something that will never befall you from me!”

According to ‘Umar—‘Īsā—his father: Ziyād rode in company with Muhammad and brought him to the market. The people of Medina kept shouting out “the Mahdi, the Mahdi,” so Muḥammad went into hiding, not to reappear until he came out in open revolt.

According to ‘Umar—Muḥammad b. Yahyā—al-Ḥārīth b. Ishāq: When successive reports of what Ziyād b. ‘Ubaydallah had done reached Abū Ja‘far, he dispatched Abū al-Azhar, a man from Khurāsān, to Medina. The caliph wrote a letter for Abū al-Azhar to take with him and handed over some other documents, commanding Abū al-Azhar not to read the letter he was being given until he stopped at al-A‘was at one post station’s (barīd) distance from Medina. Upon arrival there, Abū al-Azhar read the letter and discovered therein the appointment of ‘Abd al-`Aziz b. al-Muṭṭalib b. ‘Abdallāh, a judge for Ziyād b. ‘Ubaydallāh, as governor of Medina. Further, it contained orders that Ziyād be bound in irons, that his wealth be confiscated, that everything he possessed be seized, that his agents and associates be arrested, and that both he and they be sent on to Abū Ja‘far. Abū al-Azhar reached Medina on the 22d of Jumādā II in 141 and found Ziyād [had gone out] at the head of his retinue. Upon

---

503. Al-Muhallab b. al-‘Ubaythir al-Mahri, as the name is given by Balādhurī, Ansāb al-ashrāf, III, 190. See also Caskel, Gamharat an-nasab, I, 328, II, 421.
504. Yaqūt, Buldān, I, 223, identifies al-A‘was as a ravine (shi‘b) belonging to the Banū Hudhayl in the Tihamah region.
505. In the western part of the ‘Abbāsid lands, postal stages were normally situated about twenty-four kilometers apart and about half that distance in the eastern lands. EI², s.v. Barid [D. Sourdel]; Bosworth, “Abū ‘Abdallāh al-Khwārazmī,” 141-42; Sauvaget, La Poste aux chevaux.
507. Monday, October 30, 758.
asking "Where is the Amir?" he was told that Ziyād had ridden forth. Then the messengers conveyed news of his arrival to Ziyād. Abū al-Azhar moved quickly ahead to enter the Dār Marwān. He gained admittance to Ziyād and presented him with a letter from Abū Ja'far, written on a *thuluth*,\(^\text{508}\) which commanded him to hear and obey. When Ziyād had read it, he said, "I am ready to hear and obey; command what you wish, Abū al-Azhar." "Send for `Abd al-`Azīz b. al-Muṭṭalib," Abū al-Azhar replied. Ziyād did so, and Abū al-Azhar [or Ziyād, who is still *amīr]* presented `Abd al-`Azīz with a letter ordering him to pay heed to Abū al-Azhar. When he read it, `Abd al-`Azīz said, "I am ready to hear and obey." Then Abū al-Azhar presented to Ziyād a letter ordering him to surrender the governorship to Ibn al-Muṭṭalib, while to Ibn al-Muṭṭalib he handed a letter of appointment. Next Abū al-Azhar said to Ibn al-Muṭṭalib, "Send me four fetters and a blacksmith." When both had been brought, he demanded, "Shackle Abū Yahyā." Ziyād, therefore, was shackled and his wealth confiscated. (In the treasury there were 85,000 dinār.) Every single one of his agents was arrested. Abū al-Azhar departed with Ziyād and these others. When they were in Ṭaraf al-Madinah,\(^\text{509}\) his agents stood before Ziyād and paid their respects to him. Impressed with their bearing and valor, Ziyād exclaimed: "You are as dear to me as my father! By God, when Abū Ja'far sees you, I don't care what he does to me!"

According to `Umar—Muḥammad b. Yaḥyā—al-Ḥārith b. Iṣḥāq—his maternal uncle, `Alī b. `Abd al-Ḥamīd:\(^\text{510}\) We went to see Ziyād on his way, and one night, as I marched below his litter, he turned to me. "By God," declared Ziyād, "I don't feel that I've done anything wrong against the Commander of the Faithful, but I suppose he is angry with me about the sons of `Abdallāh and resents the fact that, for me, the blood of the sons [i.e., descendants] of Fāṭimah is precious." They then proceeded as far as al-

---

\(^{508}\) Ṭabarī, *Glossarium*, s.v. *thallatha*, defines this as "a large piece of paper, the third part of an entire sheet" and provides the fuller term, *thuluth qirāsīn*, from Iṣṭahānī's *Kitāb al-aghānī*.

\(^{509}\) Ṭaraf al-Madinah was the last station before Medina on the way from al-Kūfah. Yaqūt, *Buldān*, IV, 31; Cornu, *Répertoires*, 87.

\(^{510}\) Or `Abd al-Humayd.
The Events of the Year 144

Muḥammad b. ‘Abd al-‘Azīz escaped from them and returned to Medina. Abū Ja’far imprisoned the others but eventually released them.

According to ʿUmar—Īsā b. ʿAbdallāh—a trustworthy individual: When Abū Ja’far dispatched Mabhūt and Ibn Abī ʿĀṣiyah in search of Muḥammad, Mabhūt was the one who seized Ziyād, so Ziyād said:

I bear the offense of a people not my own,

but the left hand does not sin against the right.

According to ʿUmar—Īsā b. ʿAbdallāh—ʿAbdallāh b. ʿImrān b. Abī Farwah: Abū Farwah al-Shaʿbānī, one of Abū Ja’far’s army commanders, and I, together with Ziyād b. Abū Ja’far had sent him in search of the Ḥasanids. In fact, one day I was traveling with Abū al-Azhar when someone came right up next to him and said, “I have some well-intentioned advice about Muḥammad and Ibrāhīm.” Abū al-Azhar told him to go away, but the man persisted, “It is sincere advice for the Commander of the Faithful.” “Leave us,” said Abū al-Azhar, “and watch out; people have been killed for such.” But the man refused to go away, and Abū al-Azhar ignored him until the coast was clear. Then with his sword he made a gash in the man’s belly and threw him to the side.

After Ziyād, Abū Ja’far installed Muḥammad b. Khālid as governor of Medina.

According to ʿUmar—Muḥammad b. Yaḥyā—al-Ḥarīth b. Isḥāq: Abū Ja’far installed Muḥammad b. Khālid as governor of Medina after Ziyād, commanding him to press on with the search for Muḥammad and to spend freely in the effort. Muḥammad b. Khālid traveled in haste and arrived in Medina at the new


512. Muḥammad b. ‘Abd al-ʿAzīz b. ʿUmar b. ʿAbd al-Rahmān b. ʿAwf al-Zuhri, who has appeared earlier in Ṭabarī as a transmitter, was descended from ʿAbd al-Rahmān b. ʿAwf, an important Meccan convert from the Banū Zuhrah. EI, s.v. ʿAbd al-Rahmān b. ʿAwf (W. Montgomery Watt).

513. This would indicate that ʿAbd al-ʿAzīz b. al-Muṭṭalib (see p. 105, above) was an interim appointment.
moon\textsuperscript{514} of Rajab 141. The people of Medina knew nothing of his appointment until his messenger arrived from al-Shuqrah, which lies between al-A'wa^ and al-\textsuperscript{\text{\textregistered}}taraf, two nights' journey from Medina. In the treasury he found 70,000 dinars and 1 million dirhams. He used that entire sum, as well as many other monies that he raised in his audit, expending them on the search for Mu\textsuperscript{\text{\textregistered}}ammad. However, Ab\textsuperscript{\text{\textregistered}}u Ja'far judged him to be sluggish and began to have suspicions about him, so he wrote ordering him to make a thorough search of Medina and its environs. Mu\textsuperscript{\text{\textregistered}}ammad b. Khalid gave orders to the treasury officials to pay wages to anyone who participated in the search. Thus they paid wages, but al-Gh\textsuperscript{\text{\textregistered}}diri al-Mudhik\textsuperscript{515} sold\textsuperscript{516} [his share], incurring a debt with the people of 1,000 dinars, but this too was depleted and wiped out. They also went out to the surrounding areas in search of Mu\textsuperscript{\text{\textregistered}}ammad. Al-Qasri [i.e., Mu\textsuperscript{\text{\textregistered}}ammad b. Khalid] ordered the people of Medina to remain in their houses for seven days. His messengers and soldiers made the rounds of the people's houses in order to search, but they did not come up with anything. (Al-Qasri had written documents for his assistants, giving them supreme authority so that no one could reprove them.) But because Ab\textsuperscript{\text{\textregistered}}u Ja'far found Mu\textsuperscript{\text{\textregistered}}ammad b. Khalid sluggish and saw what funds he had used up, he dismissed him.

According to 'Umar—Ts\textsuperscript{\text{\textregistered}}a b. 'Abdallah—Husayn b. Yazid—Ibn Dabbah: The problem of Mu\textsuperscript{\text{\textregistered}}ammad and Ibr\textsuperscript{\text{\textregistered}}him weighed heavily upon Ab\textsuperscript{\text{\textregistered}}u Ja'far, so he sent someone to summon Ab\textsuperscript{\text{\textregistered}}u al-Si'\textsuperscript{\text{\textregistered}}l\textsuperscript{\text{\textregistered}}a\textsuperscript{517}, a man of Qays b. 'Ayl\textsuperscript{\text{\textregistered}}n,\textsuperscript{518} and said, "Come now, advise me in the matter of these two men. The business with them has really given me grief." Ab\textsuperscript{\text{\textregistered}}u al-Si'\textsuperscript{\text{\textregistered}}l\textsuperscript{\text{\textregistered}}a replied, "I think that you

\textsuperscript{514} Although actual observation of the new moon can be problematic, this term usually connotes the first day of the lunar month, i.e., 1 Rajab 141 (Tuesday, November 7, 758). \textit{EF}, s.v. Hil\textsuperscript{\text{\textregistered}}l (J. Schacht).

\textsuperscript{515} For his later confrontation with Mu\textsuperscript{\text{\textregistered}}ammad b. 'Abdallah see p. 194.

\textsuperscript{516} Wa-b\textsuperscript{\text{\textregistered}}\textsuperscript{\text{\textregistered}}a, following Tabari, \textit{Addenda et Emendanda}, p. DCCXXXII.

\textsuperscript{517} Tabari, \textit{Addenda et Emendanda}, p. DCCXXXII. Ibn al-Athir, \textit{K\textsuperscript{\text{\textregistered}}mil}, V, 519, gives the name as Ab\textsuperscript{\text{\textregistered}} al-'Al\textsuperscript{\text{\textregistered}}.

\textsuperscript{518} Qays 'Ayl\textsuperscript{\text{\textregistered}}n was a principal subdivision of the Mu\textsuperscript{\text{\textregistered}}dar, one of two major tribal groupings in ancient northern Arabia. \textit{EF}, s.v. Kays 'Ayl\textsuperscript{\text{\textregistered}}n (G. Baer and M. Hoexter); Caskel, \textit{Gamharat an-nasab}, I, 92, II, 456.
should appoint as governor one of the descendants of al-Zubayr or Ṭalḥah, for those people would conduct a truly vengeful search for the two of them. I swear they would not let Muḥammad and Ibrahim rest until they ferreted them out for you!” “May God confound you!” said the caliph; “what excellent advice you’ve brought! I had, of course, thought of that, but I vow to God that I will not take vengeance against the people of my house by the hands of my enemy or theirs. Yet I could send some poor Arab of no consequence, and he could do just what you said.” Abū Jaʿfar thus sent Riyāḥ b. Ḫayyān.

According to ʿUmar—Muḥammad b. Yaḥyā—ʿAbdallāh b. Yaḥyā—Mūsā b. ʿAbd al-ʿAzīz: One day, after Abū Jaʿfar had decided to dismiss Muḥammad b. Khālid from the governorship of Medina, he went out riding and, upon leaving his house, was met by Yazīd b. Usayd al-Sulāmī. The caliph called to him, and so Yazīd came alongside him. Abū Jaʿfar asked, “Could you put me on to some poor but promising Qaysī youth whom I could enrich and ennoble, empowering him over the Lord of the Yemen, who will lead him a dance, i.e., Ibn al-Qasrī?” “Yes, Commander of the Faithful,” replied Yazīd, “I know just the one.” “Who is he?” the caliph asked. Yazīd replied, “Riyāḥ b. Ḫayyān al-Murri.” The caliph cautioned, “Be sure not to men-

---

519. Al-Zubayr b. al-ʿAwwām b. Khuwaylid b. Asad al-Ḥawārī was an early convert of whom the Prophet Muḥammad said, “Every prophet has an apostle (ḥawārī), and my apostle is al-Zubayr.” Dhahabi, Siyar, I, 41–67; EI, s.v. [A. J. Wensinck].

520. Ṭalḥah b. ʿAbaydallāh was a Companion of the Prophet who shielded the latter in his retreat at the Battle of Uhud. EI, s.v. [G. Levi della Vida].

521. Both Ṭalḥah and al-Zubayr were central figures in the Battle of the Camel, an attempt to avenge ʿUthmān and to wrest power from ʿAli b. Abī Ṭalib, and lost their lives in that episode. Their descendants would thus not have any great affection for the ʿAlīds.

522. Suʿayliḳan min al-ʿarab. See Ṭabarī, Glossarium, s.v. saʿlaka.


524. Yazīd b. Usayd b. Zāfīr b. Asmāʾ al-Sulāmī [d. after 162/779], son of a Christian mother, was a prominent army commander during the Umayyad caliphate and served as governor of Armenia for al-Saffāh and al-Manṣūr. Ṭabarī, III, 81, 374, 493; Balādhuri, Futūḥ, 209–10; Zirikli, Aʾlām, VIII, 179; Kennedy, Early Abbasid Caliphate, 57–58.

tion this to anyone." Then he left and ordered fine mounts, clothing, and baggage to be prepared for the journey. When the caliph came away from the final night prayer, he summoned Riyāḥ, told him what an affliction Ziyād and Ibn al-Qasri’s deception in the matter of the sons of ‘Abdallāh had been to him, and appointed him the governor of Medina. He demanded that Riyāḥ set off immediately, without even going back to his house, and he commanded him to exert every effort in the search for Muḥammad and Ibrāhīm. Riyāḥ left in such a hurry that he arrived in Medina on Friday, 23 Ramaḍān 144.526

According to ‘Umar—Muḥammad b. Maʿrūf527—al-Faḍl b. al-Rabī’—his father:528 When Abū Jaʿfar’s problem with Muḥammad and Ibrāhīm had worn him down, I went out one day from his presence—or from my house on the way to him—and suddenly found a man who approached me. He said, “I am Riyāḥ b. Uthmān’s messenger to you. Riyāḥ says to you, ‘I have heard about the problem of Muḥammad and Ibrāhīm and about the duplicity of the governors in their affair. If the Commander of the Faithful appoints me governor of Medina, I give him my guarantee that I will seize them and bring them forth.’ I conveyed that to the Commander of the Faithful, and he wrote to him with his commission without witness.”

According to ‘Umar—Muḥammad b. Shabbah—Muḥammad b. Yaḥyā—‘Abdallāh b. Yaḥyā—Mūsā b. ‘Abd al-‘Azīz: When Riyāḥ entered the Dār Marwān and went into the gallery, he turned to one (some) of those with him and asked, “Is this the Dār Marwān?” They said it was, and he announced, “This is a place where people come and people go, unable to remain at rest;529 we, then, shall be the first to leave it [and do something].”

According to ‘Umar—Ayyūb b. ‘Umar—al-Zubayr b. al-Mundhir, the mawlā of ‘Abd al-Raḥmān b. al-‘Awwām: Riyāḥ b. Uthmān arrived accompanied by his chamberlain, known as Abū al-Bakhtārī, who had been a friend of my father’s in the days

526. December 25, 761.
528. I.e., al-Rabī’ b. Yūnus, the caliph’s mawlā.
529. Ḥadhīhi al-mihlāl al-miẓ‘ān, with Lane, Lexicon, II, 622, for mihlāl, and Ṭabari, Glossarium, s.v. ḥa’ana, for miẓ‘ān.
The Events of the Year 144

of al-Walid b. Yazid.530 Because of his friendship for my father, I used to visit him. One day he said to me, ‘Zubayr, when Riyāḥ entered the Dār Marwān, he said to me, ‘Is this the Dār Marwān? By God, it is certainly a place where people come and people go, unable to remain at rest.’ When the people parted from him531—‘Abdallāh being confined in the domed structure of the Dār leading to the [caliph’s] enclosure where Ziyād b. Ubaydallāh had imprisoned him—Riyāḥ said to me, ‘Take my hand, Abū al-Bakhtāri. We shall go see this old man.’ He advanced, leaning on me, until he came to a stop before ‘Abdallah b. Ḥasan and said, ‘By God, old man, the Commander of the Faithful did not make me governor because of close kinship or for any favor that my forebears did for him. You had better not lead me on as you did Ziyād and Ibn al-Qasrī. By God, I shall give you a bad time unless you bring me your sons, Muḥammad and Ibrāhim.’ ‘Abdallāh lifted up his head to him and said, ‘Yes; and, of course, you, by God, will be the Qaysī dripping red,532 slaughtered for it [my soul] like a butchered sheep’. Abū al-Bakhtāri remarked, ‘Riyāḥ left then, holding on to my hand. I could feel the chill of his hand and that he was shuffling on his feet because of what ‘Abdallah had said to him. I said, ‘By God, this man is not apprised of the unknown!’ ‘Alas,’ replied Riyāḥ, ‘God knows he only said what he has heard.’ Abū al-Bakhtāri concluded, ‘By God, he was in fact slaughtered for it like a sheep.’’’

According to ‘Umar—Muḥammad b. Yaḥyā—al-Hārīth b. Ishaq: Riyāḥ arrived in Medina and summoned [Muḥammad b. Khālid al-Qasrī] to ask him about the [public] funds. Muḥammad b. Khālid said, ‘This is my secretary; he is more knowledgeable about such matters than I.’ ‘I am asking you,’ Riyāḥ retorted, ‘and you are relegating me to your secretary!’ He commanded that he be stabbed in the neck and that he be lashed about the head with whips. Then he arrested Rizām, Muḥammad b. Khālid al-Qasrī’s secretary and mawlā, and punished him at length. He had him beaten fifteen lashes every other day, and, with his hand

---

530. Walid II, an Umayyad caliph who reigned for little more than a year (from 125/743 to 126/744) before being killed by agents of his successor, Yazid b. al-Walid b. ‘Abd al-Malik. El¹, s.v. (H. Lammens); Hawting, First Dynasty, 90–94. 531. Fa-lammad takashshafa al-nāsū ‘anhu. Ṭabarī, Glossarium, s.v. kashafa. 532. Innaka la azbarqu Qaysin. Ṭabarī, Addenda et Emendanda, p. DCCXXXII.
manacled to his neck from morning to night, he was made to follow Riyāḥ around the courtyard of the mosque and the open square. Secretly, Riyāḥ tried to get him to make accusations against Ibn Khālid, but he did not find Rizām amenable. One day during that time ʿUmar b. ʿAbdallāh al-Judhāmī, deputy to the chief of police, took him out, intending to beat him, but from feet to head he was one suppurating ulcer. ʿUmar asked, "This is the day for your lashing\textsuperscript{533} [again], so where do you want us to whip you?" "By God," Rizām replied, "there is no place left on my body to beat! But if you wish, then the palms of my hands." He then held out his hands and was beaten fifteen lashes on the palms.

Riyāḥ's messengers kept coming to Rizām, ordering him to make accusations against Ibn Khālid so that he could be set free. He sent back to Riyāḥ, "Tell them to leave me alone so that I can write a letter." Riyāḥ did so, but then he kept after him and sent word to him "to come with the letter that evening in front of the people and hand it over to me." When evening came, Riyāḥ sent for him. Rizām arrived to find Riyāḥ with a group of people, so he said, "Hear me, all of you, the Amir ordered me to write a letter making accusations against Ibn Khālid. I have indeed written such a letter to escape harm.\textsuperscript{534} I swear to you that everything in it is false." At Riyāḥ's orders he was given one hundred lashes and sent back to prison.

According to ʿUmar—Īsā b. ʿAbdallāh—his paternal uncle, ʿUbaydallāh b. Muḥammad b. ʿUmar b. ʿAlī: When God cast Adam down from the Garden, he set him up on [Mt.] Abū Qubays\textsuperscript{535} and raised up for him the entire earth so that he could view it, saying, "All of this is yours." Adam asked, "How, O Lord, will I know what is in it?" God then made for him the stars and said, "When you see the star such and such, it is [to be called] this, and when you see the star such and such it is [to be called] that." Therefore Adam came to know this from the stars. Then

\textsuperscript{533} Hadhā yawmu ghibbika. Tabari, Glossarium, s.v. ghibb.
\textsuperscript{534} Kitābān atanajjā bihi. Tabari, Addenda et Emendanda, p. DCCXXXIII, and Glossarium, s.v. najā.
\textsuperscript{535} Abū Qubays is the name of a hill overlooking the Great Mosque in Mecca, where Adam is said to be buried. \textit{EL}, s.v. Abū Qubays (G. Rentz); Yaqūt, \textit{Buldān}, I, 80–81.
that became too hard for him, so God sent from heaven a mirror in which Adam could see what was on earth, until, when Adam died, a satan called Faqtas went to get it. He then broke it and built upon the pieces a city in the east called Jabirat. When Sulaymân b. Dawûd asked about the mirror, he was told that Faqtas had taken it. Sulaymân summoned Faqtas and asked him about it. Faqtas said, “It is under the foundations of Jabirat.” “Bring it to me,” said Sulaymân. “Who will tear down the city?” asked Faqtas. Now they told Sulaymân to tell him, “You,” which he did. So Faqtas brought the mirror to Sulaymân, and Sulaymân put the parts of it back together. Then he bound its circumference with a strap and kept looking into it until his death. At this the satans pounced on it and carried it off, but a bit of it remained. The Banû Isrâ’il passed this bit down from one generation to the next until it came to the Exilarch [ra’s al-jâlût]. He brought it to Marwân b. Muḥammad, who kept polishing it and affixed it to another mirror. In it he saw something that he found repulsive, so he threw down the mirror, beheaded the Exilarch, and handed it over to one of his slave girls. She put it into a wad of cotton and then placed it in a stone. When Abu Ja’far became caliph, he asked about it and was told that a certain woman had the mirror. He searched until he had found her, she being [already] in his household. He, too, kept polishing it and put it into another mirror. Looking into it, he could see Muḥammad b. ‘Abdallâh, so he wrote to Riyâh b. ‘Uthmân telling him that Muḥammad was in some country where there were citrons and grapes and that he should look for him there. Now one of Abu Ja’far’s associates had written to Muḥammad, “Do not

536. For Faqtas and Faqtasah as the twin offspring of Iblis, see al-Kisâ’i, Tales of the Prophets, 19.
537. This vocalization is conjectural.
538. I.e., the Biblical and Qur’ânic prophet Solomon. According to a later account in Tâbarî, III, 321, the gates that Abû Ja’far used in building Baghdad came originally from the prophet Sulaymân via al-Ḥajjâj b. Yûsuf’s city of Wâsît.
539. The identity of these advisors is left indefinite.
540. The Resh Galuta was the lay leader of the Jewish community in Iraq. According to Eliezer Bashan, El, s.v. Exilarch, Solomon b. Hisdai served as Exilarch from 733-59. The caliph Marwân b. Muḥammad, however, died in 750.
541. Marwân II was the last caliph of the Umayyad dynasty. He reigned 127-32/744-50. El², s.v. [G.R. Hawting].
542. Or the pronouns could refer to the mirror itself.
stay in any place for longer than it takes the courier to go from
Iraq to Medina." Muḥammad, therefore, stayed on the move, and
Abū Jaʿfar saw him in al-Bayḍāʾ, 543 which is about twenty miles
beyond al-Ghābāḥ, 544 belonging to Ashjaʾ. 545 So he wrote to
Riyāḥ that Muḥammad was in a country where there were moun-
tains and tarns. 546 Riyāḥ searched but did not find him. Abū Jaʿfar
then wrote to him that now Muḥammad was on a mountain
where there were terebinth berries 547 and pitch. Riyāḥ said to
himself, "This must be Rādwa, 548 so again he looked for
Muḥammad but did not find him.

According to Abū Zayd 549—Abū Ṣafwān Naṣr b. Qudayd b.
Naṣr b. Sayyār: 550 I heard that Abū Jaʿfar owned a mirror in which
he could distinguish his enemy from his friend.

Iṣḥāq: Riyāḥ intensified the search for Muḥammad and was in-
formed that he was in one of the mountain gorges of Rādwa, a
mountain of Juhaynah in the administrative district of Yanbuʿ. 551

Riyāḥ thus appointed ʿAmr b. ʿUthmān b. Mālik al-Juhānī, 552 one

543. Al-Bayḍāʾ was the stage before Wādi al-Qurā on the northwestern route
into Mecca. Yaqūt, Buldān, I, 529–30; Cornu, Répertoires, 72.
544. Yaqūt, Buldān IV, 182, identifies al-Ghābāḥ simply as a place near Medina
on the way from Syria. The word itself connotes either a depression in the earth
or a thicket of wood or reeds. Groom, Arabic Topography, 90.
545. The Banū Ashjaʾ were one of the tribal subdivisions of Qays who affiliated
with the Prophet during his years in Medina and subsequently fought in the wars
of riddah and the further conquest of Arabia. Donner, Early Islamic Conquests,
71, 88; Caskel, Ġamharat an-nasab, I, 92, II, 201; Ibn Ḥazm, Jamharat ansab al-
ʿarab, 249–50.
546. The Leiden vocalization is qillāt, but see Dozy, Supplément, II, 395, for de
Goeje’s references to the alternative quillāt.
547. Al-habb al-akhdar. Ṭabarī, Glossarium, s.v. habb.
548. Rādwa is a mountain group in the territory of Juhaynah (see note 494, above) where Muḥammad b. al-Ḥanafīyyah is believed to have gone into occultation.
Yaqūt, Buldān, III, 51; Farmayan and Daniel, Shiʿite Pilgrimage to Mecca,
284, 288.
549. I.e., ʿUmar b. Shabbāb b. ʿAbidah.
550. Presumably a descendant of the noted Umayyad governor of Khurāsān,
Naṣr b. Sayyār al-Laythi [d. 131/748]. EI², s.v. [C. E. Bosworth].
551. Yanbuʿ is now a seaport on the west coast of the Arabian peninsula almost
on the same latitude as Medina; the name also applies to an inland oasis that lies
northeast of the port. Yaqūt, Buldān, V, 449–50, identifies it as the site of a wuqf
belonging to ʿAbbās b. Abī Ṭalīb. EI¹, s.v. [A. Grohmann]; Cornu, Répertoires, 89.
552. Caetani, Cronographia generale, 308.
of the Banū Jusham, as governor of Yanbu' and ordered him to search for Muḥammad, which he did. 'Amr was told that Muḥammad was in a mountain gorge of Raḍwā, so he went there with cavalry and infantry. This frightened Muḥammad. 'Amr appeared in force, but Muḥammad escaped. He had a little son, however, who was born during this fearful period and was in the care of one of his slave girls, and the child fell from the mountain and was dashed to pieces. 'Amr b. 'Uthmān then went away.

According to 'Umar—'Abdallāh b. Muḥammad b. Ḥakim al-Ta'i: When Muḥammad's son fell to his death and he suffered what he suffered, he spoke these lines:

In tattered clothes he suffers sore feet.

Sharp-edged flints afflict him.

Fear banished and disgraced him.

Thus it is with one who hates the heat of battle.

In death he'll have rest.

Death is a decree imposed on men's necks.

According to 'Umar—Īsā b. 'Abdallāh—his paternal uncle, 'Ubaydallāh b. Muḥammad: Muḥammad b. 'Abdallāh said, "While I was in Raḍwā together with a slave girl who was my concubine (and who had with her a little son of mine whom she was nursing), suddenly Ibn Sanūṭī, a mawla of the people of Medina, pounced on me in the mountain area where he had been looking for me. I left in flight, and the slave girl fled, but the little boy fell from her [grasp] and was dashed to pieces." 'Ubaydallāh continued, "Ibn Sanūṭī was brought to Muḥammad after the time when he came out in open revolt. 'Ibn Sanūṭī,' Muḥammad said, 'do you know what happened to the little boy?' 'Yes, by God, I do indeed,' he responded. Muḥammad, therefore, ordered him to be imprisoned, and he remained confined until Muḥammad was killed."

---

553. Jusham b. Muʿawiyah was a subdivision of the Hawāzin tribal group. El², s.v. Hawāzin [W. Montgomery Watt]; Watt, Muhammad at Medina, 81, 99–100; Caskel, Gamharat an-nasab, I, 92, II, 268–69.

554. His name is unknown [Īṣfahānī, Maqātil, 230–31], but Īṣfahānī gives his mother's name as Rakhayyah.

555. Ṭabārī quotes these lines again at III, 194, with slight variation.
According to ʿUmar—ʿAbd al-ʿAzīz b. Ziyād—his father: Muḥammad said, “I was going hither and thither in al-Harrah when suddenly I saw Riyāḥ and the horsemen. Quickly I turned away toward a well and stood between its two supporting posts. I had begun to draw water when Riyāḥ met me flat on. “God confound him,” he said; “he’s a true desert Arab with a good, strong arm!”

According to ʿUmar—Ibn Zabālah—ʿUthmān b. ʿAbd al-Raḥmān al-Juhanī—ʿUthmān b. Mālik: With his searching Riyāḥ made Muḥammad feel quite uneasy. Muḥammad said to me, “In the morning, come with us to the Mosque of Victory; there we will pray to God.” ʿUthmān continued, “I said the morning prayer, then went to him, and we set off together in the early morning. Muḥammad was wearing a rough shirt and a cloak of fine white linen. We left the place where he had been, but drawing near the Mosque, he suddenly turned aside, for there was Riyāḥ with a group of his associates on horseback. I said to Muḥammad, “There’s Riyāḥ! To God we belong and to Him is our return [i.e., the game is up!].” He said, paying him no heed: “Keep moving.” So I moved on, though my feet would scarcely carry me. Muḥammad himself turned off the road and sat down, settling his back against something beside the road. He let the fringes of his cloak fall over his face. Now he was a well-built man, but when Riyāḥ stood opposite him, he turned to his companions and said, “A woman has seen us and she is embarrassed.” ʿUthmān continued: I kept moving until the sun ascended, at

---

556. Broadly conceived, al-Harrah connotes the mountainous, lava-strewn region that stretches from the Yemen to Wādī al-Qurā; more specifically, it applies to an area on the northeastern side of Medina that was the site of bloody revolt against the Umayyad caliph Yazīd b. Muʿāwiyyah in 63/683. Cornu, Répertoires, 76; EP, s.v. [L. Veccia Vaglieri]; Yaqūt, Buldān, II, 245; Kister, “Battle of the Harra.”


558. Masjid al-Fath was a mosque in Medina associated with Muḥammad’s victory over the Meccans. EP, s.v. Masjd [J. Pedersen et al.].

559. Waʿalā Muḥammadīn qaʾimṣūn ghaliṣun wa-rıdāʿun furqubiyyun. Ṭabārī, Addenda et Emendanda, p. DCCXXXIII, and Glossarium, s.v. fatāla and furqub for qurqub.
which time Riyāḥ came, went up and prayed two parts of the prayer cycle, and then left in the direction of Buṭḥān.⁵⁶⁰ At this point Muḥammad approached and entered the Mosque, where he said both the ritual prayer and a private prayer.

Muḥammad b. ‘Abdallāh continued to move about from place to place until his open rebellion. When the matter of Muḥammad had begun to prove wearisome for al-Mansūr and he had not been able to lay hands on him, even though ‘Abdallāh b. Ḥasan remained imprisoned, ‘Abd al-‘Aziz b. Sa‘īd said to Abū Ja‘far (in what is mentioned on the authority of ‘Īsā b. ‘Abdallāh from ‘Abdallāh b. ‘Imrān b. Abī Farwah): “Commander of the Faithful, do you want Muḥammad and Ibrāhim to be brought before you while the Hasanids are allowed to go free? The people hold any one of them in more awe than a lion!” ‘Abd al-‘Aziz said that it was this that induced Abū Ja‘far to imprison the Hasanids. Then the caliph summoned him and asked, “Who suggested this idea to you?” “Fulayḥ b. Sulaymān,”⁵⁶¹ he replied. When ‘Abd al-‘Azīz b. Sa‘īd, who was a confidential agent for Abū Ja‘far and custodian of the voluntary alms, died, the caliph put Fulayḥ b. Sulaymān in his position and ordered seizure of the Hasanids.

According to ‘Īsā—‘Abdallāh b. ‘Imrān b. Abī Farwah: Abū Ja‘far commanded Riyāḥ to arrest the Hasanids, sending Abū al-Azhar al-Mahri to him with that order. ‘Abdallāh b. Ḥasan had already been imprisoned, his confinement lasting for three years. Out of mourning for ‘Abdallāh, Ḥasan b. Ḥasan had even neglected to dye his beard,⁵⁶² prompting Abū Ja‘far to ask [tauntingly], “How are things with the woman in ‘iddah!”⁵⁶³ Riyāḥ

---

⁵⁶⁰. Buṭḥān was a wāḍi that lay in the western part of the city and supplied water to it. It is now the site of a recently constructed dam. Yāqūt, Buldān, I, 446–47; El², s.v. al-Madīna (R. B. Winder); ‘Ali “Topography of Medina,” 68.


⁵⁶³. Although here said ironically of a man, ‘iddah is the period of sexual abstinence mandated for a widowed or divorced woman. During this stage of her mourning, a widow would neither wear jewelry nor use cosmetics. El², s.v. [Y. Linant de Bellefonds].


According to ‘Umar—Muḥammad b. Yaḥyā—al-Ḥārith b. Iṣḥāq: Riyāḍh publicly reviled Muḥammad and Ibrāhīm, the sons

---

564. Ibrāhīm’s mother was Fāṭimah bt. al-Husayn. He perished in prison at the age of sixty-seven, the first of the imprisoned Ḥasanids to die. Isfahānī, Maqāṭīl, 187–88; Šafādi, Wāfī, V, 342.


566. Muḥammad b. Ibrāhīm b. Hasan b. Hasan was best remembered for his sobriquet “the Golden Brocade” (al-dibaj al-asfar), a verbal tribute to his beauty. In fact, Isfahānī, Maqāṭīl, 200, reports that people used to go and visit this fellow simply for the delight of looking at him. Later, in Ṭabarī, p. 133, the name is rendered as “the Younger Brocade.”

567. Ismā‘īl b. Ibrāhīm b. Hasan b. Hasan was particularly remembered for his forbearance in tribulation. An account in Isfahānī, Maqāṭīl, 199, compares him to gold bullion that is purified by fire. He was given the name Ṭabāṭabā’ī—some sources say that it was his son Ibrāhīm’s name—because of a mispronunciation. In Persian the name Ṭabāṭabā’ī has come to designate an individual who claims both maternal and paternal descent from the Prophet Muḥammad. El2, s.v. Ibn Ṭabāṭabā’ī (B. Scarcia Amoretti); Haim, New Persian-English, II, 299.

568. According to Isfahānī, Maqāṭīl, 188–89, Ja‘far b. al-Hasan, his son al-Hasan b. Ja‘far, Dāwūd b. al-Hasan, and his sons Sulaymān and ‘Abdallāh, were among the Ḥasanids who were spared by Abū Ja‘far after the deaths of Muḥammad and Ibrāhīm. Isfahānī cites competing reports about Iṣḥāq and Ismā‘īl, the sons of Ibrāhīm b. al-Hasan, with one saying they were spared and another saying they were slain.

569. According to Isfahānī, Maqāṭīl, 198, he was thirty-five years old when he died in al-Manṣūr’s prison.

570. Isfahānī, Maqāṭīl, 198, expands her plea to “just let me take a sniff of him and give him a hug.”

571. See note 495, above.

572. For both ‘Abdallāh and ‘Ali, see Isfahānī, Maqāṭīl, 196.
of `Abdallāh, and heaped abuse upon the people of Medina. Moreover, one day in the pulpit he made mention of Muḥammad and Ibrāhīm, calling them "vicious, morally depraved, and brigands." Then he referred to their mother, the daughter of Abū Ubaydah, speaking of her in obscene terms. The people exclaimed, "God be praised," and regarded his words as monstrous. At this Riyāḥ turned on them and said, "As for you people, we have not wearied of heaping abuse on them. May God paste your faces over with shame and ignominy, for, by God, I shall certainly write to your caliph and inform him of your deceit and of your lack of sincerity." The people said, "We are not going to listen to you, 0 Son of the Unlawful." They went for him with pebbles, so he took off and rushed into the Dār Marwān and bolted the door behind him. At this the people went out and lined up facing him. They shot at him and called him names. Finally, they gave up and desisted.

According to `Umar—Muḥammad b. Yahyā—someone he considered trustworthy: Imprisoned with them were Mūsā b. `Abdallāh b. Ḥasan b. Ḥasan b. `Alī, as well as `Alī b. Muḥammad b. `Abdallāh b. Ḥasan b. Ḥasan as soon as he arrived from Egypt.

According to `Umar—`Abdallāh b. Ḥabīb: Muḥammad b. `Abdallāh sent his son, `Alī, to Egypt. Someone reported him to the governor of Egypt when he had an impetuous attack in mind. The governor tied him up and sent him on to Abū Jaʿfar. `Alī confessed to caliph, naming his father's associates. Among those whom he named were `Abd al-Rahmān b. Abī al-Mawālī and Abū Ḥunayn. Abū Jaʿfar ordered the two of them imprisoned where Abū Ḥunayn was given 100 lashes.
According to 'Umar—Isa: Hasan b. Hasan b. Hasan passed Ibrâhîm b. Hasan when the latter was feeding some camels of his. Hasan asked, "How can you go on feeding your camels when 'Abdallah is imprisoned! Untether them, boy!" Ibrâhîm did so, giving a [parting] shout behind them, and not a one of them was ever found [again].

According to 'Umar—Isa—Ali b. Abdallah b. Muhammed b. 'Umar b. 'Ali:579 We were present at Riyâh's door into the reserved section (maqṣūrah) of the mosque. The muezzin called out: "Let any of the Husaynids who are here now enter." My uncle, 'Umar b. Muhammed,580 said to me, "Watch what the people do." They entered by the door to the reserved section and left by the Marwân door.581 Then the muezzin called out, "Let any of the Banû Hasan who are here now enter." They entered by the door to the ruler's section as blacksmiths entered by the Marwân door and fetters were called for.582

According to 'Umar—Isa—his father: When Riyâh had completed the morning prayer, he would send for me and for Qudâmah b. Mûsâ and converse with us for a while. One day when I was with him, as we left there suddenly appeared a man who had muffled himself up in a head sash. Riyâh said to him, "Welcome and greetings! What do you wish?" The man replied, "I have come so that you can arrest me together with my people," for, in fact, it was 'Alî b. Hasan b. Hasan b. Hasan. "The Commander of the Faithful will certainly recognize what is due you!" exclaimed Riyâh. He then imprisoned 'Alî together with [other members of the] the Banû Hasan.

According to 'Umar—Ya'qûb b. al-Qâsim—Sa'id b. Nâshira, the mawlâ of Ja'far b. Sulaymân: Muhammed sent his son 'Alî away, but he was arrested in Egypt and died in Abu Ja'far's prison.

According to 'Umar—Mûsâ b. Abdallah b. Mûsâ b. Abdallah

579. The only mention of him in Tabari.
580. 'Umar b. Muhammed b. 'Umar b. 'Alî.
581. Bab Marwân b. al-Hakam, was named for the Umayyad caliph [64–65/684–85] who served two terms as governor of Medina. For the maqṣūrah, a compartment for the ruler built near the mibrâb, see EI², s.v. Masdjîd [J. Pedersen et al.].
582. Hodgson "Early Shi'a," 10, notes this episode as one in which "certainly al-Maṣûr set the Husaynids off visibly from them [i.e. the Hasanids]."
b. Hasan⁵⁸³—his father—his father, Mūsā b. ‘Abdallāh: When we were jailed, the prison was too cramped for us. My father therefore asked Riyāḥ to allow him to buy a house that he could convert into our place of arrest. Riyāḥ granted permission, so my father bought a house, to which we were moved. When our imprisonment had gone on for a long time, Muhammad came to his mother, Hind, and said, "I have laid upon my father and my uncles something that they find an impossible ordeal. I have it in mind to put my hand in theirs so that perhaps they may be freed." Disguising herself and dressed in rags, Hind came to the prison in the guise of a messenger. She was given permission to enter, and when my father saw her, he made sure it was she and rose up to meet her. She told him what Muhammad had said, but he replied, "On no account [should he do that]; we can endure it. But, by God, I do hope that God confers something good on him. My advice to him would be that he should continue to summon supporters to his cause and to press it intensely, for our relief is in God's hands." Hind then left, but Muḥammad fulfilled his purpose.

In this year the descendants of Hasan b. Hasan b. ‘Alī were transported from Medina to Iraq.


According to 'Umar—Mūsā b. ‘Abdallāh—his father—his father: When Abū Ja'far made the Pilgrimage, he sent Muḥammad b. 'Imrān b. Ibrāhīm b. Muḥammad b. Ṭalḥah⁵⁸⁴ and Mālik b. Anas⁵⁸⁵ to our associates [in prison], asking them to urge

---


⁵⁸⁴. Muḥammad b. 'Imrān b. Ibrāhīm b. Muḥammad b. Ṭalḥah, known as Abū Sulaymān, was a judge in Medina for the Umayyads and for al-Mansūr. On the occasion of his death in 154, Abū Jaʻfar reportedly said, "Today Quraysh has been leveled." ʿAṣfādī, Wāfī, IV, 235.

⁵⁸⁵. Mālik b. Anas (d. 179/796) was a renowned traditionist and jurist and eponymous founder of the Mālikī madhhab. EI², s.v. [J. Schacht]. For Abū Ja‘far's connection with Mālik's Muwatta', see Crone and Hinds, God's Caliph, 86–88.
Muḥammad and Ibrāhīm, the sons of ʿAbdallah, to come to him. The two messengers entered our presence while my father ʿAbdallah was standing in the ritual prayer and announced the caliph’s message to those who were there. Ḥasan b. Ḥasan said, “This is all the doing of those two sons of an inauspicious mother. By God, this does not represent our view nor accord with our way of thinking.586 I’m telling you frankly.” Ibrāhīm approached him and said, “Why would you harm your brother through his two sons and harm your brother’s son through his mother?” My father concluded his ritual prayer,587 so Muḥammad and Mālik b. Anas gave him the message. “No, by God,” he answered, “I shall not give you a word in response. If he wishes to give me permission to meet him, then let him do so.” The two men went away and gave their report to the caliph. Abū Jaʿfar commented, “He simply wants to bewitch me,588 but, by God, his eye will not see mine until he brings me his two sons.”

According to ʿUmar—Ibn Zabālah: I heard one of our learned men say that ʿAbdallah b. Ḥasan never spoke privately to anyone without cajoling him away from the judgment he had already made.

According to ʿUmar—Mūsā b. ʿAbdallah—his father—his grandfather: The Commander of the Faithful, Abū Jaʿfar, continued on toward his destination as a pilgrim,589 but then started back without entering Medina, rather passing on to al-Rabadhah590 until he came to the stream in its valley.591

According to ʿUmar—Muḥammad b. Yahyā—al-Ḥārith b. Išāq: The Hasanids remained imprisoned within Riyāh’s jurisd-

---

586. Mā ḥādhā ʿān mulāʾamatinā. Ṭabārī, Addenda et Emendanda, p. DCCXXXIII, and Glossarium, s.v. laʿuma.
587. Or abandoned it [as being vitiated by the interruption].
588. Arāda an yashəranī. The Leiden edition records the alternative reading, yashkharā bi, “to make fun of me” [see also Ibrāhīm’s edition, VII, 539, with yusakkhəhəranī], but notes confirmation of the selected reading in the account from Ibn Zabālah that follows.
589. Sāra li-wajhihi ḥājan. Ṭabārī, Glossarium, s.v. wajuha.
590. Al-Rabadhah was a stage on the route from al-Kūfah to Mecca; its remains are situated about 200 kilometers to the southeast of Medina. Yaqūt, Buldān, III, 24–25; Cornu, Répertoires, 82. Recent excavations at this site have been described and lavishly illustrated in Rāshid, Al-Rabadhah.
591. Thīnā rahwatiḥā. Ṭabārī, Glossarium, s.v. thanā; Groom, Arabic Topography, 237.
diction until Abū Jaʿfar made the Pilgrimage in 144. At that time Riyāḥ met with the caliph in al-Rabadhah, and the latter sent him back to Medina with orders to dispatch the Hasanids to him, together with Muḥammad b. ʿAbdallāh b. ʿAmr b. ʿUthmān, who was the brother of the Hasanids on their mother’s side. (The mother of them all was Fāṭimah bt. Ḥusayn b. ʿAli b. ʿAbī Ṭālib.) Riyāḥ, therefore, sent for Muḥammad b. ʿAbdallāh b. ʿAmr when he was with his goods and property in Badr, and had him brought down to Medina. Then Riyāḥ left with the Hasanids and Muḥammad b. ʿAbdallāh b. ʿAmr for al-Rabadhah. When he came to Qaṣr Nafis, about three miles (amyl, sing. mil) from Medina, he called for the blacksmiths, shackles, and fetters and threw every man of them into a foot shackle and neck iron. The two fettering rings on ʿAbdallāh b. Ḥasan b. Ḥasan’s shackle were too tight. They cut into him, causing him to moan. His brother, ʿAli b. Ḥasan, swore at him, saying that they should transfer his rings to ʿAbdallāh if they were more commodious. So the rings were transferred to ʿAbdallāh and Riyāḥ proceeded to al-Rabadhah with them.

According to ʿUmar—Ibrāhīm b. Khālid, the son of Saʿīd b. ʿĀmir’s sister—Juwayriyyah b. Asmā, the maternal uncle of his mother: When the Hasanids were transported to Abū Jaʿfar, shackles with which to fetter them were brought forth. At the time, ʿAli b. Ḥasan b. Ḥasan was standing in the ritual prayer.

592. Muḥammad b. ʿAbdallāh b. ʿAmr b. ʿUthmān, the great-grandson of the third caliph ʿUthmān b. ʿAffān, was known as “the Brocade” (al-dibdāj) because of his physical beauty. As a half-brother of ʿAbdallāh b. al-Ḥasan, he was a maternal uncle of Muhammad and Ibrāhīm, and his own mother was Fāṭimah bt. al-Ḥusayn. Dhahabi, Siyar, VI, 224–25.

593. Also known as Badr Ḥunayn, it is a town southwest of Medina chiefly remembered for the victory the Prophet Muḥammad secured there in 2/624 against Meccan forces. El2, s.v. [W. Montgomery Watt], Yāqūt, Buldān, I, 357–58.

594. According to Balādhurī, Futūḥ, 14, this citadel stood in the Ḥarrāh area of Medina. Yāqūt, Buldān, IV, 364, marks its connection to Nafis b. Muḥammad, a mawlā of the Anṣār of Medina.

595. A mil is the equivalent of about two kilometers. Hinz, Islamische Masse und Gewichte, 63.

596. Saʿīd b. ʿĀmir b. Ḥusayn b. Qays, who died in the first part of the third/ninth century, was secretary to the vizier Khālid b. Barmak. Dodge, Fihrist of al-Nadim, II, 1089.

Now among the shackles there was a particularly heavy one. Each time it was brought near to any of them, the man would shrink back from it and ask to be exempted. But 'Ali, turning from his prayer, said, "Because you are so manifestly anxious, this obvious display of pain suffices him." He then stretched forth his feet and was shackled with it.

According to 'Umar—'Isa—'Abdallâh b. 'Imrân: The one who brought them down to al-Rabadhâh was Abû al-Azhâr.

According to 'Umar—Ibn Zabâlah—Husayn b. Zayd b. 'Ali b. Husayn. Early one morning I went to the mosque. There I saw the Hasanids being led out of the Dâr Marwân on their way to al-Rabadhâh in the company of Abû al-Azhâr. I then left and, Ja'far b. Muḥammad having sent for me, I went to him. "What's on your mind?" he asked. I replied that I had seen the Hasanids being taken out in litters. He asked me to sit down, which I did, and then summoned one of his servants. Next he made many supplications to his Lord and then said to his servant, "Go on out, and when they have been carried off, come back and tell me." Eventually the messenger came to him and said, "Abû al-Azhâr is approaching with them." Ja'far b. Muḥammad stood up and stepped behind a hair screen from which he could look out without being seen. 'Abdallâh b. Hasan came into view riding in a litter with one of the 'Abbâsid partisans seated on the other side as a counterbalance. His entire family was being treated likewise. When Ja'far looked upon them, his eyes overflowed until his tears ran down his beard. Then he came up to me, saying, "By

---

598. Shar'ahu hâdhâ. Tabari, Glossarium, s.v. shara'a.
599. Husayn b. Zayd b. 'Ali b. Husayn b. 'Ali b. Abî Tâlib, whose patronymic was Abû 'Abdallâh, was also known as Dhû al-Dam'âh ("the Tearful") because he wept so much. Tabari, III, 2557; Iṣâhâni, Maqâtil, 387–89; Safâdî, Wâfî, XII, 367.
601. Musawwid, i.e., "Wearer of the Black," because the 'Abbâsids used this as a representational color. Ibn Khaldûn, Muqaddimah, II, 50–51; 'Athamina, "Black Banners."
The Events of the Year 144

God, Abū ‘Abdallāh, when these are gone, God will no longer be honored!”

According to ‘Umar—Muḥammad b. al-Ḥasan b. Zabālāh—Muṣ’ab b. ‘Uṯmān: At the time when the Hasanids were taken away, al-Ḥārith b. ‘Āmīr b. ‘Abd al-Ḥārām b. al-Ḥārīth b. Hīṣām encountered them in al-Rabadhah and exclaimed, “Praise God who has expelled you from our country.” Hasan b. Ḥasan stuck out his neck in defiance of al-Ḥārīth, but ‘Abdallāh adjured him to remain silent.

According to ‘Umar—Īsā—Ibn Abrūd, the chamberlain of Muḥammad b. ‘Abdallāh: During the time when the Hasanids were being transported, Muḥammad and Ibrāhīm used to come alongside disguised as desert Arabs. They would walk next to their father, questioning him and requesting his permission to come forth in open revolt. He, however, kept saying, “Don’t be in a hurry until you are in a position to do so [successfully].” He also said to them, “If Abū Ja’far prohibits you from living nobly, he does not prevent you from dying nobly.”

According to ‘Umar—Muḥammad b. Yaḥyā—al-Ḥārīth b. Iṣḥāq: When the Hasanids reached al-Rabadhah, Muḥammad b. ‘Abdallāh b. ‘Amr b. ‘Uṯmān came into Abū Ja’far’s presence wearing only a shirt, a headwrap (ṣāj), and waist wrapper (izār) under his shirt. As he came to a standstill before the caliph, Abū Ja’far said, “You there, what a pimp you are!” “Praise be to God,” replied Muḥammad, “you have certainly known me to be

---

602. Compare Ibn al-’Athīr, Kāmil, V, 524: Ḵāfīuzu allāhu haramayhi ba’da hā’ulā’i, “when these are gone, God will no longer protect the two sacred places [i.e., Mecca and Medina].”

603. Muṣ’ab b. ‘Uṯmān b. Muṣ’ab b. ‘Urwa b. al-Zubayr (as given in Ṭabarī, Indices, 552, but this is corrected by Nagel, “Bericht,” 235, to Muṣ’ab b. ‘Uṯmān b. ‘Urwa b. al-Zubayr) was descended from al-Zubayr al-Ḥawārī [see note 519], the Prophet Muḥammad’s apostle, whose son Muṣ’ab was governor of al- Başrah during the anticaliphate of his brother ‘Abdallāh. Muṣ’ab b. ‘Uṯmān’s grandfather, ‘Urwa b. al-Zubayr (d. 93/712), was a renowned jurisprudent and traditionist in Medina. El², s.v. Muṣ’ab b. al-Zubair (H. Lammens) and ‘Urwa b. Zubair (V. Vacca); El² Suppl., s.v. Fukahā’ al-Madina al-Sab’a (C. Pellat), Ziriki, Al’am, IV, 226; GAS, I, 278–79.

604. According to Lane, Lexicon, IV, 1459–60, sāj designates a dark or ash-colored or black taylasān. See also Ibrahim’s edition, VII, 541 n. 2. For the izār, see Ahsan, Social Life, 34–35, and Dozy, Vêtements, 24–38.
otherwise, both as a child and as an adult." "Then how did your
daughter get pregnant?" asked Abū Ja'far. "She was still wed to
İbrāhîm b. 'Abdallâh b. Hasan b. al-Hasan even though you swore
to me that, by her being divorced and set free, you would not in-
trigue against me or join forces with an enemy [of mine]. You
then come upon your daughter and find her with henna-dyed
hands and wearing perfume. Subsequently you see that she is
pregnant, and yet her pregnancy does not alarm you. Certainly
you are either a perjurer or a pimp! I swear by God that I'm of a
mind to have her stoned." Muḥammad said, "As to the solemn
oath I gave you, it remains incumbent upon me. If I had entered
into any sort of deceit against you, I would certainly be aware of
it. As for the aspersions that you have cast upon this poor girl,
God has placed her above that by descent from the Messenger of
God. When her pregnancy became visible, I assumed that her
husband had cohabited with her at some time when we were not
watching her carefully." Abū Ja'far was deeply angered by what he
said and commanded that Muḥammad b. 'Abdallâh's clothes be
ripped off. His shirt was torn away from his waist wrapper and his
private parts exposed. The caliph then commanded that he be
given 150 lashes. The blows robbed him of all resistance while
Abū Ja'far rebuked him, not confining himself to insinuations.607
After one of the lashes struck his face, Muḥammad said to the
caliph, "Woe betide you, stay away from my face; the Messenger
of God has made it inviolable." At this Abū Ja'far urged on the
whipper, saying, "[Go far] the head, the head." Muḥammad was
thus beaten about the head some thirty blows. The caliph then
called for a wooden yoke as long as Muḥammad was tall—
Muḥammad was a tall man—and had it secured to his neck, with
his hand being fastened to it as well. Then he sent him off thus
trussed up. When he was brought forth from Abū Ja'far's cham-
ber, one of his mawlâs rushed up to him, saying, "You are as dear
to me as my father and my mother, should I not wrap you in my

---

605. Ṭabari later, III, 178, gives her name as Ruqayyah.
606. Ṭabari, Glossarium, s.v. khâdâba. For women to have the backs of their
hands dyed with henna is still a common festive practice throughout the Muslim
world, particularly in anticipation of marriage.
607. Yaftâra 'alâyhi wa-là yakní. Ṭabari, Addenda et Emendanda, p.
DCCXXXIV; Glossarium, s.v. kânâ.
cloak?" "O yes," Muhammad said, "you will be well recompensed. By God, the slits in my waist wrapper are harder for me to bear than the beating that I sustained." The mawlä put his cloak around Muḥammad and took him to his imprisoned associates.

According to ʿUmar—al-Walid b. Hishām—ʿAbdallāh b. ʿUthmān—Muḥammad b. Hāshim b. al-Barīd, the mawlä of Muʿāwiya: I was in al-Rabadhah at the time when the Ḥasanids were brought there bound in chains. With them was al-ʿUthmānī, looking as if he were fashioned of silver. They were made to sit down, but it was not long before a man came out from Abu Jaʿfar's presence and said, "Where is Muḥammad b. ʿAbdallāh al-ʿUthmānī?" Muḥammad stood up and went in. Within a short time we heard the crack of whips. At this Ayyūb b. Salamah al-Makhzūmī said to his sons, "My sons, I see a man who has no mercy in his heart for anyone. Watch out for yourselves. Don't let a word escape you."

Muḥammad was brought forth looking like a black (zanji); the blows had changed the color of his complexion and made his blood run down. One of the lashes had struck an eye so that blood flowed from it. He was made to sit beside his brother, ʿAbdallāh b. ʿHasan b. Hasan. Being thirsty, Muhammad asked for a drink of water. ʿAbdallāh b. ʿHasan thus said, "O my brethren, who will give a drink of water to the offspring of the Messenger of God?" But the people held back from him and would not give him a drink until finally a Khurasani came forward with water. He slipped it to Muḥammad, and Muḥammad drank. We waited for a little while longer until Abu Jaʿfar emerged riding in one side of a litter on a light-colored mule with al-Rabi counterbalancing him in the litter on the right. ʿAbdallāh called out to him, "By God, ʿAbdallāh b. ʿAbdallāh b. ʿAmr b. ʿUthmān b. ʿAffān, who was known as "the Brocade." See note 592.

608. La-shuqūqu izārī asḥaddu ʿalayya. Tabari, Addenda et Emendanda, p. DCCXXXIV.
609. I.e. Muḥammad b. ʿAbdallāh b. ʿAmr b. ʿUthmān b. ʿAffān, who was known as "the Brocade." See note 592.
611. Lā tusqitū bi-shayʿin. Tabari, Glossarium, s.v. saqāta.
Abū Jaʿfar, we didn’t treat your captives like this on the Day of Badr!” Abū Jaʿfar shooed him away, spitting at him\footnote{Wa-tafala ʿalayhi. Tabari, Addenda et Emendanda, p. DCCXXXIV; Glossarium, s.v. tafala.} and passing on without stopping.

It is said that when Muḥammad b. ʿAbdallāh al-ʿUthmānī entered the presence of Abū Jaʿfar, the caliph questioned him about Ibrāhīm. “I know nothing of him,” replied Muḥammad. At this Abū Jaʿfar hit him in the face with the mace (jurz).\footnote{Presumably a small ceremonial mace; a large one could kill, and was considered a most effective close-quarters weapon.}

According to ʿUmar—Muḥammad b. Abī Ḥarb: Abū Jaʿfar continued to have a good opinion of Muḥammad until Riyāḥ said to him, “Commander of the Faithful, the people of Khurāsān are your party and your supporters, whereas the people of Iraq are adherents of the family of Abū Ṭalib. As for the people of Syria, by God, in their eyes ʿAli is nothing but an infidel, and they reckon nothing of any of his progeny. Yet Muḥammad b. ʿAbdallāh b. ʿAmr [b. ʿUthmān] is their brother, were he to call out the people of Syria, not a man of them would let him down.” These words made a deep impression on Abū Jaʿfar. When he made the Pilgrimage, Muḥammad came to him and the caliph said, “Muḥammad, is your daughter not the wife of Ibrāhīm b. ʿAbdallāh b. Ḥasan?” He said, “Yes, but I’ve had no dealings with him except at Minā\footnote{Minā is a site on the way from Mecca to ʿArafāt where the pilgrims gather to perform the rites of stoning and sacrifice. El¹, s.v. [F. Buhl]; El², s.v. Ḥadjij [B. Lewis].} in the year such and such.” The caliph asked, “Did you see your daughter when she had her hair dyed and dressed?” Muḥammad said that he had. “So she’s an adulteress!” exclaimed the caliph. “Hold it, Commander of the Faithful!” said Muḥammad, “would you say such a thing about the daughter of your paternal uncle?” “You son of an uncircumcised woman!” retorted Abū Jaʿfar. “Which of my mothers was uncircumcised?” inquired Muḥammad. “You son of a whore!” exclaimed the caliph. Then he struck Muḥammad full face with the mace and knocked him out.\footnote{Wa-haddadahu. Tabari, Addenda et Emendanda, p. DCCXXXIV, and Glossarium, s.v. hadda. Ibrāhīm’s edition, VII, 543 n. 1. interprets this emendation as shaqqā jildahu, i.e., “and broke his skin.”} Ruqayyah, the daughter of

\footnotetext[612]{612. Wa-tafala ʿalayhi. Tabari, Addenda et Emendanda, p. DCCXXXIV; Glossarium, s.v. tafala.}
\footnotetext[613]{613. Presumably a small ceremonial mace; a large one could kill, and was considered a most effective close-quarters weapon.}
\footnotetext[614]{614. Minā is a site on the way from Mecca to ʿArafāt where the pilgrims gather to perform the rites of stoning and sacrifice. El¹, s.v. [F. Buhl]; El², s.v. Ḥadjij [B. Lewis].}
\footnotetext[615]{615. Wa-haddadahu. Tabari, Addenda et Emendanda, p. DCCXXXIV, and Glossarium, s.v. hadda. Ibrāhīm’s edition, VII, 543 n. 1. interprets this emendation as shaqqā jildahu, i.e., “and broke his skin.”}
Muḥammad, was the wife of Ibrāhīm b. ʿAbdallāh b. Ḥasan b. Ḥasan. Of her he says:

My friends of Qays, refrain from rebuke and sit down.

Does it gladden you that I sleep not but you can slumber?

I pass the night as if on fire with memories of

Ruqayyāh, like a live coal of ghadā wood flaming forth.

According to ʿUmar—Īsā b. ʿAbdallāh b. Muḥammad—Sulaymān b. Dāwūd b. Ḥasan: On only one day did I see ʿAbdallāh b. Ḥasan truly distressed from any of the afflictions he sustained. That was because Muḥammad b. ʿAbdallāh b. ʿAmr b. Uthmān’s camel started off while he was inattentive and unprepared. There was a chain on his feet and a yoke on his neck. He fell over, and the yoke became entangled in the litter. I saw him suspended by his neck, thrashing about, and at this I saw ʿAbdallāh b. Ḥasan weep bitterly.

According to Mūsā b. ʿAbdallāh b. Mūsā—my father—his father:616 When we reached al-Rabadhah, Abū Jaʿfar sent word to my father, saying, “Send me one of your family, knowing that he will never return to you.” His brothers’ sons rushed to him, offering themselves to him. My father praised their good intentions but said, “I would hate to afflict my brothers with the loss of you; Mūsā, you go.” So I went, at that time being still young. When the caliph caught sight of me, he said, “May God make no eye refreshed by sight of you;617 scourge him, slave.” By God, I was beaten until I lost consciousness and was no longer aware of the beating. Finally, they stopped flogging me. The caliph asked for me to be brought near him. He came still closer and said, “Do you know what’s happening to you? This is a deluge flowing from me. I have now emptied one unreturnable bucket of it. On its heels is death—or you can ransom yourself from it.” “O Commander of the Faithful,” I implored, “by God, I’m not to blame; truly I am on the sidelines of this affair.” “Go away, then,” he said, “and bring me your two brothers.” I replied, “O Commander of the Faithful, you are going to send me to Rihāḥ b. Uthmān, who will put spies and observers on to me. I won’t be able to take

616. Mūsā b. ʿAbdallāh b. al-Ḥasan, a brother of Muḥammad and Ibrāhīm.
617. Lā anʿama allāhu biḥaʿaynan. See Lane, Lexicon, I, 230.
any road without one of his messengers following me. Being well aware of that, my two brothers will flee from me!" The caliph therefore wrote to Riyāḥ informing him that he had no authority over Mūsā.

Mūsā continued: With me the caliph sent an armed escort with orders to keep him informed of my activities by letter. I reached Medina and stayed for several months at Dār Ibn Hishām in al-Balāt. Riyāḥ, therefore, wrote to the caliph to say that Mūsā was staying at Dār Ibn Hishām eagerly watching for the Commander of the Faithful’s fortunes to change. His letter continued, “When you read this letter of mine, send Mūsā [directly] down to me,” and the caliph did so.

According to Muḥammad b. Ismā‘īl—Mūsā: My father sent word to Abū Jaʿfar, saying, “I am writing to Muḥammad and Ibrāhīm, so send Mūsā, who may be able to effect a meeting with them.” Their father then wrote to Muḥammad and Ibrāhīm, telling them to come to him, while to me he said [privately]: “Tell them from me that on no account should they come.”

His sole purpose was to get me out of the caliph’s power. He had a soft spot for me even though I was but the youngest of Hind’s offspring. This is what he sent to Muḥammad and Ibrāhīm:

O sons of Umayyah, I can do without you both.
What good is wealth now that I am trembling and exhausted?

O sons of Umayyah, if you two have no pity for my old age;
you and bereavement are but two of a kind.

I stayed in Medina with Abū Jaʿfar’s messengers until Riyāḥ grew tired of my procrastination. He then wrote to Abū Jaʿfar about that, so the caliph had me sent down to him.

618. Tabari later, III, 193, identifies this as the jail. See also Wüstenfeld, “Medina,” 130; ʿAli, “Topography of Medina,” 81.

619. Fa-ḥādirhu ilayya. Tabari, Addenda et Emendanda, p. DCCXXXIV, and Glossarium, s.v. ḥadara.

According to `Umar—Ya`qūb b. al-Qāsim b. Muḥammad—`Imrān b. Muḥriz of the Banū al-Bakka`:621 The Ḥasanids were taken to al-Rabadhah. With them were `Ali and `Abdallāh, the two sons of Ḥasan b. Ḥasan b. Ḥasan, whose mother was Hubābah bt. `Āmir b. `Abdallāh b. `Āmir b. Bishr b. `Āmir Mulā`īb al-Asinnah [the Spear-Juggler].622 Ḥasan b. Ḥasan died in prison, as did `Abbās b. Ḥasan—whose mother was `Ā'ishah bt. Ṭalḥah b. `Umar b. Ubaydallāh—`Abdallāh b. Ḥasan and Ibrāhīm b. Ḥasan.

According to `Umar—al-Madāʾinī: When the Ḥasanids were taken forth, Ibrāhīm b. `Abdallāh b. Ḥasan said: (`Umar adds: [p. 181] "Someone other than Abū al-Ḥasan [i.e. al-Madāʾinī] had already recited this poem of Ghālib al-Hamadanī to me").623

What you recall of ruins, of wastes, and of whether household members are far or near to you, Is but foolishness when white hair has covered you with a color like cotton.
 Fifty of your years have passed, as the counters would count for you if they reckon.
 Distant is the memory of youth.624 It is yours no longer.
 Youth shall not come round to you again.
 Worries have fallen upon me and worry has settled upon my pillow; my heart is shattered.
 The people were taken out to misfortune, still I was made625 for an age with a hump in its back.

---

621. Bakka` b. `Āmir were a clan of `Āmir b. Ṣa`ṣa`ah. They are mentioned when Ṭabarī, I, 2491, discusses the creation of al-Kūfah. Caskel, Gamharat an-nasab, I, 107, II, 221.
622. Isfahānī, Maqāṭīl, 196, identifies her as Umm `Abdallāh bt. `Āmir.
623. Isfahānī, Maqāṭīl, 228, introduces this poem as follows: "In that which `Umar b. `Abdallāh al-`Ataki recounted to me on the authority of his father, who received it from Abū Zayd [i.e., `Umar b. Shabbah], who, in turn, received it from al-Madāʾinī, Ibrāhīm b. `Abdallāh said, recalling his father and his family and their transportation and imprisonment." In setting this poem, I have followed the Leiden text's pattern, i.e., not breaking the hemistichs where they are not broken in the text.
624. Ibrāhīm's edition, VII, 545, and Isfahānī, Maqāṭīl, 228, read: fa-`addi dhikra al-shabāb, "so abandon the memory of youth."
625. Ibrāhīm's edition, VII, 545, and Isfahānī, Maqāṭīl, 228, read: wa-khulliftu li-dahrin, "I was left behind for an age . . . ."
It is awry; the ignoble find it sweet.
And [even] the noble find it distasteful when they drink.\textsuperscript{626}

My life here has been given for a hank of white hair and a shinbone, scarred from its shackles.
Well-born\textsuperscript{627} lords were among his sons
but in his case no regard was had to God or lineage.
O links of the chain, what mercy and kindness you contain\textsuperscript{628}
are tarnished by [his] high degree.
Female forebears from the noblest strains, fair, sensible and loving, have kept you pure.
What can be my excuse before God when
the fine, "wondrous" swords were not unsheathed for you?
Nor did I lead a massed raid, for which
the daughters of the pure-born were selected.\textsuperscript{629}
The fleetest steeds and the spearheads with sharp points on them
To recompense the Banū Nutaylah\textsuperscript{630} in just measure for the measure they have milked.
Murder for murder; and for the captive in bonds,
[there shall be] captives, shackled, bereft.
The family of the Messenger Aḥmad have become, among men,
like one mangy with scabs on him.

Woe betide them for what their blades have committed.
O, what a lifeline from a people they have cut off!
And with what a strand have they betrayed the King\textsuperscript{631}
Tied with a promise, while its knots are lies!

According to ʿAbdallah b. Rāshid b. Yazīd—al-Jarrāḥ b. ʿUmar,
Khāqān b. Zayd, and others of his associates: When they brought
ʿAbdallah b. Ḥasan and his family in shackles and stood with

\textsuperscript{626.} Wa-yajtawihi al-kirāmu in sharībū. Ṭabari, Addenda et Emendanda, p. DCCXXIV.
\textsuperscript{627.} Wa-al-sādīta al-ghurra. Ṭabari, Addenda et Emendanda, p. DCCXXXIV.
\textsuperscript{628.} Ironically.
\textsuperscript{629.} Banātu al-sarīḥi tuntakhābu. Ṭabari, Addenda et Emendanda, p. DCCXXXIV.
\textsuperscript{630.} See note 476.
\textsuperscript{631.} Ḥifṣānī, Maqātil, 229, reads: wa-ayyu ʿahdīn khānū al-ilāhu bihi.
them before al-Najaf,632 ‘Abdallāh said to his family, “Don’t you know of anyone in this town who could defend us from this tyrant?” The two sons of Ḥayy,633 al-Ḥasan634 and ‘Alī, met him wrapped so as to conceal two swords. They said to ‘Abdallāh, “We have come to you, son [i.e., descendant] of the Messenger of God, command us to do what you want.” “You have done your duty,” ‘Abdallāh replied, “but you cannot prevail against these [people].” With this they went away.


According to ‘Umar—Muḥammad b. al-Ḥasan—Muḥammad b. Ibrāhīm: The Hasanids were brought before Abū Jaʿfar. He took a look at Muḥammad b. Ibrāhīm b. Hasan and asked, “Are you the ‘Younger Brocade’?”635 When Muḥammad said that he was, the caliph exclaimed, “By God, you I shall kill as I have killed no other member of your family.” Then he ordered a column that had been built to be split apart. Muḥammad was put inside and was built over while still living.

According to Muḥammad b. al-Ḥasan—al-Zubayr b. Bilāl: People would frequently visit Muḥammad simply to gaze at his beauty.

According to ‘Umar—İsā—‘Abdallāh b. ‘Imrān—Abū al-Azhar: ‘Abdallāh b. Ḥasan said to me, “Try to get a cupper (hajjām)636 for

632. Al-Najaf is a town just southwest of al-Kūfah and is a major Shi’ā pilgrimage site. The tomb of ‘Ali b. Abi Ṭalib is an important monument, despite some differences in the early sources about his place of burial. EP, s.v. al-Nadjaf [E. Honigmann], Yaqūt, Buldān, IV, 271–72.

633. Ibn al-Athir, Kāmil, V, 526, gives this as “the two sons of his brother.” An alternative version is provided by Ḥifāshī, Maqātil, 395, where al-Ḥasan and ‘Alī are identified as the sons of Ṣāliḥ. Ibn Saʿd, al-Taḫqīqat al-kubrā, VI, 400, records an ‘Ali b. Ṣāliḥ b. Ḥayy.

634. Ṣabārī, III, 2526, mentions al-Ḥasan b. Ṣāliḥ b. Ḥayy in the obituary list for the year 161/777–78. He was the father-in-law of İsā b. Zayd b. ‘Alī, whom he concealed after Muḥammad and Ibrāhīm’s death. Kennedy, Early Abbasid Caliphate, 204.

635. Ibrāhīm’s edition VII, 546, reflects Muḥammad b. Ibrāhīm’s more common sobriquet “the Golden Brocade,” but the one given here may have been used to distinguish him from his relative, Muḥammad b. ‘Abdallāh b. ‘Amr b. ‘Uṯmān, who was known simply as “the Brocade,” or it may be a scribal confusion of ḍā' and ghayn.

636. Cupping involved drawing blood to the surface of the body by application of a heated glass vessel.
me; I am in dire need of one.” I therefore asked permission of the
Commander of the Faithful, who said, “Bring him an eminent
cupper.”

According to `Umar—Abū Nuʿaym al-Faḍl b. Dukayn:637 Thir-
ten of the Hasanids were imprisoned. Al-ʿUthmānī and two of
his sons were imprisoned with them in Qaṣr Ibn Hubayrah,638
which was east of al-Kūfah in the area that lies toward Baghdad.
The first of them to die was Ibrāhīm b. Ḥasan, then ʿAbdallāh b.
Ḥasan. The latter was buried near the place where he died, per-
haps not in the tomb that people claim as his, but close to it.

According to ʿUmar—Muḥammad b. Abī Ḥarb: Muḥammad b.
ʿAbdallāh b. ʿAmr was imprisoned near Abū Jaʿfar, who was aware
of his innocence. However, Abū ʿAwn639 eventually wrote from
Khurāsān to inform the Commander of the Faithful “that the
people of Khurāsān are avoiding me; the matter of Muḥammad b.
ʿAbdallāh has gone on too long for their liking.” At that, Abū
Jaʿfar ordered Muḥammad b. ʿAbdallāh b. ʿAmr to be beheaded
and sent his head to Khurāsān, swearing to them that it was the
head of Muḥammad b. ʿAbdallāh, who was descended from Fāṭimah,
the daughter of the Messenger of God.

According to ʿUmar—al-Walid b. Hishām—his father: When
Abū Jaʿfar went to al-Kūfah, he said, “I cannot vent my anger
enough upon this vile member of a vile house.” He summoned
Muḥammad b. ʿAbdallāh [b. ʿAmr] and asked, “Did you marry
your daughter to ʿAbdallāh’s son?” “No,” said Muḥammad. The
caliph continued, “But is she not his wife?” “Yes,” he said, “her

637. Abū Nuʿaym al-Faḍl b. Dukayn al-Mulāʿī (d. 219/834) was a historian and
muhaddith who lived in al-Kūfah and transmitted considerable information
about Ṭālibids and ‘Alids. EI², s.v. (F. Rosenthal); Dhahabi, Siyar, X, 142–57;
Rosenthal, Muslim Historiography, 278.

638. Qaṣr Ibn Hubayrah was a city founded by Yazid b. ʿUmar b. Hubayrah that
lies midway between Baghdad and al-Kūfah. Lassner cites this mention in Ṭabari
as an instance in which Qaṣr Ibn Hubayrah has been mistakenly identified with
Madinat Ibn Hubayrah. Both Ibn al-Athir, Kāmil, V, 526, and ʿĪsfāhānī, Māqāṭil,
225, give the same place name. EI², s.v. (J. Lassner) and s.v. al-Ḥāshimiyya;
Baladhūrī, Futūḥ, 287; Lassner, Shaping, 151–58.

639. Abū ʿAwn ʿAbd al-Malik b. Yazid al-Khurāsānī was an important com-
mander in the service of the ʿAbbasid revolutionaries. He then served as governor
of Egypt and of Khurāsān. Although he was dismissed from the latter position by
al-Mahdi, he was allowed to intercede with the caliph on behalf of his son,
ʿAbdallāh b. Abī ʿAwn. Ṭabari, III, 477, 536–37; EI², s.v. (K. V. Zetterstéen); Zamb-
baur, Manuel, 24, 48.
uncle and his father, i.e. `Abdallāh b. Ḥasan, contracted the marriage between them, and I gave my consent to his consummation of the marriage." The caliph then asked, "What about the assurances that you gave me?" "I am bound by them," replied Muḥammad. The caliph said, "Didn't you become aware of the dyeing with henna? Didn't you perceive the fragrance of perfume?" Muḥammad answered, "I have no knowledge of that. People knew what contractual obligations I have toward you, so that they kept all such things from me." The caliph said, "Would you like to ask me to release you from your obligations, so that I will discharge you and you can renew corresponding pledges to me?" Muḥammad replied, "I have not broken my pledges, for you to re-impose them upon me. I have done nothing for which I should ask you to release me from my oath, so as to have you release me from it." At this the caliph ordered him to be beaten to death. Then he had his head severed and sent to Khurāsān. When `Abdallāh b. Ḥasan heard about that, he said, "'We are God's and to him is our return'. By God, although we were safe with him in the time of their [Umayyad] authority, Muḥammad has been killed with us in the time of our [Ḥāshimi] authority."^[184] According to `Umar—İsā b. `Abdallāh—Miskin b. `Amr: When Muḥammad b. `Abdallāh b. Ḥasan came out in open revolt, Abū Jaʿfar ordered Muhammad b. `Abdallāh b. `Amr's beheading and then sent it [his head] to Khurāsān. Together with him he sent leading men who would swear by God that it was indeed Muḥammad b. `Abdallāh, descended from Fāṭimah, the daughter of the Messenger of God.

According to `Umar: I asked Muḥammad b. Jaʿfar b. Ibrāhīm why Muḥammad b. `Abdallāh b. `Amr was killed. He replied, "There was a need for his head."

According to `Umar—Muḥammad b. Abī Ḥarb: 'Awn b. Abī 'Awn^[641] succeeded his father as doorkeeper for the Commander of the Faithful. When Muḥammad b. `Abdallāh b. Ḥasan was actually killed, Abū Jaʿfar sent his head off to Abū 'Awn in Khurāsān. With the head he dispatched Muḥammad b. `Abdallāh b. Abī al-

---

641. For his father, see note 639.
Karrām and `Awn b. Abī `Awn. When the head arrived there, the people of Khurasān were suspicious and said, “Was he not killed once before and his head brought to us?” Then the story became clear to them, so that they realized what had really happened. People thereafter used to say, “Abū Ja`far was never known to have uttered any lie other than this.”

According to ʿUmar—Īsā b. `Abdallah—ʿAbdallah b. ʿImrān b. Abī Farwah: Al-Shaʿbānī and I used to visit Abū al-Azhār when we were in al-Ḥāshimiyyah. Now Abū Ja`far would write to him, saying, “From ʿAbdallah, the servant of God, the Commander of the Faithful to Abū al-Azhār, his mawla.” Abū al-Azhār would write to Abū Ja`far, “From Abū al-Azhār, his mawla and devoted servant.” One day when we were with him—Abū Ja`far had given him leave for three days, during which time Abū al-Azhār did not function in his official capacity, and we were alone with him on those days—a letter from Abū Ja`far came to him. Abū al-Azhār read it and tossed it aside. He then went off to see those of the Ḥasanids who were imprisoned. I reached for the letter and read it. In it the caliph had said, “Abū al-Azhār, do what I ordered you to do with Mudallah.” Be quick about it and discharge the matter.” Al-Shaʿbānī read the letter and said, “Do you know who Mudallah is?” “No,” I replied. “By God,” al-Shaʿbānī said, “it’s ‘Abdal-Lih b. Hasan. Watch what Abū al-Azhār does.” We did not have long to wait before Abū al-Azhār came and sat down, saying, “By God, ‘Abdallah b. Ḥasan has perished.” After a little while longer he went back in and then came out again looking downcast. “Tell me,” he said, “about ‘Alī b. Ḥasan. What kind of man is he?” “Do you think that I’m a truthful man?” I asked. Al-Shaʿbānī replied, “Yes and more than that.” “By God,” I said, “he is the best of those whom this [earth] supports and this [heaven] overshadows.”

643. Thalātha ayyāmin lā yanūbūhā. ʿTabari, Glossarium, s.v. nāba.
644. ʿTabari, Glossarium, s.v. daliha, for its application to ʿAbdallah b. Ḥasan as signifying one who is out of his mind with sorrow.
645. Khayru man tuqilluhu hādhihi wa-tuqilluhu hādhihi. ʿTabari, Glossarium, s.v. galla. Another famous use of this expression is the statement often quoted from the first caliph, Abū Bakr: “What earth would bear me up, what heaven would overshadow me, were I to speak about the Qur’an what I know not?” ʿTabari, Jāmiʿ al-bayān, I, 78.
"Well," replied Abū al-Azhar, "he's gone."

According to 'Umar—Muḥammad b. Ismā'īl—his grandfather, Mūsā b. 'Abdallāh: In prison we were aware of the appointed times for ritual prayer only because 'Ali b. Ḥasan kept reciting short portions (ahzāb, sing. hizb) of the Qurʾān.464

According to 'Umar—Ibn 'Ā'ishah—a mawla of the Banū Dārim:48 I said to Bashīr al-Rahlīl,469 "Why are you in such a hurry to revolt against this man?" Bashīr answered, "After arresting 'Abdallāh b. Ḥasan, Abū Ja'far sent for me, so I came to him. One day he ordered me to go into a certain house, which I did. There I beheld the corpse of 'Abdallāh b. Ḥasan and fell in a dead faint. When I regained consciousness, I gave God my [solemn] word that no two swords would clash over the caliph's without my being on the side of the one against him. To the messenger who was with me as his representatives I said, 'Don't tell Abū Ja'far what I witnessed,4650 if he finds out about it, he will kill me.'"

According to 'Umar: I told Hishām b. Ibrāhīm b. Hishām b. Rāshid,461 a person from Hamadhān, the one known as "al-'Abbāsī," that Abū Ja'far had ordered 'Abdallāh b. Ḥasan to be killed. Hishām swore by God that the caliph had not done so. Rather he had sent a secret message to 'Abdallāh stating that Muḥammad had come forth in open revolt and had been killed. At this 'Abdallāh's heart was broken, and he died.

According to 'Umar—'Isā b. 'Abdallāh: One of the Ḥasanids who survived said that they were given poison4652 to drink and

---

464. Tabari, Addenda et Emendanda, p. DCCXXXV, revises this to Ahzāb, the title of the thirty-third sūrah. This sūrah, which begins in the middle of the forty-second hizb, is slightly under one-and-a-quarter ahzāb in length. The ahzāb divisions, however, each of which is one-sixtieth of the Qurʾān, may be comparatively recent. El1 and El2, s.v. Hizb (D. B. Macdonald).

465. 'Ubaydallāh b. Muḥammad b. Ḥafṣ al-Taymi. See note 446.

466. Dārim b. Malik were a clan of Tamīm. Caskel, Gamharat an-nasab, I, 59, II, 231.

467. Tabari, Addenda et Emendanda, p. DCCXXXV. Madelung, Al-Qāsim und die Zaiditen, 73, identifies him as a Mu'tazili ascetic. He fell in the battle at Bakhamrā, i.e., the defeat of Ibrāhīm b. 'Abdallāh by 'Isā b. Mūsā. Isfahan, Magatil, 339-41.

468. La takhburhu bima laqitu. Tabari, Addenda et Emendanda, p. DCCXXXV.

469. Al-Hamadhānī al-'Abbāsī.

470. Kann yusnqa al-samma. Tabari, Addenda et Emendanda, p. DCCXXXV.
‘Abbāsid Authority Affirmed

that they all died except Sulaymān and ‘Abdallāh, the sons of Dāwūd b. Ḥasan b. Ḥasan; Iṣḥāq and Iṣmāʿīl, the sons of Ibrāhīm b. Ḥasan b. Ḥasan; and Jaʿfar b. Ḥasan. All of them who were killed were murdered only after Muḥammad’s open rebellion. ‘Īsā also said: A woman who was a mawla of the Ḥasan family looked at Jaʿfar b. Ḥasan and said, “By my soul, how well Abū Jaʿfar understands men, in that he let you go free but had ‘Abdallāh b. Ḥasan killed!”

The Remaining Account of Events for 144

Among these events was Abū Jaʿfar al-Manṣūr’s transport of the descendants of Ḥasan b. Ḥasan b. ‘Ali from Medina to Iraq.

The Reason [Abū Jaʿfar] Had [the Descendants of Ḥasan] Transported to Iraq

According to al-Ḥārith b. Muḥammad—Muḥammad b. Saʿd—Muḥammad b. ‘Umar: When Abū Jaʿfar appointed Riyyāḥ b. Uthmān b. Ḥayyān al-Murri as governor of Medina, he ordered him to search strenuously for Muḥammad and Ibrāhīm, the sons of ‘Abdallāh b. Ḥasan, not to treat them as of minor importance [as former governors had].

According to Muḥammad b. ‘Umar—‘Abd al-Rahmān b. Abī al-Mawālī: Riyyāḥ vigorously pressed the search for them, showing

653. Jaʿfar b. Ḥasan had earlier been a litigant in the dispute between the Ḥasanids and the Ḥusaynids over the guardianship of the endowments (wuqūf) of ‘Ali. Ṭabarī, II, 1671–73.
654. Kullu man qutila minhum. Ṭabarī, Addenda et Emendanda, p. DCCXXXV.
655. The Leiden text’s editor, M. T. Houtsma, notes that this concluding section of year 144 is missing from the Algiers manuscript and in the Berlin manuscript has been placed at the end of the year 145.
The Events of the Year 144

no leniency. He used all means at his disposal in that effort, with the result that Muḥammad and Ibrāhīm became fearful and began to move about from place to place. Increasingly concerned with his desire to lay hands on them, Abū Jaʿfar wrote ordering Riyāḥ b. ʿUthmān to seize their father, ʿAbdallāh b. Ḥasan, as well as his brothers, Ḥasan b. Ḥasan, Dāwūd b. Ḥasan, Ibrāhīm b. Ḥasan, and Muḥammad b. ʿAbdallāh b. ʿAmr b. ʿUthmān b. ʿAffān. This last mentioned was their brother by their mother, Fāṭimah bt. Ḥusayn. He was also to seize several others of the Banū Ḥasan, to shackle them, and to send them to the caliph in al-Rabadhah, for in this year Abū Jaʿfar had made the Pilgrimage. He also wrote telling Riyāḥ that he should seize me along with the others. Riyāḥ, therefore, sent me to the caliph as well. Having just begun the Pilgrimage, I was overtaken, arrested, cast in irons, and carried off on a back road until I came to them in al-Rabadhah.

According to Muḥammad b. ʿUmar: I saw ʿAbdallāh b. Ḥasan and his family being led forth from the Dār Marwān after the late-afternoon prayer. They were in irons and were transported in uncushioned litters. At that time I had already reached physical maturity, so I remember what I saw.

According to Muḥammad b. ʿUmar—ʿAbd al-Raḥmān b. Abī al-Mawāli: About 400 men from Juhaynah, Muzaynah and other tribes were arrested with the Banū Ḥasan. I saw them in al-Rabadhah, standing in the sun with their hands bound behind their backs. I was imprisoned with ʿAbdallāh b. Ḥasan and his family when Abū Jaʿfar came to al-Rabadhah after coming from the Pilgrimage. ʿAbdallāh b. Ḥasan requested Abū Jaʿfar's permission to enter his presence. Abū Jaʿfar, however, refused and did not see ʿAbdallāh until he had left this world. Then Abū Jaʿfar summoned me from among the others, and I was allowed to sit until I was brought into the caliph's presence. ʿĪsā b. ʿAlī was with the...

658. Lam yudāhin can also mean that he made no effort to dissemble or to mask his activities.
659. See p. 122 for the caliph's pilgrimage route.
660. Wa-ʿurida bi al-ṭariqū. Ṭabari, Glossarium, s.v. ʿaraḍa.
caliph, and upon seeing me he said, “Yes, Commander of the Faithful, he is the one. If you are forceful with him, he will tell you where they are.” I greeted him with a “Peace be with you,” but Abū Jaʿfar said, “May God grant you no peace! Where are those two reprobates, the sons of a reprobate, those two deceivers, the sons of a deceiver?” I replied, “Will the truth avail me anything in your eyes, Commander of the Faithful?” “What do you mean?” he said. “May my wife be repudiated and other evils befall me if I know where they are!” Not accepting that from me, he called for the lashes. I was made to stand between two flogging poles (ʿuqābān) while he had me beaten 400 times. I was not conscious of the lashing until it was over, having been carried senseless to my associates. The caliph then sent for al-Dibāj, i.e., Muḥammad b. ʿAbdallāh b. ʿAmr b. Ṭūḥmān b. ʿAffān, whose daughter was the wife of Ibrāhīm b. ʿAbdallāh b. Ḥasan. When Muḥammad was brought before him, Abū Jaʿfar said, “Inform me about those two deceivers, what they have done, where they are.” “By God, Commander of the Faithful,” Muhammad answered, “I have no knowledge of them.” At this the caliph retorted, “You had better give me information!” Muhammad responded, “I have already told you—and by God, I am a truth-speaking man—previously I did have information about them, but today, I swear I know nothing of them.” The caliph ordered him to be stripped. This was done, and he was given 100 lashes. An iron collar linking his hand to his neck was fastened on him. When his whipping was finished, he was taken away, and a shirt of his made of pure white linen was put on him over the effects of the beating. He was brought to us thus clothed and, by God, because of the shirt’s sticking to the blood, they could not get it off him without milking a ewe over it. Then the shirt was stripped off, and they tended to him.

Abū Jaʿfar said, “Take them down to Iraq,” so we were brought to al-Ḥāshimiyah and confined there. The first of those who died in prison was ʿAbdallāh b. Ḥasan. The jailer came and said, “The

662. Tabari, Glossarium, s.v. in, for this substitution of the third person for the first.
663. Tabari, Glossarium, s.v. ʿaqaba, and Lane, Lexicon, V, 2103.
664. jāmiʿatu hadidin. Lane, Lexicon, II, 458.
665. Qamīṣun qūhīyyun. Tabari, Glossarium, s.v. qāha.
one among you most closely related to him should come forth and pray for him." His brother, Hasan b. Ḥasan b. Ḥasan b. ʿAlī went out and prayed for him. Then Muḥammad b. ʿAbdallāh b. ʿAmr b. ʿUthmān died. His head was taken, and the caliph sent it to Khurāsān, accompanied by a group of the shiʿah. They made the rounds of the districts of Khurāsān, and began to swear by God that "this is the head of Muḥammad b. ʿAbdallāh, descendant of Fāṭimah, the daughter of the Messenger of God." Thus they led the people to suppose it to be the head of Muḥammad b. ʿAbdallāh b. Ḥasan, the one whose revolt against Abū Jaʿfar they kept hearing about.

In this year the governor of Mecca was al-Sarī b. ʿAbdallāh, the governor of Medina was Riyāḥ b. ʿUthmān al-Murri, and the governor of al-Kūfah was ʿIsā b. Mūsā. Sufyān b. Muʿāwiyyah was the governor of al-Baṣrah, while its judiciary was headed by Sawwār b. ʿAbdallāh. The governor of Egypt was Yazīd b. Ḥātim.

---

[666] Fāṭimah bt. al-Ḥusayn was the mother, by different fathers, of Muḥammad b. ʿAbdallāh b. ʿAmr and of ʿAbdallāh b. al-Ḥasan.
Among the events of this year was the revolt of Muhammad b. 'Abdallāh b. Ḥasan in Medina and, later, the revolt of his brother, Ibrāhīm b. 'Abdallāh in al-Baṣrah, and their eventual murders.667

The Rebellion of Muḥammad b. 'Abdallāh and His Murder

According to 'Umar—Muḥammad b. Yaḥyā—al-Hārith b. Iṣḥāq: When Abū Jaʿfar had the Ḥasanids brought down [to al-Rabadhah], Riyāḥ went back to Medina and pressed on with the search, narrowing in on Muḥammad until the latter decided to come out in open revolt.

According to 'Umar: I recounted to Ibrāhīm b. Muḥammad b. 'Abdallāh al-Jaʿfari668 that Muḥammad had felt hemmed in and

---


therefore rebelled before the time that he had settled upon with his brother Ibrāhim. Ibrāhim [b. Muḥammad] denied this version and said, "Muḥammad remained the object of such an intensive search that his son tumbled down [the mountainside] and died, a search that bore down on him to the point that he lowered himself into one of the wells in Medina [ostensibly] to draw water for his associates. He was plunged into it up to his head, but his body, which was bulky, could not be completely concealed. Even so, Ibrāhim [b. ʿAbdallāh] postponed his timing because he was smitten with smallpox."

According to ʿUmar—Muḥammad b. Yaḥyā—al-Ḥarīth b. Ishāq: The people of Medina were [all] discussing Muḥammad's uprising. We were in such a hurry to buy food that some people sold their wives' ornaments [to do so]. Riyāḥ heard that Muḥammad had come to al-Madhād669 so he rode out toward there at the head of his army. Muḥammad had, in fact, left for al-Madhād before Riyāḥ, together with Jubayr b. ʿAbdallāh al-Sulami, Jubayr b. ʿAbdallāh b. Yaʿqūb b. ʿAṭā,670 and ʿAbdallāh b. ʿĀmir al-Aslami. But they overheard a water carrier tell her mistress that Riyāḥ had ridden out to al-Madhād in search of Muḥammad and that he had already reached the marketplace. Muḥammad's supporters, therefore, entered a house belonging to one of the Juḥaynah, barring its door against Riyāḥ's men. Riyāḥ passed right by the door without realizing that they were inside and then returned to the Dār Marwān. When it was time for the last evening prayer, Muḥammad said the prayer in the house rather than going out.671

Some sources say that it was Sulaymān b. ʿAbdallah b. Abi Sabrah672 of the Banū ʿĀmir b. Luʾayy673 who informed Riyāḥ about Muḥammad.


669. Al-Madhād is a site where the Prophet Muḥammad had a trench dug during the siege of Medina in 8/627. Yaqūt, Buldān, 5, 88.
671. Or this could be Riyāḥ praying in the Dār Marwān?
672. Alternatively, b. Abī Samrah, following Ṭabarī, Indices.
673. For mention of this Qurashi subgroup in the genealogy of the Prophet Muḥammad, see Ṭabarī, I, 1101–2. Caskel, Ġamharat an-nasab, L, 4, 27, II, 160.
Ja'far came to see Muhammad before his uprising and said to him, "Why are you waiting to come out in open revolt? By God, in this community we find no one more ill-fated for it than you. What keeps you from coming out in revolt on your own?"

According to 'Umar—his father: Riyāḥ sent for us, so I came to him along with Ja'far b. Muḥammad b. 'Alī b. Ḥusayn, Ḥusayn b. 'Alī b. Ḥusayn b. 'Alī, 'Alī b. 'Umar b. 'Alī b. Husayn b. 'Alī, Hasan b. 'Alī b. Ḥusayn b. 'Alī b. Husayn b. 'Alī, and other leading men of Quraysh, including Ismā'īl b. Ayyūb b. Salmah b. Abdallāh b. al-Walīd b. al-Mughīrah, whose son Khālid was with him. While with Riyāḥ in the Dār Marwān, we heard the cry Allāhu akbar, the sound of which overwhelmed everything else. We assumed that it was coming from the guardsmen's quarters, whereas they assumed that it was coming from the Dār. Ibn Muslim b. 'Uqbah, who was also with Riyāḥ, jumped up and leaned upon his sword, exclaiming, "Do what I tell you with these people and cut off their heads!" 'Alī b. 'Umar cried, "By God, this very night we're on the verge of being destroyed!" which prompted Husayn b. 'Alī to stand up and say, "What's that to you? We must act with loyalty and obedience." At this point Riyāḥ and Muḥammad b. Abd al-'Azīz rose and went into a cu-
The Events of the Year 145

They stayed out of sight there while we got up and left by way of the Dār ʿAbd al-ʿAzīz b. Marwān, continuing to the point where we had to scale a dung heap (kibān) in the alley of ʿĀṣim b. ʿAmr. Ismāʿīl b. Ayyūb said to his son Khālid, "O my son, by God, I can't make this jump by myself, so lift me up." This his son did.

According to Muḥammad b. Yaḥyā—ʿAbd al-ʿAzīz b. ʿImrān—his father: While Riyāḥ was in the Dār Marwān, news reached him that Muḥammad was coming out in open revolt that very night. He sent for my brother, Muḥammad b. ʿImrān, for al-ʿAbbas b. ʿAbdallāh b. al-Ḥārith b. al-ʿAbbas, and for several others. My brother went and I went with him, and we entered Riyāḥ's presence after the final evening prayer. We offered him our salutations, but he did not answer us. We sat down, and my brother said, "How is the Amir—may God prosper him—this evening?" "Fine," Riyāḥ answered in a subdued voice. Then he was silent for a long time. Eventually he roused himself and said, "You people of Medina, the Commander of the Faithful has been seeking the object of his quest in the East of the earth and in the West while he has lived in hiding among you! I swear by God, if he comes forth in open rebellion, I shall not leave a single one of you with his head on his shoulders!" My brother said, "May God prosper you. I will be your surety for him; this, by God, is false!" To this Riyāḥ responded, "You have the largest number of kinfolk of anyone here, and you are the qādī of the Commander
of the Faithful. Go summon your kinfolk." My brother jumped up to leave, but Riyah told him to sit down and said, "Thabit, you go." So I rose quickly and sent word to the Banū Zuhrah, who live in Ḥashsh Ṭalḥah, Dār Sa’d, and Dār Banū ʿAzhar, that they should ready their weapons. Various of them presented themselves. ʿĪbrāhīm b. Yaʿqūb b. Sa’d b. Abi Waqqās, who was one of the finest shots, came with a bow slung over his shoulder. When I saw what a large number they were, I entered Riyah’s presence and said, "Here are the Banū Zuhrah with their weapons, now with you, so give them permission to enter." "How absurd!" said Riyah; "Do you intend to bring armed men into my presence at night? Tell them to sit in the courtyard, and that if anything happens, they should fight." I therefore said to them, "He has refused to admit you. No, by God, there is nothing [for us] here! So sit down with us, and we will discuss matters."

We stayed for a little while, and then al-ʿAbbās b. ʿAbbās al-Ḥārith left leading a contingent of cavalry to patrol as far as the top of al-Thaniyyah. He then went to his house and bolted it behind him. I tell you, we were in this very situation when two horsemen appeared from the direction of al-Zawrāʾ, galloping to a halt between the Dār ʿAbbālāh b. Muṭi and Rahbat al-

---

686. ʿAbd al-ʿAzīz b. ʿImrān was known as Ibn Abī Thābit al-Zuhri. See note 407.

687. Banū Zuhrah b. Kilāb were a branch of Quraysh. EI² s.v. Ḳuraysh [W. Montgomery Watt]; Caskel, Ğamharat an-nasab, I, 20, II, 611; Watt, Muhammad at Mecca, 5–8; Ibn Ḥazm, Jamhārat ansāb al-ʿarab, 128–35.

688. In his entry on Ḥashsh Kawkab, Yaʿqūt, Buldān, II, 262, refers to this site, which means "Ṭalḥah’s Garden," as simply another place in Medina. Wüstenfeld, "Medina," 112, associates this with Ṭalḥah b. Abī Ṭalḥah, i.e., ʿAbbālāh b. ʿAbd al-ʿUzzā b. ʿUthmān b. ʿAbd al-Dār. Tabārī, I, 1386.

689. His great-grandfather Abū Waqqās Mālik b. Uḥyab b. ʿAbd Manāf was a cousin of the Prophet Muhammad’s mother, ʾĀminah bt. Wāḥb b. ʿAbd Manāf. Caskel, Ğamharat an-nasab, I, 20; EI² s.v. ʾĀminah [W. Montgomery Watt].

690. Turūqan. Tabārī, Glossarium, s.v. ṣaraqa.

691. Thanīyyah al-Wadāʾ, the “farewell promontory,” was a mountain exit from the city of Medina on the road to Mecca, a spot from which travelers could take a final look at the city they were leaving. Yaʿqūt, Buldān, II, 86; Tabārī, Glossarium, s.v. thanā.


693. ʿAbbālāh b. Muṭi, a Qurashi of the Banū ʿAdī, first appears in Tabārī offering advice to al-Ḥusayn b. Abī Ṭalib but is best remembered as Ibn al-Zubayr’s
Qadā',\textsuperscript{694} at the place of drawing water. We said [to each other], ‘By God, haste is the evil here.’\textsuperscript{695}

Then we heard sound in the distance, so we stayed there for a long night. Muḥammad b. ʿAbdallāh approached from al-Madhād along with 250\textsuperscript{696} men. As he entered upon the [divergence] of the Banū Salimah\textsuperscript{697} and the Buṭḥān roads, he said, ‘Go by the way of the Banū Salimah so that you may be safe, God willing.’\textsuperscript{698} We heard a cry of Allāhu akbar, but then the sound died away. He drew closer until, having emerged from the alley of Ibn Ḫubayn\textsuperscript{699} he went deep into the marketplace as far as the datesellers’ area and passed through the basket-sellers’ area. From there he reached the prison, which in those days was in the Dār Ibn Ḥishām, and breached it, releasing those who were there. Then he advanced until, when he was between the Dār Yazīd and the Dār Uways, we truly saw a terrifying sight.

Ibrāhīm b. Yaʿqūb alighted, unslung his quiver, and said, ‘Should I shoot?’ but we told him not to. Muḥammad made a circle of the courtyard until he came to the Dār ʿĀṭikāh bt. Yazīd.\textsuperscript{700} He sat down at its door while the people were skirmishing until a man of Sind was killed as he began his morning observance in the mosque. It was one of Muḥammad’s partisans who killed him.

According to ʿUmār—Saʿd\textsuperscript{701} b. ʿAbd al-Ḥamīd b. Jaʿfar—Jahm b. ʿUthmān: Muḥammad left al-Madhād riding on a donkey, and

\textsuperscript{694} Raḥbat al-Qadāʾ was the name of a mosque in Medina and of the neighborhood around it. Ṭabarī, I, 2792.

\textsuperscript{695} Sharru al-amri wa-allāhu jiddun.

\textsuperscript{696} The number is given as 150 in Fragmenta historicorum, I, 238, and Ibn al-Aṭīr, Kāmil, V, 530.

\textsuperscript{697} Salimah b. Saʿd were a clan of the Khazraj tribe and were remembered for being among the earliest supporters of Muḥammad in Medina. Wāṭṭ, Muhammad at Medina, 174–76; Guillaume, Life of Muhammad, 594 = Ibn Iṣḥāq, Sirāh, 879; Caska, Gamharat an-nasab, I, 190, II, 508; Ibn Ḥazm, Jamharat ansāb al-ʿarab, 358–59.

\textsuperscript{698} The statement is a play of words on Salimah and the root SLM, which carries connotations of peace and safety.

\textsuperscript{699} Wüstenfeld, “Medina,” 118.

\textsuperscript{700} ʿĀṭikāh bt. Yazīd was the daughter of the second Umayyad caliph, Yazīd b. Muʿāwiyaḥ, wife of the fifth, ʿAbd al-Malik b. Marwān, and mother of the ninth, Yazīd b. ʿAbd al-Malik. Ṭabarī, II, 1174; Ṣafādī, Wāfi, XVI, 552–53.

\textsuperscript{701} Ṭabarī, Addenda et Emendanda, p. DCCXXXVI.
we accompanied him. He appointed Khawwāt b. Bukayr b. Khawwāt b. Jubayr to head the foot soldiers and put ʿAbd al-Ḥamīd b. Jaʿfar in charge of the [commander’s] lance, saying, "Take care of it for me." ʿAbd al-Ḥamīd carried it, but then he asked to be released from doing so. Muḥammad released him and sent him off with his son, Ḥasan b. Muḥammad.

According to ʿUmar—ʿĪsā—Jaʿfar b. ʿAbdallāh b. Yazīd b. Rukānah: Ibrāhim b. ʿAbdallāh sent his brother two loads of swords, which Muḥammad stored in al-Madhād. He sent for us on the night he made his uprising, and we were not even too strong. Muḥammad rode a bedouin donkey with a black coat. Two roads diverged from there, the Buṭḥān road and the Banū Salīmah road. We asked him which one we should take, and he said, "On the Banū Salīmah road God will keep you safe." We continued on until we reached the Marwān Gate.

According to ʿUmar—Muḥammad b. ʿAmr b. Zanbīl b. Nahshāl, one of the Banū Yarbuʿ—Abū ʿAmr al-Madinī—a Qurashi shaykh: The heavens beat down upon us for days in Medina. When the downpour subsided, toward the end of it I went out to feel the rain, removing myself some distance from Medina. In fact, I was resting against my saddle when a man came upon me, seemingly out of nowhere, and sat down beside me. He was wearing filthy, ragged clothes and a tattered turban. I asked him, "Where have you come from?" "From a little flock I own," he replied; "I gave orders to its shepherd about something..."
I needed and then came on here, heading for my people." `Umar continued: I couldn’t start down the road of any field of knowledge without his anticipating and even outdoing me\textsuperscript{708} there. I began to be overcome by admiration of him and what he brought, so I said, "What people do you belong to?" "The Muslims," he replied. "Of course," I said, "but from which group of them are you?" "No need for you to continue,"\textsuperscript{709} he replied. "But that's precisely what I must do," I insisted. "Now who are you?" At this he jumped up and said:

In tattered shoes he suffers sore feet [continuing to the end of the three verses [quoted earlier].]\textsuperscript{710}

Then he turned and left. But, by God, hardly had he vanished from my sight than I regretted losing him before I had any knowledge of him. So I went after him to question him further, but it was as if the earth had closed over him. At this point I returned to my saddle and went on to Medina. But a day and a night passed before I witnessed the dawn ritual prayer in Medina, and there was a man leading us in prayer whose voice I recognized. He recited, "We have indeed made for you a clear victory."\textsuperscript{711} When he finished he ascended the \textit{minbar}, and who should it be but my acquaintance, who was, in fact, Muḥammad b. `Abdallāh b. ハウス.

According to `Umar—Ismā‘īl b. Ibrāhīm b. Hūd, a \textit{mawlā} of Quraysh—Ismā‘īl b. al-Ḥakam b. ‘Awānah\textsuperscript{712}—a man he named from whom he heard a similar story: Ismā‘īl said, "I told it to a man of al-Anbār whose patronymic was Abū `Ubayd. He mentioned that Muḥammad or Ibrāhīm had dispatched a man from the Banū Ḍabbah\textsuperscript{713}—according to what Ismā‘īl b. Ibrāhīm b. Hūd

\textsuperscript{708} Wa-katharanī fihi. Tabārī, \textit{Addenda et Emendanda}, p. DCXXXVI, and \textit{Glossarium}, s.v. \textit{kathura}.

\textsuperscript{709} Lā `alayka allā tazīda. Tabārī, \textit{Glossarium}, s.v. `alā.

\textsuperscript{710} P. 115.

\textsuperscript{711} Qur’ān 48:1


\textsuperscript{713} Ḍabbah b. Udd were an important Arab tribe who formed part of the Ribāb confederacy. In both al-Baṣrah and Khurāsān, they were counted with
thought—so that the man could give him some knowledge of Abū Ja‘far. The man came before al-Musayyab, who at that time was head of the police,714 and sought to use his kinship connection with him. Al-Musayyab, however, said, “I’ve no choice but to take you before the Commander of the Faithful.” He therefore took him to see Abū Ja‘far, and the man confessed his identity. Abū Ja‘far asked, “Have you not heard Muḥammad [or Ibrāhīm] say (he repeated the lines):

Fear banished and disgraced him.
Thus it is with one who hates the heat of battle.”?

To this Abū Ja‘far responded, “Inform him that we say:

O the shameful behavior we deem worse than death!
Because of it we would bid death welcome.”

The caliph then said, “You are discharged; now go and tell him that.”

According to ‘Umar—Azhar b. Sa‘īd b. Nāfi‘, who was an actual witness: Muḥammad came out in open revolt on the first day of Rajab in 145.715 He and his confederates spent the evening in al-Madhād. Later that night they came forward and stormed the prison and the treasury. Muḥammad ordered Riyāḥ and Ibn Muslim imprisoned together in the Dār Ibn Hishām.


According to ‘Umar b. Rāshid:718 He made his uprising on 27 Jumādā II in 145. On the night he came forth, I saw him wearing

---

714. Cf. Tabari, III, 293, where Musayyab is mentioned as charged with the caliph’s personal guard (ḥaras). Musayyab b. Zuhayr al-Dbabī, one of the revolutionary nuṣara’ al-nuqabā’, served the first five ‘Abbāsid caliphs. His assignments included governing first Khurasān and then the Jazīrah for al-Mahdī. Akhbar al-dawlāh, 219; Tabari, III, 500; Crone, Slaves, 186–87.
715. Saturday, September 25, 762.
716. Isfahānī, Maqātil, 262, repeats this isnād with the addition of ‘Umar b. Rāshid as an eyewitness.
717. Wednesday, September 22, 762.
718. Ṭabari, Indices, identifies him as a mawlā of the Banū Anaj.
The Events of the Year 145

a yellow headdress of a quilted type, a yellow robe, one length of cloth that he used to bind up his breeches, another that he used as a turban, and a sashed sword. He started out saying to his confederates, “Do not kill! Do not kill!” When the Dār [Marwān] proved inaccessible to them, he said, “Enter by the door to the reserved section [of the mosque].” However, they rushed blindly forward and set fire to the wicket door. No one was able to pass through, so Rizām, al-Qasrī’s mawlā, placed his shield on the fire and then walked across it. The people did what he did and entered through that door. Some of Riyāh’s associates pushed hard against the door, but those who were with Riyāh in the Dār [Marwān] left via Dār ‘Abd al-‘Azīz by way of the bathhouse. Riyāh, however, went up into a latticed oriel in the Dār Marwān. Muḥammad ordered his men to climb up and tear it down. They went up to him, brought him down, and imprisoned him in the Dār Marwān. With him they imprisoned his brother, ‘Abbās b. ‘Uthmān. Muhammad b. Khālid, his nephew al-Nadhir b. Yazīd, and Rizām had been in the prison, but Muḥammad had had them brought forth and then ordered al-Nadhir to ensure the safety [in confinement] of Riyāh and his associates.

According to ‘Umar—Īsā—his father: Muḥammad imprisoned Riyāh, his nephew, and Ibn Muslim b. ‘Uqbah in the Dār Marwān.


720. Wa-jubbatan ṣafra’a. For the jubbaḥ, see Ahsan, Social Life, 40, 74; Dozy, Vêtements, 107–17.

721. Ibn al-Athīr, Kāmil, V, 530, reads lā taqṭulū illā yaqṭulū, i.e., “Do not kill unless they do.”

722. For bāb al-khawkah, see Dozy, Supplément, I, 411.

723. Wa-ta’allaqā Riyāḥu. Ṭabārī, Glossarium, s.v. ‘alīqa; cf. Fragmenta historiorum, I, 238: fa-sā’ida Riyāḥu mashrabatan fī al-dār.

724. In the account of his death at the hands of Ibn Kuḍayr, he is characterized as “a righteous man.” Ṭabārī, III, 242.

725. Muḥammad b. Khālid b. ‘Abdallāḥ al-Qasrī, the former governor of Medina.

726. See note 407.
Nadhīr replied, "That's between you and him," and then stood up to leave. Riyāḥ said to Rizām, "O Abū Qays, I did to you what I had to even though I knew you would prevail." Al-Nadhīr said to him, "You did what you are suited for, and we shall do the same." Rizām reached for him, but Riyāḥ kept appealing to him until he left off, saying, "By God, you are insolent when in possession of power and are contemptible when afflicted."

According to 'Umar—Mūsā b. Sa‘īd al-Jumahi: Riyāḥ imprisoned Muhammad b. Marwān b. Abī Salīt, a descendant of the Anṣār, and also one of the Banū 'Amr b. 'Awf,727 who said these lines while in prison:

The Qaysi noble forgets not the honor due him
that men offer to men they trust.728

Whenever Sa‘īd rattles the gate,
we shamble toward him with the gawky gait of ostrichs.
Creeping like ants we match his march
with small steps, not prideful strides.

According to 'Umar—Muḥammad b. Yaḥyā—Ismā‘īl b. Ya‘qūb al-Ta‘mī: Muḥammad ascended the minbar, gave praise and glory to God, and then said:729 "Now then, you people, in the matter of this tyrant, the enemy of God, Abū Ja‘far, you well know how he constructed the Green Dome,730 which he built as a way of opposing God in His dominion and belittling the sacred Ka‘bah.731 God seized Pharaoh simply for saying "I am your most exalted Lord."732 Certainly the people with the strongest claim to

---

727. 'Amr b. 'Awf was a division of Aws, one of the two main tribal groupings in pre-Islamic Medina. El², s.v. al-Aws [W. Montgomery Watt]; Caska, Gamharat an-nasab, I, 177, II, 171.
728. Mulqā al-rijālī ilā al-rijālī. Ṭabarî, Glossarium, s.v. laqiya; Lane, Lexicon, VIII, 3012.
730. The audience chamber of al-Mansūr’s palace in Baghdad was topped by a green dome (al-qubbah al-khadra‘) that rose to such a height (48.36 meters) that it could be seen from far beyond the city. As most sources date commencement of the construction of Baghdad to the year 145/762, reference to the dome in this sermon is probably an anachronism. El², s.v. Baghdad [A. A. Duri]; Le Strange, Baghdad, 31–33; Lassner, Topography, 136.
731. The central sanctuary of the great mosque in Mecca, toward which Muslims orient themselves in prayer. El² s.v. [A. J. Wensinck and J. Jomier].
uphold this religion are the descendants of the first Muhājirūn and the Anṣār who assisted them. O God, they [the ‘Abbāsids] have made lawful what You proscribed and have proscribed what You made lawful. They give security to the one You inspire with fear and [try to] frighten the one to whom You give security. O God, reckon them by number and kill them in Your might, omitting not a single one of them. O you people, by God I have not come out in revolt from among you. For me you are people of strength, not of affliction. Indeed I have chosen you for myself. By God, I came here only when there was no city on earth in which God is worshiped where the oath of allegiance to me has not been taken.”

According to ‘Umar—Mūsā b. ‘Abdallāh—his father—his father: When Riyāḥ sent me off news of that reached Muḥammad, so he made his uprising that night. Now Riyāḥ had already instructed the soldiers who were with me that if a man should appear from the direction of Medina, they should behead me. When Riyāḥ was brought to Muḥammad, he said, “Where is Mūsā?” stated Riyāḥ “By God, I have already sent him down to Iraq.” Muḥammad said, “Send someone after him and have him brought back.” Riyāḥ replied, “I have already arranged with the army who are with him that, if they see anyone approach from Medina, they should kill Mūsā.” Muḥammad asked his associates, “Who will help me in the matter of Mūsā?” and Ibn Khudayr said that he would do so. Muḥammad said, “Then go look for some men.” Ibn Khudayr selected some and then set off.

By God, all of a sudden Ibn Khudayr was in front of us as if he had approached from Iraq. Catching sight of him, the soldiers

733. Those who emigrated with the Prophet Muḥammad from Mecca to Medina in 1/622. El’, s.v. [F. Buhl].
734. A name meaning “helpers” that was applied to the people of Medina who assisted and supported the Prophet Muḥammad and his followers. Ep, s.v. [W. Montgomery Watt].
735. This part of Muḥammad’s address is repeated on p. 192.
736. Min bayna aḥurikum; see note 684.
737. This continues the account of Mūsā b. ‘Abdallāh b. Hasan, a brother of Muḥammad and Ibrāhīm, from p. 130.
738. Ṭabari, Indices, identifies him as a descendant of Muṣ‘ab b. al-Zubayr. See note 958.
said, "It's the Commander of the Faithful's messengers." When Ibn Khudayr and his men were among us, they drew swords, and the commander and his associates took me, and he had me kneel down, released me from my bonds, and made me keep going until he brought me before Muhammad.

According to `Umar—`Ali b. al-Ja'ıd: 739 Abû Ja'far would write to Muḥammad as though from his army commanders, who would [seem to] summon Muḥammad to appear and would inform him that they were on his side. 740 Muḥammad used to say, "Were we to meet, all of the army commanders would side with me."


According to `Umar—Ismā'īl b. Ibrāhīm b. Hūd—Sa'īd b. Yaḥyā Abū Sufyān al-Ḥimyari745—`Abd al-Ḥamīd b. Ja'far: I was head of

---


741. `Uthmān b. Muḥammad b. Khālid was a member of the prominent Qurashi family whose forefather, al-Zubayr b. al-'Awwām, fought against `Ali b. Abī Ṭālib at the Battle of the Camel. Kennedy, Early Abbasid Caliphate, 201–2; Iṣfahānī, Maqātil, 296.

742. Abū al-Qalammas `Uthmān b. `Ubaydallāh was a descendant of the second caliph, `Umar b. al-Khaṭṭāb.

743. Abu Muḥammad al-Madāni was a Qurashi muhaddith who died in 170/ 786. Ibn Ḥajar, Tahdhib, V, 150–51, where the name is vocalized as Makhrāmah; Van Arendonk, Debuts, 312 = Opkomst, 285.

744. Diwān al-'aṭā'. Ef., s.v. 'Aṭā' [C. Cahen].

the police forces for Muḥammad b. ‘Abdallāh until he sent me off on an assignment and put al-Zubayrī\footnote{I.e., ‘Uthmān b. Muḥammad b. Khālid b. al-Zubayr.} in charge of his police.

\textit{Gamharat an-nasab}, I, 19, II, 546.}


May God have mercy on youths who fought on the day of al-Thaniyyah\footnote{‘Abd al-Wahhab wrote to me in verses that he had composed, and I wrote to him:}

They fought for him, [even] young girls and esteemed people of pure lineage
But [eventually] the people ran away and left him one and all, all but some lionhearted cavalry.

Continued Kulthum bt. Wahhāb, “It became popular to add:’’

May the all-merciful God kill ‘Īsā, the killer of the Pure Soul.

\footnote{746. I.e., ‘Uthmān b. Muḥammad b. Khālid b. al-Zubayr.}
\footnote{747. Brother of Abū al-Qalammas above and thus also a descendant of ‘Umar b. al-Khaṭṭāb.}
\footnote{748. Khubayb b. Thābit was a grandson of anticaliph ‘Abdallāh b. al-Zubayr, who opposed Yazīd b. Mu‘āwiyyah and was killed by Syrian troops in 73/692. For Thābit b. ‘Abdallāh, see Caskel, \textit{Gamharat an-nasab}, I, 19, II, 546.}
\footnote{749. ‘Abd al-Wahhab b. Yaḥyā was a great-grandson of the anticaliph ‘Abdallāh b. al-Zubayr.}
\footnote{750. Baqi’ al-Gharqad was the first Muslim cemetery in Medina and the burial place of many of the Prophet’s family. \textit{EI²}, s.v. Baki’ al-Gharkad [A. J. Wensinck and A. S. Bazmee Ansari], Yaqūt, \textit{Buldān}, I, 473--74.}
\footnote{751. Tabari, \textit{Addenda et Emendanda}, p. DCCXXXVI.}
\footnote{752. I.e., Thaniyyat al-Wadā’. See note 691.}
According to 'Umar—Sa'd b. 'Abd al-Ḥamīd b. Ja'far b. 'Abdallāh b. al-Ḥakam b. Sinān al-Ḥakami, the brother of al-Anṣār—others: Mālik b. Anas was asked for a legal opinion about joining Muhammad's uprising. People said to him, "We are obligated by an oath of allegiance to Abū Ja'far." Mālik responded, "You gave the oath of allegiance only under compulsion. A sworn contract is not incumbent upon anyone who has been coerced." At this, the people hurried off to join Muḥammad, but Mālik stayed at home.

According to Muḥammad b. Ismā'il—Ibn Abī Mulaykah, the mawla of 'Abdallāh b. Ja'far: Muḥammad sent for Ismā'il b. 'Abdallāh b. Ja'far [who was a man of advanced years], summoning him at the time he made his uprising to give his oath of allegiance. Ismā'il said, "O son of my brother, by God you are as good as dead, so how can I give you the oath of allegiance!" Therefore, the people held back from him for a little while. The sons of Mu'āwiya, however, had already hurried to Muḥammad's side. Ḥammādah, the daughter of Mu'āwiya, came to Ismā'il and said, "O Uncle, my brothers have already hastened to their cousin's cause. If you keep saying this, you will hold people back from him, and my cousin and my brothers will be killed." The old man refused to do anything but proscribe Muḥammad. It is said that Ḥammādah rushed at Ismā'il and killed him. Muhammad was about to say the ritual prayer for Ismā'il, but 'Abdallāh b. Ismā'il jumped at him, saying, "You order my father's killing and then you pray for him!" The guards pushed him aside, and Muḥammad prayed for Ismā'il.

---

753. Ibn Abī Mulaykah, a descendant of 'Abdallāh b. 'Ubaydallāh [d. 117/735], known as Abū Muḥammad or Abū Bakr al-Taymi, was the muezzin of the sacred mosque at Mecca and the judge of Mecca for al-Zubayr. Safadi, Wāfi, XVII, 304; Dhahabi, Siyar, V, 88–90.


755. Mu'āwiya b. 'Abdallāh b. Ja'far b. Abī Ṭālib was the son of the last of the Bānū Hāshim to see the Prophet. He was an uncle of Muḥammad b. 'Abdallāh, and the names of his sons, Muḥammad's cousins, are given as Ḥasan, Yazid, and Ṣāliḥ. Safadi, Wāfi, XVII, 107–9; Nagel, "Bericht", 237; Tabari, III, 202, 204.

The Events of the Year 145

According to `Umar—'Isā—his father: Muḥammad was brought Ubaydallāh b. al-Husayn b. 'Ali b. al-Ḥusayn b. 'Ali.757 The latter held his eyes squeezed shut and said, "I am under oath, if I see him, to kill him." ʻIsā b. Zayd758 said, "Let me behead him," but Muḥammad prevented him from doing so.

According to `Umar—'Ayyūb b. 'Umar—Muḥammad b. Ma'ān759—Muḥammad b. Khālid al-Qasri:760 I was in the prison of Ibn ʻIyāyān761 when Muḥammad made his public appearance, and he released me. When I heard the summons to his cause that he made from the minbar, I said to myself, "This is the call of one entitled to make it. By God, in [responding to] it I will acquit myself well before God."762 I said to Muḥammad, "O Commander of the Faithful, you have now made your uprising in this area. If Abū Ja'far occupies any of its passages, its people will die of hunger and thirst. Rise up with me. Within but ten days I could strike him with 100,000 swords." But Muḥammad refused me. One day when I was with him, he said to me, "We have never found such fine personal goods as something we found in the possession of Ibn Abī Farwah,764 the son-in-law of Abū al-Khaṣīb."765

---

757. 'Ubaydallāh b. al-Husayn b. 'Ali was called al-A'raj ("the Lame"). His grandfather was known as Zayn al-ʻAbidin, and his great-great-grandfather was 'Ali b. Abī ʻṬālib. He himself betrayed Sulaymān b. Kathīr al-Khuzā'ī to Abū Mus-līm, prompting the former's execution. EI2, s.v. 'Alids [B. Lewis], especially the genealogical chart; Ṭabarī, III, 61.

758. 'Isā b. Zayd b. 'Ali b. al-Husayn b. 'Ali, whose patronymic was Abū Yahyā. His father, Zayd b. 'Ali, was the eponym of the Shi'i sect of the Zaydiyyah. 'Isā b. Zayd and 'Isā b. Müsā were the two figures of whom al-Maṃsur, shortly before his death, warned his son al-Mahdi. Ḥishānī, Maqātil, 405–28; EI1, s.v. Zaid b. 'Ali [R. Strothmann]; Ṭabarī, III, 448, 507.

759. Muḥammad b. Ma'ān b. Muḥammad b. Ma'ān b. Naḍlah b. 'Amr al-Chifārī was a muḥaddith of Medina, said to have died at about the time that Suftān b. 'Uyaynah did, i.e., 196/811. Ibn Ḥajar, Taḥdhib, IX, 412–13.

760. Muḥammad b. Khālid al-Qasri was the former governor of Medina. See note 361, above, under the year 141, and the account of his dismissal under year 144.


762. La-ubliynna allahu fiha bala' an ḥasanān. Ṭabarī, Glossarium, s.v. balā. Balā', in the sense of acquitting oneself well on the battlefield, was also grounds for a larger allotment from the army stipendiary system.

763. Law waqafa 'alā naqbin min anqābīhi. Ṭabarī, Glossarium, s.v. naqaba and waqafa.

764. Perhaps the son of the man with whom Muḥammad's brother, Ibrāhīm, stayed in Baghdad. Ṭabarī, III, 287.
had seized him.) I said to myself, "Don't I see you eyeing those fine goods with intent to steal?" Then I wrote to the Commander to the Faithful and informed him of how few still sided with Muhammad. Although Muhammad was well disposed toward me, he imprisoned me until such time as Ḥisā b. Mūṣā released me after killing Muhammad.766

According to ʿUmar—Saʿd b. ʿAbd al-Ḥamīd b. Jaʿfar—his sister, Buraykah bt. ʿAbd al-Ḥamīd—her father: One day while I was with Muhammad, his foot in my lap, Khawwāt b. Bukayr b. Khawwāt b. Jubayr came to see him. He greeted Muhammad, but Muhammad returned the greeting perfunctorily. Then a young Qurashi lad came in and greeted him. To this young man Muhammad returned a courteous greeting. I said [to Muhammad], "You are still not putting your partisanship aside." "How's that?" he said. "The Anṣārī leader came to see you and gave his greetings, but you responded to them half-heartedly. Then some Qurashi vagabond comes and makes his salutations, and you were ceremonious in reciprocating them." He said, "I did no such thing, although you've examined me more closely than anyone should do to another."


According to ʿUmar—Muḥammad b. Iṣmāʿil—his family: Muhammad appointed al-Qāsim b. Ishāq governor of the Yemen and set Mūṣā b. ʿAbdallāh over Syria, so that the two of them could proselytize for him. He was killed, however, before they arrived [at their respective posts].

765. Allā arāka qad absārta ḥurra al-mataʿ. Ṭabarī, Glossarium, s.v. baṣura.
767. Al-Ḥasan b. Muʿāwiyah supported his brother ʿAbdallāh's revolt in al-Kūfah in 127/744 and was charged with Jibāl by him. He was eventually imprisoned by al-Manṣūr and remained there until the caliph's death. Although al-Mahdī released him, al-Ḥasan died shortly thereafter. Ṭabarī, III, 1881, 1977; Nagel, Entstehung, 147–50; Iṣfahānī, Maqāṭīl, 300–9; Ṣafādī, Wāfi, XII, 274–75.
768. Al-Qāsim b. Ishāq was a descendant of Jaʿfar b. Abī Ṭalib and a cousin of al-Ḥasan b. Muʿāwiyah. Iṣfahānī, Maqāṭīl, 301; Kennedy, Early Abbāsid Caliphate, 201.
According to `Umar—Azhar b. Sa`id: At the time of his uprising Muhammad appointed `Abd al-`Aziz b. al-Darawardi\(^{769}\) as head of the arsenal.

According to `Umar—Muhammad b. Yahyā, Muhammad b. al-Hasan b. Zabālah and others: When Muḥammad made his uprising, Ibn Harmah\(^{770}\) said that a certain one of them—and he alone—has recited these verses to Abū Ja`far:

You have wrested the caliphate from one who desired it.

The misleader, the lost one raised his hopes.\(^{771}\)

He has destroyed himself in foolishness and cowardice.

Of it not the smallest bit was allotted to him.

Greedy men assisted him, but they were

the scum on the flood that floods collect.

They called upon Iblis when they lamented and lowed,\(^{772}\)

but the tempter, the forsaken one, did not come to their rescue.

They were the people obedient to him, but he turned his back.

And a group of them [still] came behind him.

Truly, they did not fall short in this,

in following on the heels of the misguider, but they did not go far.

It was not the people who gave you the caliphate but

the King, the Exalted One gave you that.

The legacy of Muḥammad is yours, and you are

the roots of legitimacy when the roots are torn up.

According to `Umar—Mahmūd b. Ma`mar b. Abī al-Shadā`id al-Fazārī\(^{773}\) and Mawḥūb b. Rashīd b. Ḣayyān al-Kilābī.\(^{774}\)

---

\(^{769}\) Known as Abū Muḥammad al-Juḥānī, `Abd al-`Azīz b. Muḥammad b. `Ubayd [d. 187/803] was a Medinese muḥaddith and a mawāli of the Juḥaynah tribe. His *laqab*, al-Darāwardī, is ascribed to a Khurāsānī town of that name or to his habit of using the Persian *andarūn* as a word of invitation. Ṣafādī, Wāfī, XVIII, 315–16; Dhahabī, Siyār, VIII, 366–68.

\(^{770}\) Abū Ishaq Ibrahim b. `Ali b. Salamah al-Fihri (d. 176/792) was a Medinese poet who composed panegyrics for the Umayyad caliph Walid b. Yazīd and for `Abdallāh b. al-Hasan but who also gained the support of Abū Ja`far. *Ep* s.v. (C. Pellat); GAS, II, 444–45; Ṣafādī, Wāfī, VI, 59–60; Zirikī, ʿAʾlām, I, 50.

\(^{771}\) I.e., Iblis/Satan.

\(^{772}\) *Da`ū Iblīsa idh karībū wa-jāta (ja`arū).* Ṣabārī, *Addenda et Emendanda*, p. DCCXXXVII.

\(^{773}\) Grandson of the poet quoted below.

Muhammad made his uprising and 'Isā proceeded against him, Abū al-Shadā'id said:

Fine mounts and blood mares have brought you 'Isā b. Mūsā, so be in no hurry.

According to 'Umar—'Isā: Muḥammad was very swarthy—his complexion almost black—and corpulent. He was nicknamed "Tar Face" because of his dark complexion, and, in fact, Abū Ja'far used to call him "Charcoal Face" (al-muḥammam).

According to 'Umar—'Isā—Ibrāhīm b. Ziyād b. 'Anbāsah: I never saw Muḥammad ascend the minbar, while I was in my usual place [nearby], without hearing rumbling beneath him.

According to 'Umar—'Abdallāh b. 'Umar b. Ḥabīb—one who was present when Muḥammad was preaching on the minbar: Phlegm in his throat got in his way, so he cleared his throat and it went away. Then the phlegm returned, so he cleared his throat and again it went away. Then it came back, so he cleared his throat once more. Again this happened. At this point he looked about without seeing any place in which to spit, so he expectorated toward the ceiling of the mosque and made it stick there.

According to 'Umar—'Abdallāh b. Nāfī—Ibrāhīm b. 'Āli, who was of the family of Abū Ṭālib: Muḥammad was a stutterer. I saw him on the minbar, stammering words [that were] in his breast. Then he would strike his chest with his hand to make the speech come forth.

According to 'Umar—'Isā—his father: One day 'Isā b. Mūsā entered Abū Ja'far's presence and said, "May God gladden you, Commander of the Faithful." "Why?" replied the caliph. "I have bought the frontage of the Dār 'Abdallāh b. Ja'far from..."
Mu'awiya's sons, Hasan, Yazid and Şalih.' He said, "And you are happy! Indeed, by God, they only sold it so they could take advantage of you with its price."

According to `Umar—Muhammad b. Yahya—`Abd al-`Aziz b. ʿImrân—Muhammad b. ʿAbd al-`Aziz—Abdallāh b. al-Rabī' b. ʿUbaydallāh b. Abdallāh b. Abū al-Madān: Muḥammad made his uprising in Medina after al-Manṣūr had traced the outlines of his city, Baghdad, with a reed. The caliph then went to al-Kūfah, and I accompanied him. He yelled at me to catch up with him but then was silent for a long time. Eventually he said, "Ibn al-Rabī', Muḥammad has come forth in open revolt." "Where?" I asked. "In Medina," he answered. "By God, he is destroyed," I exclaimed, "and will ruin [others]. He has revolted without sufficient forces and without [the support of] leading men. O Commander of the Faithful, come, I will tell you what Saʿīd b. ʿAmr b. Jaʿdhah al-Makhzūmī told me. Saʿīd said, 'On the day of [the battle of] the Zāb, I was standing with Marwân when he said, "O Saʿīd, who is that fellow leading the cavalry charge against me?" 'Abdallāh b. ʿAlī b. Abdallāh b. ʿAbbās,' I answered. He said, "Which of them is he? Point him out to me." "All right," I said, "he is a man of sallow complexion, with a handsome face and slender forearms, a man who entered your presence and heaped abuse upon ʿAbdallah b. Muʿawiya" when he was put to flight." Marwân said, "Indeed, I recognize him now. By God, I wish that ʿAlī b. Abī Ṭalib could fight me in his stead. ʿAlī and his descendants have no part in this affair. But this

---

780. See note 755.
782. Al-Zāb al-Akbar, a tributary of the Tigris, was the site of the decisive battle against Marwân b. Muḥammad, the last Umayyad caliph. El', s.v. (E. Honigmann); Tabari, III, 38–42.
783. ʿAbū Jaʿfar's uncle. For the account of his attempt to secure the oath of allegiance for himself, see under the year 137. His ʿAbbāsid prepotence is apparently here being favorably contrasted with the ʿAlid's.
784. ʿAbdallāh b. Muʿawiya b. ʿAbdallāh b. Jaʿfar b. Abī Ṭalib rebelled in al-Kūfah in 127/744, and, although unable to maintain power there, held areas of western Persia until 129/746–47. After retreating to Khurāsān, he was executed by Abū Muslim. The sect associated with him was known as al-Janābiyyah. El' s.v. (K. V. Zetterstéen) and s.v. al-Djanābīyya (M. G. S. Hodgson and M. Canard); Tabari, II, 1879–87, 1976–80; Shahristānī, Al-Milāla wa-al-nīhal, I, 150–52; Laoust, Schismes, 35–36.
785. For an account of this incident see Tabari, II, 1980–81.
is a man from the Banū Ḥāshim, descended from the Messenger of God's uncle and from Ibn 'Abbās. He carries the whiff of Syria and the backing of Syria. O Ibn Ja'dah, do you know what prompted me to settle the succession upon 'Abdallāh and 'Ubaydallāh, although he is older than 'Ubaydallāh?" I said, "No." He said, "I found the one most capable of handling this affair to be 'Abdallāh, and 'Ubaydallāh is more like 'Abd al-Malik. Therefore I settled the succession on 'Abdallāh [first]." Abū Ja'far then said, "I adjure you by God, did Ibn Ja'dah really tell you this?" "May the daughter of Sufyān b. Mu'āwiyyah be irrevocably divorced [from me]," I replied, "if he did not tell me what I have told you."

According to 'Umar—Muḥammad b. Yaḥyā—al-Ḥārith b. Išṣāq: During the night on which Muḥammad made his uprising, a man from the family of Uways b. Abī Sarḥ of the Banū 'Āmīr b. Lu'ayy went to Abū Ja'far. He made the journey from Medina in nine days, arriving at night. He stood at the gates of the city and shouted until his presence was announced and he was admitted. Al-Rabi' said to him, "What do you want at this hour, when the Commander of the Faithful is sleeping?" "I must...

786. 'Abdallāh b. Marwān b. Muḥammad and 'Ubaydallāh b. Marwān b. Muḥammad were sons of the last Umayyad caliph. The circumstances in which he had the bay'ah given to them as his successors are described in Tabari, II, 1895. 'Abdallāh successfully checked the Khārījī rebellion led by al-Dāḥīk b. Qays al-Shaybānī until his father arrived with sufficient forces to fight a conclusive battle. Although he escaped the pursuit of 'Abdallāh b. Alī, Abū Ja'far's uncle, he was eventually captured and remained in prison until his death during the caliphate of Hārūn al-Rashid. Tabari, II, 1938-40; El² s.v. Marwān II [G. R. Hawting]; Zirikli, A'lām, IV, 137.


788. See note 262.


791. D. H. Hill, "Camel and Horse," 34, estimates that a courier could cover about 100 miles in a day and about 400 miles in a week. As the distance from Medina to al-Kūfah is roughly double the latter figure, the courier obviously made very good time.
The Events of the Year 145

see him," the man replied. Al-Rabi` said, "Give your information to us, and we will inform him." The man refused, however, so al-Rabi` entered the caliph’s presence and apprised him of the situation. Abū Ja`far said, "Ask him what he wants and then tell me." To this al-Rabi` replied, "The man has insisted on speaking to you directly." The caliph thus gave permission for the man to enter his presence, whereupon he announced, "Commander of the Faithful, Muḥammad b. ‘Abdallāh has come out in open revolt in Medina." Abū Ja`far replied, "You have killed him, by God, if you are speaking the truth. Tell me who has taken his side." The man gave him the names of those of the leading citizens of Medina and of the people of Muhammad’s family who had revolted with him. Abū Ja`far then asked, "Have you seen him and looked at him with your own eyes?" "I have seen him," the man replied, "and I have looked at him with my own eyes and spoken to him while he was sitting on the Messenger of God’s minbar." Abū Ja`far had him taken to a room. In the morning a messenger of Sa`id b. Dinār, 'Īsā b. Mūsā’s slave who was in charge of 'Īsā’s properties in Medina, came to Abū Ja`far. He told him about the Muhammad affair, and [other] reports of it came to the caliph in constant succession. Abū Ja`far sent the Uwaysi away, saying, "I will have men following right behind you and I will enrich you." The caliph ordered for him the sum of 9,000 dirhams,792,000 for each night he traveled.

According to `Umar—Ibn Abī Ḥarb: When news of Muḥammad’s uprising reached Abū Ja`far, he was apprehensive about it, and al-Ḥārith, the astrologer,793 began to say to him, "Commander of the Faithful, why are you concerned about him? By God, were he to rule the earth, he would last for ninety days."

According to `Umar—Sahl b. ‘Aqil b. Iṣmā`īl794—his father: When the report of Muḥammad’s uprising reached Abū Ja`far, he left immediately for al-Kūfah, saying, "I am Abū Ja`far, I have lured the fox from his lair."
Abbasid Authority Affirmed

According to `Umar—'Abd al-Malik b. Sulaymān—Ḥabīb b. Marzūq—Tasnim b. al-Ḥawārī. When Muḥammad and Ibrāhīm, the two sons of 'Abdallāh, made their uprising, Abū Jaʿfar sent word to 'Abdallāh b. 'Aṭīa, who was in his custody, saying, “This man has now come out in revolt. If you have a thought on the matter, let us know.” Now 'Abdallāh b. 'Aṭīa did have an opinion about them, but he replied, “A restricted man has restricted judgment; let me out so that my opinion can emerge freely.” Abū Jaʿfar, however, sent word to him, “Were Muḥammad to come knocking at my door, I would still not let you out. I am kinder to you than he, even though he were the head of your family.” At this 'Abdallāh sent word back to Abū Jaʿfar, “Leave immediately for al-Kūfah and press them hard, for they are partisans (shiʿah) of the family of this [Muḥammad’s] house and their helpers. Surround al-Kūfah with strongpoints and behead whoever leaves it in any direction or comes to it from any direction. Additionally, send for Salm b. Qutaybah (who was in al-Rayy) to come down to you. Write to the people of Syria and order them to convey to you as many men of strength and courage as the postal service [i.e., relay horses] can carry. Reward these people well and dispatch them together with Salm.” The caliph did what 'Abdallāh b. 'Aṭīa suggested.

According to 'Umar—al-'Abbās b. Suflān b. Yaḥyā b. Ziyād: I heard our old men say that Muḥammad made his uprising during the period when 'Abdallāh b. 'Aṭīa was in detention. Abū Jaʿfar said to his brothers, “This fool still has some excellent ideas about warfare. Go see him and seek his advice, but don’t tell him that I commanded you to do so.” So the brothers went off to visit...
‘Abdallāh, and when he saw them, ‘Abdallāh asked, “Why have you come? What brings all of you now when you’ve stayed away from me for such a long time?” They replied, “We asked permission of the Commander of the Faithful, and he gave it to us.” ‘Abdallāh said, “This signifies nothing. What’s going on?” “‘Abdallāh [b. Ḥasan’s] son has come out in open revolt,” they said. ‘Abdallāh asked, “What do you think Ibn Sallāmah799 [meaning Abū Ja’far] is going to do?” They replied, “By God, we don’t know.” At this ‘Abdallāh exclaimed, “Indeed stinginess has already killed him.”800 Order him to get out money and pay the troops. If he is victorious, his money will soon come back to him. But if he’s vanquished, his opponent will not get his hands on a single dirham.”

According to ‘Umar—‘Abd al-Malik b. Shaybān801—Zayd, the mawłā of Misma‘ b. ‘Abd al-Malik: When Muḥammad made his uprising, Abū Ja’far summoned Ṭūsā b. Mūsā and said to him, “Muḥammad has risen in revolt; head out against him.” Ṭūsā responded, “Commander of the Faithful, these uncles of yours are all around you. Call for them and take counsel with them.” The caliph replied, “What about the words of Ibn Harmah?”

You are looking at a man who does not show people his secret, and does not whisper in their ears about what he is trying to do.

When he comes to something [daunting], he walks past with an air of scorn.

And if he says that he will do something, then he does so.

According to ‘Umar—Muḥammad b. Yahyā: I transcribed these letters from Muḥammad b. Bashīr, who testified to their authenticity. Abū ‘Abd al-Raḥmān,802 an Iraqi scribe, and al-Ḥakam b. Ṣadaqah b. Nizār related them to me. I also heard Ibn Abi Ḥarb declare them authentic. He had a version that when Muḥam-

799. The name of al-Manṣūr’s mother, a Berber slave woman, was Sallāmah. El2, s.v. al-Manṣūr [H. Kennedy], Balādhurī, Ansāb al-ashrāf, III, 114.
800. His stinginess is said to have earned Abū Ja’far the nickname Abū Dawānīq, the dānīq (pl. dawānīq or dawānnīq) being a small coin of little value. Ṭabārī includes a number of stories about the caliph’s parsimonious nature in the accounts with which he concludes his section on al-Manṣūr’s reign.
Abū Jaʿfar, Abū Ayyūb had said, "Let me respond to him on this." Abū Jaʿfar refused sharply, saying "I will answer him. Since our quarrel is about the comparative nobility of our lineages, leave him to me."\footnote{See also Jahshiyārī, Wuzarāʿ, 115.}

When news of Muḥammad b. ʿAbdallāh's uprising in Medina reached Abū Jaʿfar al-Manṣūr, the caliph wrote to Muḥammad.\footnote{See also Azdī, Taʾrīkh al-Mawṣil, 182–87; Ibn al-Athīr, Kāmil, V, 536–42; Ibn Kathīr, Bidāyah, X, 84–86; Two modern biographies of al-Manṣūr provide paraphrases of these letters: Jumard, Abū Jaʿfar al-Manṣūr, 186 [extracts]; Rustum, Abū Jaʿfar al-Manṣūr, 56–60.}

In the name of God, the Merciful, the Compassionate:
From the servant of God, ʿAbdallāh, the Commander of the Faithful, to Muḥammad b. ʿAbdallāh: "The recompense for those who war against God and His Messenger and on the earth strive for iniquity is that they will be slaughtered or crucified or their hands and feet on alternate sides shall be severed or they shall be exiled from the land.\footnote{This Qur'ānic citation is repeated in one version of al-Manṣūr's testament to his son al-Mahdī. Ṭabarī, III, 447; A. Dietrich, "Politische Testament."} That is their disgrace in the world, while in the Hereafter theirs will be a severe punishment, except for those who repent before you overpower them. Know that God is forgiving, merciful."\footnote{Qurʾān 5:33–34. For the 'Abbāsid use of Qurʾānic citation, see Zaman, "Considerations."} I am obligated to you by God's compact and His covenant, His promise of protection and that of His Messenger, so that if you repent and turn back before I overpower you, I will grant immunity to you, to all your sons, your brothers, and your family and whoever follows you, for your lives and for your worldly goods. I will also overlook the blood you have shed and the goods you have obtained. Further, I will give you 1,000,000 dirhams and anything else you request. I will let you settle anywhere in the country that you wish and will release those of your family who are in my custody. I will grant immunity to all who came to your side, gave you the oath of allegiance, followed you, or had anything to do with your affair. Moreover, I will never pursue
a single one of them for anything he has done. If you wish to make a completely secure agreement for yourself, then send to me whomever you wish to receive on your behalf such guarantee of safe-conduct, contract, and covenant as you would trust.

At the heading he had written “From the servant of God, ‘Abdallāh, the Commander of the Faithful, to Muḥammad b. ‘Abdallāh.”

Muḥammad b. ‘Abdallāh wrote to Abū Jaʿfar:

In the name of God, the Merciful, the Compassionate:
From the servant of God, the Mahdi, Muḥammad b. ‘Abdallāh, to ‘Abdallāh b. Muḥammad: ‘Ṭā’, Sin, Mīm. These are the verses of the book that makes clear. We recite to you from the story of Moses and Pharaoh with truth for a people who believe. Pharaoh was exalted in the land and made of its people factions, oppressing a group of them by slaughtering their sons but sparing their women. Truly he was one of those who commits iniquity. We wanted to act graciously toward those who on the earth were oppressed, to make them leaders and to make them inheritors. And to make them strong in the earth and to show Pharaoh and Hāmān and their armies that against which they were on guard.i807 To you I extend a grant of immunity like the one that you extended to me, because the right to do so belongs to us. You have laid claim to this office only through us. You made your uprising to acquire it through our support and attained it only thanks to us. Our paternal ancestor, ‘Alī, was the wa$! and the imām, so how could you have inherited his wilāyah when his own descendants are still alive.808 Further you well know that no one has laid claim to this office who has a lineage, nobility, and status like ours. By the nobility of our fathers, we are not the sons of the accursed, the out-

---

807. Qurʾān 28:1–6. Reference to Pharaoh as a secular tyrant was a standard feature of anti-Umayyad polemic.
808. In classical Shiʿi thought the religio-political authority (wilāyah) of the leader or guide (imām) of the community is secured through designation of one who stands in hereditary succession from the original agent (waṣī).
Abbasid Authority Affirmed

casts, and the freedmen! No one from the Banū Hāshim has the sort of bonds we can draw upon through kinship, precedence, and superiority. We are the descendants of the [fore]mother of God's Messenger, Fātimah bt. 'Amr, in the Jāhiliyyah and descendants of his daughter Fātimah in Islām. You can make no such claim! Truly God has elected us and has chosen in our favor. Our forefather is one of the prophets, Muḥammad. One of our ancestors, 'Alī, was the first to become a Muslim. Of the spouses among us is the most virtuous, Khadijah the Chaste, the first to pray facing the qiblah. The best of daughters is Fatimah, mistress of the women who dwell in the Garden. Among those born into Islam are Ḥasan and Ḥusayn, lords of the young men who dwell in the Garden. Hāshim is the forefather of 'Alī twice over, as is 'Abd al-Muṭṭalib of Ḥasan. Twice is God's Messenger my forefather, through Hasan and through Ḥusayn. I am at the very center of the Banū Hāshim's kinship lines. My paternity is purest among them, undiluted with non-Arab blood, and no concubines dispute for me [in precedence]. In both the Jāhiliyyah and Islam, God has never stopped electing for me fathers and mothers, even

809. For a consideration of these epithets, lu'ānā', ṭuradā', and ṭulaqā', see Traini, "La Corrispondenza," 778 n. 28.
810. Fātimah bt. 'Amr was the Prophet's grandmother as wife of 'Abd al-Muṭṭalib b. Hāshim.
811. The pre-Islamic period.
812. Tabari, Addenda et Emendanda, p. DCXXXVII, for references to early sources with waladanā.
813. Ibn al-Athir, Kāmil, V, 537, adds "and the most excellent of them."
814. Hāshim b. 'Abd Manāf was the great-grandfather of 'Alī b. Abī Tālib, while his mother was Fātimah bt. Asad b. Hāshim. El² s.v. Hāshim b. 'Abd Manāf [W. Montgomery Watt]; El¹, s.v. 'Ali b. Abī Ṭalīb [C. Huart].
815. Muḥammad Abū al-Fadl ʿIbrāhīm, editor of the Cairo edition, VII, 567, evidently understands this to mean that Hāshim was the progenitor of two 'Alīs whom he identifies as 'Alī b. Abī Ṭalīb and 'Alī Zayn al-ʿAbīdīn.
816. 'Abd al-Muṭṭalib was the grandfather of Ḥasan b. 'Alī's father and the great-grandfather of his mother Fātimah.
817. ʿIbrāhīm's edition, VII, 568 n. 1, notes that this is an allusion to Abū Jaʿfar's mother, Sallāmāh, who was a Berber concubine. In replying to this charge, the caliph's response records it as lam talidka al-ʿajamu wa-lam tuʿarriq ʾīka ummahātu al-awlād. Tabari, III, 112.
choosing for me in the Fire.\textsuperscript{818} I am descended from the person of highest rank in the Garden and the one with the lightest punishment\textsuperscript{819} in the Fire.\textsuperscript{820} I am descended from the best of the good and the best of the bad, the best of the people of the Garden and the best of the people of the Fire. I am obligated\textsuperscript{821} to you by God, so that if you become obedient to me and respond to my call, I will grant immunity for your life and your possessions and for everything that you have done except in contravention of one of God’s mandated punishments\textsuperscript{822} or a legitimate claim by a Muslim or by someone who has executed a valid contract. You know well what your obligations are. I am more entitled to the office than you are, as well as more faithful to a covenant. You, however, have given me the kind of covenant and grant of immunity that you have given to other men before me. But what kind of assurances are these you give me? The grant of immunity given to Ibn Hubayrah,\textsuperscript{823} or that given to your uncle, ‘Abdallāh b. ‘Ali, or that given to Abū Muslim\textsuperscript{824}

Abū Ja‘far wrote to him:

In the name of God, the Merciful, the Compassionate:

Your statement has now reached me, and I have read your letter. My, how you pride yourself on kinship through

\textsuperscript{818} \textit{Fi al-nār}. Ibn al-Athīr, Kāmil, V, 537, reads \textit{fi al-ashrār}, i.e., “among the wicked.”

\textsuperscript{819} \textit{Wā-ībn} ahwanīhim ‘adhāban. Ṭabarī, Addenda et Emendanda, p. DCCXXXVII.

\textsuperscript{820} This could be Abū Tālib, the Prophet’s grandfather, or his father ‘Abdallāh. Abū Ja‘far’s response, however, explicitly mentions the latter.

\textsuperscript{821} See Abū Ja‘far’s parallel pledge on pp. 166–67.

\textsuperscript{822} \textit{Haddan min ūdādi allāh}. Qur’ānic reference to these “limits” may be found at 2:187, 229, 230; 4:13, 14; 9:97, 112; 58:4; 65:1.

\textsuperscript{823} Abū Khālid Yazīd b. ‘Umar (see note 321) was governor of Iraq for the last Umayyad caliph, Marwān b. Muḥammad, and eponym of the settlement on the Euphrates, Qaṣr b. Hubayra. The episode of the āmān that was granted to him by al-Saffāḥ through the agency of Abū Ja‘far but then nullified, as detailed in Ṭabarī, III, 66–71. Dhahabī, Siyar, VI, 207–8; Ziriklī, A’lām, VIII, 185; Baladhūrī, Futūḥ, 287; ELZ s.v. Kaṣr Ibn Hubayra (J. Lassner); Elad, “Siege of al-Wāṣīt,” 59–90.

\textsuperscript{824} The account of Abū Ja‘far’s treacherous dealings with Abū Muslim is given in year 137. See also Mottahedeh, \textit{Loyalty and Leadership}, 65.
women, as to delude the uncouth and the rabble! But God did not make women equal [in such matters] to uncles and fathers or [even] to paternal relations and guardians.825 God gave the uncle status equal to a father,826 giving him [legal] precedence in His book over the less significant mother. Had God chosen these women according to their degree of kinship, Āminah827 would be the closest womb relation, the greatest claim, and, one day, would have been the first to enter the Garden. God's choice of his creatures, however, is based on His knowing what will proceed from them and on His selecting the best of them. As for what you have to say about Abū Tālib's mother, Fātimah,828 and her maternity, the fact is that God did not bless with Islam any of her offspring, not a single daughter or son. Had anyone been blessed with Islam through kinship, it would have been ‘Abdal-lah,829 who most deserves every good in this world and the Hereafter. Yet God's way is to choose for His religion whomever He wills, as when He said, "You do not guide whom you like, rather God guides whom He wills. He best knows those who are rightly guided."830 God, in fact, sent Muhammad, who had four uncles,831 sending down on him the revelation, "Admonish your nearest relatives."832 Muḥammad admonished them and summoned them [to Islam]. Two of them responded,833 one of whom was my forefather. Two of them re-

825. On this argument, see Sourdel, "Appels et programmes," 121.
826. Li'anna allāha jd'ala al-'amma aban. Further to this central argument for 'Abbasid hegemony, see Bosworth, "Al-Maqrizi's Epistle," 43.
827. Āminah bt. Wahb b. 'Abd Manāf was the mother of Muḥammad. Elf, s.v. (W. Montgomery Watt).
828. See note 810.
829. 'Abdallāh b. 'Abd al-Muṭṭalib, the father of the Prophet. Elf, s.v. (W. Montgomery Watt).
830. Qur'ān 28:56.
833. Hamzah and al-'Abbās. Their respective conversions are related in Guillaume, Life of Muḥammad, 131–32, 546 = Ibn Istāq, Sīrah 184–85, 811.
fused, one of whom was your forefather. So God severed Muḥammad’s line of [spiritual] inheritance (wilāyah) from these two, placing between them and Muḥammad neither pact nor protection nor inheritance. You claim that you are the descendant of the persons with the lightest punishment in the Fire, descendant of the best of the bad. But in ingratitude to God there is no [such thing as a] small degree, nor is there lightness or triviality in God’s punishment. There is no élite in evil. It is not fitting for a believer who believes in God to take pride in the Fire. But you shall go, and you shall find out: “Those who do evil shall come to know by what kind of reversal they will be overturned.”835 As to your boast about Fāṭimah, the [grand]mother of ‘Ali, and that Ḥāshim is his paternal ancestor on two counts and that Fāṭimah is the mother of Ḥasan, and that ‘Abd al-Muṭṭalib is his paternal ancestor twice over, and further, that the Prophet is your paternal ancestor on two counts: The fact is that God’s Messenger is the best of those of the beginning and the end, and to him Ḥāshim has only one lineage connection, as does ‘Abd al-Muṭṭalib. You claim to be at the very center of Banū Ḥāshim lineage, their purest both maternally and paternally, unbegotten by foreigners, your bloodlines undiluted by concubines. Apparently, you hold yourself superior to the Banū Ḥāshim, one and all. But look—woe upon you—where you will be with God tomorrow! Truly, you have gone beyond all bounds. You even hold yourself superior to one who was better than you in his essence (nafs) and his lineage, in the beginning and in the end, i.e., Ibrāhīm,836 son of the Messenger of God, and [see yourself] superior, therefore, to the father who begot him! In particular, the best of your forefather’s sons and the most excellent people among them are nothing but con-

835. Qurʾān 26:227.
836. Ibrāhīm was the Prophet’s son by his Coptic wife Māriyah. EP, s.v. Māriya (F. Buhl).
cubines' sons. After the death of God's Messenger there was no one born among you who was more excellent than 'Ali b. Ḥusayn,\(^{837}\) yet he was the son of a concubine. He was certainly better than your grandfather, Hasan b. Hasan. After 'Ali there was no one among you to equal his son, Muhammad b. 'Ali,\(^{838}\) yet his grandmother was a concubine. He was certainly better than your father. Further, there is no one the equal of his son, Ja'far,\(^{839}\) yet his grandmother was a concubine. He is certainly better than you. Whereas you say that you are the descendant of God's Messenger, God in His book says, "Muḥammad was not the father of anyone among your men."\(^{840}\) You are the descendants of his daughter, which is a close kinship. But it does not legitimate inheritance,\(^{841}\) nor does it bequeath the wilāyah, neither does it confer the imāmah on her. So how could it be inherited from her? Your forefather sought her [in marriage] by every means. Then although he brought her forth during the day, he treated her rudely in private and buried her at night.\(^{842}\) The people, however, insisted that the two shaykhās\(^{843}\) be given their preeminence. Further, the tradition, with no disagreement among Muslims, has come down that the grandfather, i.e., the mother's father, and the maternal uncle and aunt do not inherit.\(^{844}\) You boast about 'Ali and his precedence,\(^{845}\) yet when the Messenger of God was dying,

---

837. Zayn al-‘Abidin, the fourth imām, whose mother is said to have been a daughter of Yazdigird, the last Sasanid king. Her name is given us Sulāfah. Ṭabarī, III, 2331; Ibn Khallīkān, Wafayāt, III, 267; Dḥāḥābī, Sīyar, IV, 386.

838. Abū Ja'far Muḥammad b. ‘Ali [d. 114/732], known as Muḥammad al-Bāqir, was the grandson of Husayn b. ‘Ali and acknowledged as the fifth imām of the Ithnā ‘asharī line. EI', s.v. Muḥammad b. ‘Ali (F. Buhl).

839. Ja'far al-Sādiq. See note 600, above.


841. Ibn al-Athīr, Kāmil, V, 539: lá yajuzu lahā al-mīrāth. Ṭabarī, Addenda et Emendanda, p. DCCXXXVII.


843. I.e., Abū Bakr and 'Umar.

844. For Muslim laws of succession and the division of inheritances, (fara'id), see Schacht, Islamic Law, 169–74.

845. I.e., his record of early commitment of Islam.
he commanded someone else to perform the ritual prayer. Subsequently, the people took one man after another [as caliph] without taking ‘Ali. He was among the six, but all of them passed over him, as a way of keeping him from it [succession to the caliphate]. They did not judge that he had a claim to it. ‘Abd al-Rahmān preferred ‘Uthmān to ‘Ali. When ‘Uthmān was killed, ‘Ali was suspected of it. Taḥlah and al-Zubayr fought him, while Sa‘d refused to give him the oath of allegiance and even shut his door to him. Sa‘d then gave the oath of allegiance to Mu‘āwiyah after his death. ‘Ali sought the caliphate in every way and fought for it. But his associates split off from him, and his partisans had misgivings about him [even] before the arbitration. Then ‘Ali decided upon two arbitrators with whom he was satisfied, giving them his pledge and his covenant. But these two decided to depose him. Then there was Hasan, who sold his claim to Mu‘āwiyah for a few gaudy robes and some cash and took himself off to the Hijāz. He submitted his faction to the hand of Mu‘āwiyah, handing affairs over to those who were not worthy of them [i.e., the Umayyads] and taking money from those who had no right [legally or spiritu-
ally] to it [in the first place]. If you have anything to do with it, you too will sell it and take its price. Further, your uncle Ḥusayn b. ‘Ali rebated against Ibn Marjānah. But the people fought with Ibn Marjānah against Ḥusayn b. ‘Ali until they had killed him and brought his head to Ibn Marjānah. Then you rebelled against the Umayyads, but they massacred you, crucified you on palm trunks, burned you in fires, and expelled you from the lands, so that Yahyā b. Zayd was slain in Khurāsān. The Umayyads killed your men and took the children and women captive, transporting them to Syria in uncushioned litters like enslaved prisoners of war. Consequently, we went forth against them, seeking to avenge you and to attain your blood retaliation. We made you heirs to their territory and their homes. We even raised the reputation of your ancestor and gave him a place of preeminence. You, however, now make use of that against us as proof. You also suggest [falsey] that we made mention of your forefather and gave precedence to him only so that we could set him ahead of Ḥamzah, al-‘Abbās, and Jaʿfar. But it is not as you suppose. In fact, these men left the earth unblemished, [their reputa-

854. Min ghayra wuldtihi. Ṭabari, Addenda et Emendanda, p. DCCXXXVII.
855. Al-Ḥusayn b. ‘Ali was the grandson of the prophet Muhammad and the third Shiʿi imām, whose challenge to the accession of Yazid b. Muʿāwiyah as caliph concluded in the massacre at Karbalāʾ on 10 Muḥarram 61/680. EI², s.v. (L. Veccia Vaglieri).
856. ʿUbay dallāḥ b. Ziyād b. ʿAbī Sufyān or b. ʿAbihi was the Umayyad governor of al-Ḳūfah charged with thwarting Ḥusayn b. ‘Ali’s claim to the caliphate. He himself was killed six years after the battle of Karbalaʾ by ʿIbrāhīm b. al-Ashtar in an engagement fought at al-Jāzir on 10 Muḥarram 67/686. EI¹, s.v. [K. V. Zetterstéen].
857. Yahyā b. Zayd was the grandson of ‘Alī b. al-Ḥusayn Zayn al-ʿĀbidin and an imām for the Zaydis. He was killed in battle against a force sent by the governor of Khurāsān, Naṣr b. Sayyār. EI¹, s.v. [C. Van Arendonk].
859. Both were sons of ʿAbd al-Muṭṭalib and thus among the paternal uncles of the Prophet. The former became the subject of a famous Persian romance. EI³, s.v. Ḥamza b. ʿAbd al-Muṭṭalib [G. M. Meredith-Owens].
860. Jaʿfar b. ʿAbī Ṭalib was a cousin of Muḥammad and an older brother of ʿAli. He is especially remembered for his skillful intervention with the Najāshī during the early Muslim emigration to Abyssinia. EI², s.v. [L. Veccia Vaglieri].
The Events of the Year 145

... accepted, their virtue agreed upon. Your forefather, however, was afflicted with fighting and war; the Umayyads used to curse him as the unbelievers are cursed in the prescribed prayer. But we argued in support of him and reminded them of his excellence. We have rebuked them and charged them with injustice for the way they defamed him. You know quite well that in the Jāhiliyyah our claim to honor rested on the task of supplying water for the great mass of pilgrims and holding custody of the [well of] Zamzam. This responsibility devolved upon al-ʿAbbās from among his brothers. Your forefather contested it with us, but ʿUmar judged in our favor against him. We have continued to discharge this responsibility in both the Jāhiliyyah and Islam. When the people of Medina were suffering a drought, ʿUmar made entreaties to his Lord and sought His favor only through our forefather, with the consequence that God revived the people and gave them abundant rain to drink. Your forefather was on the spot, but ʿUmar made no entreaties through him. You know very well that not one of ʿAbd al-Muṭṭalib’s sons outlived the Prophet but al-ʿAbbās, who, from among the Prophet’s uncles, was his heir. More than one of the Banū Hāshim has sought this office, but only al-ʿAbbās’s descendants attained it. The water-supplying belonged to him, as his inheritance from the Prophet, and the caliphate lies with his progeny. There remains no eminence and excellence in the Jāhiliyyah or in Islam, in this world or in the Hereafter, that al-ʿAbbās does not inherit and bequeath. As for your remarks about Badr, it should be said that [the era] of Islam having ar-

862. A well within the precincts of the Great Mosque of Mecca, which Muslim tradition attributes to the angel Gabriel’s intervention on behalf of Hājar and her son Iṣmāʿīl. El, s.v. (B. Carra de Vaux), Watt, Muhammad at Mecca, 8–9.
863. Ṣalāt al-istīsqa is the technical designation applied to supplication for rain in periods of great drought. T. Fahd, El2, s.v. Iṣṭīsqa, mentions the occasion on which ʿUmar led the istīsqa prayer by holding the hand of al-ʿAbbās. See also the account in Ṭabārī, I, 2574–75.
864. Al-ʿAbbās lived until 32/652–53.
``Abbasid Authority Affirmed

rived, al-`Abbas supplied Abū Ṭālib and his family with provisions and lavished money on them when disaster befell. Were it not for al-`Abbas’s being sent forth to Badr reluctantly, Ṭālib and `Aqīl would have died starving and licking the bowls of `Utbah and Shaybah. He was one of those who give sustenance to others [muṭ`imin]. He thus took from you shame and disgrace and gave you instead a sufficiency of support and provisions. Moreover, he even ransomed `Aqīl on the day of Badr, so how can you hold yourself superior to us when we have sustained you in [the time of] unbelief and ransomed you from captivity? We have far outreached you with our forefathers’ noble deeds. We, not you, are heirs to the Seal of the Prophets. We sought to avenge you and secured what you were incapable of obtaining for yourselves. May the peace and compassion of God be upon you!

According to `Umar b. Shabbah—Muḥammad b. Yaḥyā—al-Hārith b. Ishāq: Ibn al-Qasri decided to betray Muḥammad, so he said to him, "Commander of the Faithful, send Mūsā b. ‘Abdallāh together with Rizām, my mawlu, to Syria that they

865. References to al-`Abbas b. `Abd al-Muṭṭalib’s alleged early, but concealed, conversion to Islam, and to his allegedly forced participation with the Qurashi contingent at Badr may be found in Ṭabarī, I, 1324, 1339, 1344. See also Guillaume, Life of Muḥammad, 320 = Ibn Ishāq, Sirāḥ, 475, where al-`Abbas leads the list of those Quraysh who assisted the combatants at Badr.

866. Ṭālib and `Aqīl were the Prophet’s cousins, sons of the latter’s uncle and protector Abū Ṭālib b. `Abd al-Muṭṭalib. According to Ṭabarī, Ṭālib returned to Mecca before the engagement at Badr, while `Aqīl and Nawfal b. al-Hārith were the two nephews ransomed by al-`Abbas. Ṭabarī, I, 1308, 1344–45; Guillaume, Life of Muḥammad, 338 = Ibn Ishāq, Sirāḥ, 513; ElF, s.v. ‘Akīl b. Abī Ṭālib (L. Vecchia Vaglietti).

867. `Utbah b. Rabī’ah and Shaybah b. Rabī’ah of the clan of ‘Abd Shamāl were among the leading Meccans killed at Badr. Guillaume, Life of Muḥammad, 337 = Ibn Ishāq, Sirāḥ, 507; Ṭabarī, I, 1332–34, 1338.

868. For a list of the Meccan muṭ`imin, see Guillaume, Life of Muḥammad, 320–31.

869. For a discussion of the Qur’ānic basis of caliphal authority that draws largely upon the sources used in Ṭabarī’s tafsīr, see Qāḍī, "The Term ‘Khalīfa,’ "

870. Van Arendonk, Débuts, 53 = Opkomst, 48, notes a perhaps apocryphal reply by Muḥammad to his letter, which is conserved in a Leiden manuscript of the Kitāb al-ʾMasāḥib by Abū al-`Abbas al-Hasani.

may summon people to your cause." Muḥammad sent the two of
them, and Rizām left with Mūsā for Syria. Muḥammad found
out, however, that al-Qasrī had written to Abū Jaʿfar about his af-
fair, so he imprisoned him, along with a group who sided with
him, in the Dār Ibn Hishām, which lay south of the oratory used
for funeral processions, which today belongs to Faraj the Eunuch.
In the meantime, Rizām brought Mūsā to Syria and then slipped
away from him and went on to Abū Jaʿfar. Mūsā wrote to Muḥammad, "I am reporting to you that I have now encountered
Syria and its people. The mildest statement was that of one who
said, 'By God, we've become so fed up with misfortune and so
weary of it that there can be no place for us [Syrians] in this affair.
We have no need of it.' Among them is a group who swear that 'if
we awake from tonight or reach evening tomorrow, that will im-
prove our lot greatly and be a very good omen for us.' I have writ-
ten to you even though I've had to hide my face and been in fear
of my life."

According to al-Ḥārith: It is said that Mūsā, Rizām, and
ʿAbdallāh b. Jaʿfar b. ʿAbd al-Rahmān b. al-Miswar872 headed off
for Syria at the head of a cohort. When they got to Taymā',873
Rizām stayed behind in order to buy provisions for them. He then
rode on to Iraq while Mūsā and his confederates went back to
 Medina.

According to ʿUmar-ʿĪsā: Mūsā b. ʿAbdallāh informed me in
Baghdad—Rizām being present as well—as follows: "Muḥammad
sent Rizām and me to Syria in command of the men who accom-
panied us so that we could summon people to his cause. We were
in Dawmat al-Jandal874 when a massive heat wave hit us. We
therefore got down from our riding animals and bathed in a pool.
Rizām unsheathed his sword and then stood behind me, crying,
"O Mūsā, do you think that if I were to behead you and then take
your head to Abū Jaʿfar that anyone would stand as well with him

---

872. See note 743.
873. Taymā’ was an oasis city in the northwestern section of the Arabian pen-
insula that lies between Wādī al-Quṣārā and Syria. Et1, s.v. Taima’ (F. Buhl); Cornu,
Répertoires, 93; Yāqūt, Buldān, II, 67.
874. Dawmat al-Jandal, or Dūmat al-Jandal, was a North Arabian oasis on the
road from Medina to Damascus, about fifteen days’ march from the former. Et2 s.v.
Dūmat al-Djandal (L. Veccia Vaglieri); Cornu, Répertoires, 91; Yāqūt, Buldān, II,
487–89; Crone, Meccan Trade, 151.
as I?” I said, “You never stop fooling around, Abū Qays. Now sheathe your sword and may God forgive you.” He sheathed his sword and we mounted.

According to ʿĪsā: Mūsā turned back before reaching Syria. ʿUthmān b. Mūhammad and he went to al- Başrāh, where they were pointed out and detained.

According to ʿUmar—ʿAbdallāh b. Nāfīʾ b. Thābit b. ʿAbdallāh b. al-Zubayr—his brother, ʿAbdallāh b. Nāfīʾ the Elder: When Mūhammad made his uprising, my father, Nāfīʾ b. Thābit, did not come to him. Mūhammad thus sent for him, and my father went to him while he was in the Dār Marwān. “O Abū ʿAbdallāh,” Mūhammad said, “I did not see you coming to us.” Nāfīʾ b. Thābit replied, “I simply have no sympathy for what you intend to do.” Mūhammad kept on at him, insisting, “At least wear your arms so that others will follow your example.” “O fellow,” exclaimed Ibn Nāfīʾ, “By God, I judge you’re on a bad bet: You have made an uprising in a region in which there is no money or troops or mounts or weapons. But I’m not going to destroy myself with you or help [others] to shed my blood.” “Go away,” said Mūhammad. “After this you will count for nothing.” Nāfīʾ continued to reside there, however, frequenting the mosque until Mūhammad was killed. In fact, Nāfīʾ alone prayed in the mosque of God’s Messenger on the day Mūhammad was killed.

At the time of his uprising Mūhammad b. ʿAbdallāh sent—ʿUmar reported on the authority of Azhār b. Saʿīd b. Nāfīʾ—al-Ḥasan b. Muʿāwiyah to Mekka as its governor. With al-Ḥasan was al-ʿAbbās b. al-Qāsim, a member of Abū Lahab’s877 family. Al-Sārī b. ʿAbdallāh [Abū Jaʿfar’s governor of Mekka] did not become aware of their presence until they were near to Mekka. He went out to them, and his mawla said to him, “What do you

---

876. Nāfīʾ b. Thābit b. ʿAbdallāh b. al-Zubayr, grandson of the man who rebelled against the Umayyads in Mekka and was defeated in 72/692 by al-Ḥajjāj b. Yūsuf after a six-month siege. EI2, s.v. ʿAbdallāh b. Zubayr (H. A. R. Gibb).
877. Abū Lahab ʿAbd al-ʿUzzah, a paternal uncle of Mūhammad, withdrew clan protection from the Prophet after the death of Abū Ṭālīb. For this he was excoriated in the Qurʾān, in sūrat al-Masad [111], which draws one of its other titles from his sobriquet of Abū Lahab, meaning “Father of the Flame.” EI2, s.v. (W. Montgomery Watt).
think we should do now that we’ve come so close to them?”
“Flee, all of you, with God’s blessing,” said al-Sari, “and meet me at Bi`r Maymūn.”
They did so, and al-Ḥasan b. Mu`āwiyyah entered Mecca. Al-Ḥusayn b. Ṣakhir, a member of the Uways family, left the same night and reached Abū Ja`far in nine days. He reported to the caliph, who said, “The Qārah are fair to those who shoot at them.” Then he rewarded him with 300 dirhams.

According to `Umar—Ayyūb b. ʿUmar—Muḥammad b. Ṣāliḥ b. Mu`āwiyyah—his father: I was with Muḥammad at the time when he gave al-Ḥasan b. Mu`āwiyyah charge of Mecca. Al-Ḥasan asked him, “Do you think there will be heavy fighting between us and the people in Mecca? What are your thoughts about al-Sari?” “O al-Ḥasan,” Muḥammad said, “al-Sari has always shunned what we find hateful, loathing what Abū Ja`far has done. If you are victorious over him, then don’t kill him or upset his people or seize his possessions. If he gets away from you, don’t try to track him down.”

`Umar continued: Al-Ḥasan said to Muḥammad, “O Commander of the Faithful, I never thought you’d say such things about someone from the family of al-ʿAbbās.” Muḥammad replied, “But I do. Al-Sari has always been angry at what Abū Ja`far did.”

According to `Umar—Umar b. Rāshid, the mawlā of the ʿAnj: I was in Mecca, and at the time when he made his uprising, Muḥammad dispatched to us al-Ḥasan b. Mu`āwiyyah, al-Qāsim b. Ḥishāq, and Muḥammad b. ʿAbdallāh b. ʿAnbasah, who was called “Abū Ja`brāh.” Al-Ḥasan b. Mu`āwiyyah was in command of them. Against them al-Sāri b. ʿAbdallāh sent his secretary, Miskin b. Hilāl, at the head of 1000, a mawlā of his, Miskin b. Nāfi`, commanding another 1000, and a man from Mecca called Ibn Faras (who was renowned for his bravery), leading yet another 700. Al-Sārī gave Ibn Faras 500 dinārs. The opposing forces met at Baṭn
Adhāhir, which is located between two passes. One was the pass that leads down to Dhū Ṭuwā and over which the prophet Muhammad and his Companions came down to Mecca. Therefore it is an entry into the sacred territory. The two groups sent messages to each other. Hasan sent word to al-Sari, saying, “Quit the area between us and Mecca. Do not spill blood in God’s sacred territory.” The two messengers swore to al-Sari, saying, “We have waited until Abū Jaʿfar died to come to you.” To them al-Sari replied, “I will take the same oath upon myself that four days have passed since a messenger from the Commander of the Faithful has come to me. Therefore, grant me a delay of four nights, for I expect another of my messengers. In the meantime, I will undertake to look after you and your riding animals. If what you are saying is true, I will hand Mecca over to you. If it is false, I will strive against you until you conquer me or I conquer you.” But al-Hasan refused, saying, “We won’t delay until we’ve fought against you.” Now with al-Hasan were seventy men and seven horse soldiers. When they drew close to al-Sari, al-Hasan said to his troops, “Not one of you should advance until Wathiq blows the trumpet. When he does so, then let your charge be as one.” When we came close to them and al-Hasan feared that al-Sari would overwhelm him and his confederates, he shouted at Wathiq, “For God's sake, blow the trumpet.” This he did, and they charged us as one man. Al-Sari's associates were routed, however, with seven of their soldiers being killed.

According to 'Umar: Al-Hasan overtook them with some horsemen from his forces. Al-Sari's men were behind the pass

---


881. Also vocalized as Dhū Ṭawā in Yaqūt, Buldān, IV, 45, it is identified as a site near Mecca that serves as one of the boundary markers for the haram. The Qur'an, 20:12, 79:16, refers to the valley by the name of Ṭuwā, as the place where God called Moses. See also Ibn Manzūr, Lisān al-ʿarab, XV, 21.


883. For the symbolic use of seven and seventy to express ideas of magnitude or of divine influence, see Conrad, “Seven and the Tasbi.”

884. Tabari, Addenda et Emendanda, p. DCCXXXVII, following the subsequent references. Wathiq is mentioned later at III, 267, as one of the leaders of an uprising of blacks in Medina.
with a Qurashi group who had gone forth with them. He reproached them, trying to get them to help him. But when the Qurashis saw them, they said, "These associates of yours have already been routed." Al-Sari retorted, "Don't be hasty; wait until the cavalry and the men appear in the mountains." But they asked him what was left, and he admitted, "By the grace of God they have all been routed." They continued to flee until they entered the government compound (dār al-imārah), throwing off their fighting gear, rushed at a soldier named Abū al-Rizām, and entered his house. They were still there when al-Ḥasan b. Muʿāwiyyah entered the mosque and addressed the people, announcing to them the death of Abū Jaʿfar and calling upon them to support Muḥammad's cause.


According to `Umar—Ibn Abī Musāwir b. ʿAbdallāh b. Musāwir, the mawlā of the Banū Nāʿīlah from the Banū ʿAbdallāh b. Muʿāys: I was in Mecca with al-Sari b. ʿAbdallāh when al-Ḥasan b. Muʿāwiyyah reached him before Muḥammad's uprising. At that time al-Sari was actually in al-Ṭāʾīf, and his deputy in Mecca was Ibn Surāqah from the Banū ʿAdī b. Kaʿb. Ibn Surāqah appealed to ʿUtbah b. Abī Khidāsh al-Lahabī for assistance against al-Ḥasan b. Muʿāwiyyah in the matter of a debt that al-Ḥasan owed to him. ʿUtbah thus placed al-Ḥasan in confinement. Al-Sari wrote to Ibn Abī Khidāsh on his behalf: "Now then, you've made a mess of things and struck a bad judgment for yourself when you imprisoned Ibn Muʿāwiyyah but got only money from his brother." Al-Sari then wrote to Ibn Surāqah ordering him to release al-Ḥasan, and he wrote to [al-Ḥasan] b.
Mu‘awiya telling him to stay there until he arrived and made a decision about his situation.

According to ‘Umar: Not long after this Muhammad made his uprising, and al-Hasan b. Mu‘awiya set out for al-Sari as [Muhammad’s] governor of Mecca. Al-Sari was told that, lo and behold, Ibn Mu‘awiya had drawn near, to which he replied, “Surely he won’t do anything, given my efforts on his behalf. In fact, how could the people of Medina come out against me? By God, there is no house in the city where some kind act of mine has not penetrated.” He was told that al-Hasan had already established himself [in the city], so he came back [from al-Ţā’if].

According to ‘Umar: Ibn Jurayj went to al-Hasan, and he said to him, “Listen here, fellow, you’ll never get into Mecca. Its people are on al-Sari’s side. Do you think you can conquer Quraysh and force it to give up its home!” Al-Hasan replied, “O weaver’s son, are you trying to scare me with the people of Mecca? By God, I shall either pass the night there or die outside it!” At this, he leapt up at the head of his associates as al-Sari approached him, and he confronted him in Fakhkh. One of al-Hasan’s men struck al-Sari’s secretary, Miskin b. Hilal, on the head and split it open. Al-Sari and his confederates were put to flight, and al-Hasan’s men entered Mecca. Abū al-Rizām, one of the Banū ‘Abd al-Dār from the family of Saybah, took al-Sari under his protection, keeping him hidden in his house as al-Hasan entered Mecca. In fact, al-Hasan stayed in Mecca for only a short time. Then a letter arrived from Muhammad ordering al-Hasan to join him.

888. Abū Walid or Abū Khālid ‘Abd al-Malik b. ‘Abd al-‘Azīz b. Jurayj (d. 150/767) was a Meccan muḥaddith and faqīḥ; he is often cited as among the first to produce an ordered collection of hadiths. Cf. Goldziher, Muslim Studies, II, 196–97, who qualifies this assertion. Eṣṣ, Suppl., s.v. Ibn Djuraydj [Ch. Pellat]; GAS, I, 91; Juynboll, Muslim Tradition, 21–22.

889. Fakhkh, sometimes known as Wādi al-Zāhīr, was a place near Mecca that was to become the site of a related ‘Alid insurrection in 169/786 led by al-Husayn b. ‘Ali, Shāhīb Fakhkh. Eṣṣ, s.v. [L. Veccia Vaglieri], Yaqūt, Buldān, IV, 237–38.

890. The Banū ‘Abd al-Dār b. Quṣayy were a clan of Quraysh; they are first mentioned by Tabarî, I, 1137, in connection with the rebuilding of the Ka‘bah during the Prophet’s lifetime. Caskel, Gamharat an-nasab, I, 4, II, 123; Ibn Ḥazm, Jamharat ansāb al-ʿarab, 125–28.

891. Wa-ʾltaffa Abū al-Rizām . . . ʿalā al-Sari. Tabarî, Glossarium, s.v. laffa.
The Events of the Year 145

According to Umar—‘Abdallāh b. Ishaq b. al-Qāsim: I heard countless of our associates mention that when al-Ḥasan and al-Qāsim took Mecca, they equipped themselves and gathered a large force. Then they went forth to meet Muḥammad and to assist him against ʿĪsā b. Mūsā. As their deputy in Mecca, they left a descendant of the Anšār. In Qudayd, news of Muḥammad’s death met them. At this, people began to slip away from them. Al-Ḥasan took off for Basqah, there being in the sands a stony area called the Basqah of Qudayd. He met up with Ibrāhim and remained in al- Bàṣrah until Ibrāhim was killed. Al-Qāsim b. Ishaq also headed toward Ibrāhim. When he was in Yadi’, in the region of Fadak, news of Ibrāhim’s death reached him. He therefore went back to Medina and remained hidden until the daughter of ‘Abdallāh b. Muḥammad b. ‘Alī b. ‘Abdallāh b. Ja‘far, the wife of ʿĪsā b. Mūsā, obtained for him and for his brother a guarantee of safety. Then the sons of Mu‘āwiyah came out of hiding, and al-Qāsim did so as well.

According to Umar—‘Umar b. Rashid, the mawlā of ‘Anj: When al-Ḥasan b. Mu‘āwiyah had triumphed over al-Sari, he halted a little while until the letter from Muḥammad came to him with orders to join him, and also reporting to him that ʿĪsā had drawn close to Medina and urging him to be quick in getting there. Al-Ḥasan left Mecca in a heavy rain on Monday, which they assert is the day on which Muḥammad was killed. One of ʿĪsā b. Mūsā’s couriers met up with him in Amaj, a watering place of the Khuzā‘ah [tribe] that lies between Usfān and Qudayd, with the news of Muḥammad’s death. Hearing this, al-Ḥasan fled, as did his associates.

892. Qudayd was a Hijāzī site, also known as al-Khayym or Khaym Umm Ma‘bad, on the route from Mecca to Medina. Yaqūt, Buldān, IV, 313–14; Cornu, Répertoires, 76, 82.
893. Like ḥarrah, the word basqah connotes an area of lava flow and volcanic debris. Groom, Arabic Topography, 59.
894. Yadi’ was a district between Fadak and Khaybar. Yaqūt, Buldān, V, 433.
896. Amaj was a site in the area of Khulayṣ. Cornu, Répertoires, 70; Yaqūt, Buldān, I, 249.
897. Usfān was a watering place on the route from Mecca to Medina and was thus called, according to Yaqūt, because a stream cut randomly through it. Cornu, Répertoires, 88; Yaqūt, Buldān, IV 121–22.
According to Ḥasan b. Abī Thābit—Abū Sayyār: I was Muḥammad b. Ḥabīb’s chamberlain, and a rider came to me at night and said, “I have just arrived from al-Baṣrah. Ibrāhīm has already made his uprising there and has taken control of the city.” I went first to the Dār Marwān and then to the place where Muḥammad was staying. I banged on the door, and Muḥammad shouted at the top of his lungs, “Who’s there?” “Abū Sayyār,” I said. “There is no might and no power except in God,” he responded. “O God, I seek protection with You from the evil of knockers in the night except from the one who knocks on Your behalf bringing good.” He then added, “Is it good?” “It is,” I said. He asked, “What is behind your call?” I answered, “Ibrāhīm has seized al-Baṣrah.” Now, when Muḥammad said the sunset and the dawn prayer, someone would shout aloud, “Pray to God for your brothers among the people of al-Baṣrah and for al-Ḥasan b. Muʿāwiya, and ask His assistance against your enemy.”

According to Ḥasan—ʿĪsā: A Syrian by the name of Abū ‘Amr came to us and stayed at our house. My father kept asking him, “What do you think of this fellow?” To this Abū ‘Amr would answer, “When I’ve met him and sounded him out, then I’ll let you know.” Sometime later my father encountered Abū ‘Amr and questioned him. “By God,” responded Abū ‘Amr, “he’s a man all right, but I saw that the fat on his back was a yard thick. That’s not how a true warrior looks.” Yet afterward Abū ‘Amr gave Muḥammad the oath of allegiance and fought with him.

According to Ḥasan—ʿAbdallāh b. Muḥammad b. Salm, the mawla of al-Manṣūr who went by the name Ibn al-Bawwāb: Abū Jaʿfar wrote a letter, as if from the tongue of Muḥammad, to al-Aʿmash, calling upon him for help. When he read it, al-Aʿmash said, “We know you well, O Banū Hāshim. You are the sort who

899. ʿAbdallāh b. Muḥammad b. Salm, identified also as ʿAbdallāh b. Muḥammad b. al-Bawwāb, was doorkeeper to the caliph al-Ḥādī as the deputy of al-Faḍl b. al-Rabī', and later vizier for Hārūn al-Rašīd and al-Amin. Ta’barānī, III, 590.
900. Abū Muhammad Sulaymān b. Mīhrān al-ʿAsādī (d. 148/765), a noted scholar of Qurʾān and ḥadīth, was born in Ta’baristān but lived most of his life in al-Kūfah and died there. The sources differ about whether his transmissions from
love bread soup (tharid).

When the messenger returned to Abū Ja`far, he made his report with the statement: “I swear, these are al-A`mash's very words.”

According to al-Hārith—Ibn Sa`d—Muḥammad b. ‘Umar: Muḥammad b. ‘Abdallāh had taken over Medina and, getting word of that, we went forth immediately. We were but lads; in fact, at that time I was only fifteen years old. We reached him when people had already gathered around to get a look at him. No one was being held back from him, so I got up close and took a good, long look at him. He was on horseback, wearing a pleated white shirt and a white turban. He was a broad-chested man with a face scarred by smallpox. His next move was to send someone off to Mecca. That city was seized in his name, and its people donned white. He sent his brother, Ibrāhīm b. ‘Abdallāh, to al-Baṣrah. Ibrāhīm occupied that city and brought it under his control, so its people put on white as well.

The account now returns to that transmitted by ‘Umar:

According to ‘Umar—Muḥammad b. Yahyā—al-Ḥārith b. Ishāq: The Commander of the Faithful, Abū Ja`far, put ‘Īsā b. Mūsā in charge of the fight against Muḥammad, saying, “I don’t care which of those two kills the other.” The caliph gave ‘Īsā 4,000 soldiers detached from the army and sent with him Muḥammad, the son of Abū al-‘Abbās, [the late] Commander of the Faithful

According to ‘Umar—‘Abd al-Malik b. Shaybān—Zayd, the mawlā of Misma: When Abū Ja`far ordered ‘Īsā b. Mūsā to present himself, the latter said, “Seek the advice of your uncles.” “Get going, fellow,” retorted Abū Ja`far. “By God, no one is intended other than you or me. Either you must go, or I must.” ‘Īsā therefore traveled until he reached us in Medina.
According to ʿUmar—ʿAbd al-Malik b. Shaybān: Abū Jaʿfar summoned Jaʿfar b. Hanẓalāh al-Bahrānī who, though leprous for many years, was very knowledgeable about warfare. He had even been on the battlefield with Marwān. The caliph said to him, “O Jaʿfar, Muḥammad has now come out in open revolt. What are your thoughts on this?” “Where did he make his uprising?” asked Jaʿfar. “In Medina,” replied Abū Jaʿfar. At this Jaʿfar exclaimed, “Praise God, he has staged his revolt in a place where he will find no resources, no men, no weapons, and no mounts. Send one of your mawlās in whom you have confidence. Have him go as far as Wādī al-Qurā. From there he can prevent Syrian provisions from reaching Muḥammad, who will starve to death where he is. The caliph did as Jaʿfar advised.

According to ʿUmar—ʿAbdallāh b. Rāshid b. Yazīd: I heard our associates Ismāʾīl b. Mūsā, ʿĪsā b. al-Nāḍr, and others mention that Abū Jaʿfar sent Kathir b. Ḥuṣayn al-ʿAbdī on ahead. Kathir camped at Fayd and entrenched himself against Muḥammad until the time of ʿĪsā b. Mūsā’s arrival. Then Kathir went on to Medina with ʿĪsā b. Mūsā. ʿAbdallāh added, “I actually saw the trench still there for a long time, but eventually it was obliterated and disappeared.”

According to ʿUmar—Yaʿqūb b. al-Qāsim—ʿAlī b. Abī Ṭālib whom I encountered in Ṣan`ā’: At the time when he sent him against Muḥammad. Abū Jaʿfar said to ʿĪsā, “You must let Abū al-ʿAskar Mīsmāʾ travel with you. I once saw him hold Saʿīd b. ʿAmr b.

904. Further to this conversation see Lassner, “Provincial Administration: Governors of the Ḥaramayn,” 44–45.
905. Wādī al-Qurā was the valley that lay northwest of Medina as a principal corridor to Syria. Its Jewish inhabitants were defeated by the Prophet Muḥammad in 7/628. EI1, s.v. Wādī -l-ʿKurā [A. Grohmann]; Cornu, Répertoires, 88; Yaqūt, Buldān, V, 345.
907. Both Ismāʾīl b. Mūsā and ʿĪsā b. al-Nāḍr share the professional designation al-Sammān, i.e. “butter merchant.”
908. Ṣan`ā’ is the present-day Yemeni capital. It is situated on a broad plain in the Sarāt chain. Yaqūt, Buldān, III, 425–31; EI1, s.v. [R. Strothmann]; Cornu, Répertoires, 84.
909. Abū al-ʿAskar Mīsmāʾ b. Muḥammad was a descendant of one of the leading households of Umayyad al-Ṭārah. Crone, Slaves, 118; Morony, Iraq, 257.
Ja'dah b. Hubayrah back from the people of al-Baṣrah, who were ready to rally against him when he was recruiting for Marwān. Sa'īd stayed, instead, with Abū al-'Askar, eating sugared marrow.” 'Iṣā therefore went forth in the company of Misma'. When 'Iṣā was in Baṭn Nakhl, Misma' and al-Mas‘ūdī b. 'Abd al-Rahmān b. 'Abdallāh b. Utbah b. 'Abdallāh b. Mas‘ūd stayed behind until Muḥammad was killed. When Abū Ja'far heard about that, he said to 'Iṣā b. Mūsā, “I hope you behead him!”

According to 'Iṣā b. 'Abdallāh b. Muḥammad b. 'Umar b. 'Alī b. Abī Ṭalīb—his father: As he was bidding him farewell, Abū Ja'far said to 'Iṣā b. Mūsā, “I am sending you to what is between these two—and he pointed to his two sides [i.e., to what I hold most important]—so if you can subdue the fellow, then sheathe your sword and offer a general amnesty. But if he gets away, then make them a surety for him until they bring him to you. They will know where he goes.” When 'Iṣā entered Medina, that is what he did.


910. Muḥlibīn 'alayhi, with Lane, Lexicon, II, 624.
911. Baṭn Nakhl was a stage on the route from al-Baṣrah to Medina. Ṭabarī, III, 267, 557, later specifies its situation as about two nights' journey, or thirty (farsaks), from Medina. Yāqūt, Buldān, I, 449–50; Cornu, Répertoires, 71.
914. See note 48.
915. Fa-lam yatruk lahu shay'an, following the suggested emendation in note b. The text reads fa-lam yanzil, which could mean “and 'Iṣā did not break his march,” i.e., he was so well equipped that he did not need to make the usual halts to gather reinforcements.
Ja`fari,\textsuperscript{916} one of Abū Ja`far's inner circle and favorably disposed to the `Abbāsids. Abū Ja`far had confidence in him and therefore sent him...\textsuperscript{917} The account returns to that of `Umar b. Shabbah.

According to `Umar—İsâ—his father: Abū Ja`far wrote to İsâ b. Mūsâ, "Write down for me the names of those members of the Abū Ṭalib family who actually meet with you. As for those who do not, confiscate their property." İsâ therefore seized the spring of Abū Ziyād because Ja`far b. Muḥammad [i.e. Abū Ziyād]\textsuperscript{918} stayed hidden away from him. But at the time of Abū Ja`far's arrival, Ja`far spoke with him and asked about his property. The caliph retorted, "Your Mahdi has already seized it."

According to `Umar—Muḥammad b. Yaḥyā—al-Ḥārith b. Ishāq: When İsâ got as far as Fayd, he wrote [messages] on strips of silk to certain leading men of Medina, including 'Abd al-`Azīz b. al-Muṭṭalib al-Makhzūmī and 'Ubaydallāh b. Muḥammad b. Ṣafwān al-Jumāḥī.\textsuperscript{919} When his letters arrived in Medina, many people broke away from Muḥammad, including 'Abd al-`Azīz b. al-Muṭṭalib. He, however, was seized and brought back. He stayed for a short while and then left again but was returned yet another time. His brother 'Alī b. al-Muṭṭalib\textsuperscript{920} was among Muḥammad's strongest supporters. He kept talking to Muḥammad about his brother until he persuaded Muḥammad to leave him alone.

According to `Umar—İsâ: İsâ b. Mūsâ wrote to my father on a piece of yellow silk, which a bedouin brought between the soles\textsuperscript{921} of his sandals. I saw the bedouin sitting in our house, being at the time but a small boy. He handed the letter to my father.

\hspace{1cm} \textsuperscript{916} Muḥammad b. Abī al-Karrām al-Ja`fari appears later in the narrative (pp. 231, 298) as the one who carries Muḥammad b. 'Abdallāh's head to Abū Ja`far and identifies Ibrāhīm b. 'Abdallāh's head for İsâ b. Mūsā.

\hspace{1cm} \textsuperscript{917} There is a portion missing here from the Algiers manuscript.

\hspace{1cm} \textsuperscript{918} Ja`far al-Ṣādiq. See p. 222, where the "spring of Abū Ziyād" ('ayn Abī Ziyād) is identified as a land grant (qatīfah).

\hspace{1cm} \textsuperscript{919} 'Ubaydallāh b. Muḥammad b. Ṣafwān served as judge of Baghdad under Abū Ja`far and governor of Medina under al-Mahdī. He died in 160/776–77. Ṣabā'ī, III, 458, 460, 469, 482; Zambaur, Manuel, 24, where the governor's name is given as Muḥammad b. 'Ubaydallāh b. Muḥammad; al-Khāṭib al-Baghdādī, Ta'rikh Baghdad, X, 306.

\hspace{1cm} \textsuperscript{920} 'Alī b. al-Muṭṭalib b. 'Abdallāh b. Ḥanṭab al-Makhzūmī. His brother was judge of Medina. Şāfā'ī, Wāfi, XVIII, 563.

\hspace{1cm} \textsuperscript{921} Bayna khisāfay na`lihi. Ṣabā'ī, Glossarium, s.v. ḥaṣafa.
It read thus: "Muḥammad has taken upon himself what God has not bestowed on him and has reached out for what God has not given to him. In His book God said, 'Say: O God, Master of sovereignty, You give sovereignty to whom You will and You strip sovereignty from whom You will. You exalt whom You will and You abase whom You will. In Your hand is what is good. You have power over everything'."

[227]

According to ʿUmar: He went off along with ʿUmar b. Muḥammad b. ʿUmar and Abū ʿAqīl Muḥammad b. ʿAbdallāh b. Muḥammad b. ʿAqīl. They called upon al-Aftās Ḥasan b. ʿAlī b. ʿUsayn b. ʿAlī b. Abī Ṭalib to join them, but he refused, maintaining a steadfast allegiance to Muḥammad. Muḥammad was told that they had left, so he sent for their camels and confiscated them. ʿUmar b. Muḥammad thus came to Muḥammad and said, "You summon [people] to justice and to the repudiation of tyranny. Why then were my camels seized? I had just prepared them for a major or lesser Pilgrimage. Muḥammad handed the camels over to him and then they left under cover of the same night, meeting up with ʿĪsā four or five nights out of Medina.

According to ʿUmar—Ayyūb b. ʿUmar b. Abī ʿAmr b. Nuʿaym b. Māḥān—his father: Abū Jaʿfar wrote letters to certain leading Qurashis and others and ordered ʿĪsā to send the letters to them when he got near to Medina. Accordingly, as ʿĪsā drew close, he sent the letter to their intended recipients. Muḥammad's guardsmen, however, seized both the messenger and the letters. Among them Muḥammad found a letter to Ibrāhīm b. Ṭalḥah b. ʿUmar b. ʿUbaydallāh b. Maʿmar and to a number of Qurashi leaders. Muḥammad sent for us all, except Ibn ʿUmar and Abū Bakr b. Abī Sabrah. We were confined in the Dar Ibn Hishām, which was near the oratory. My father continued: Muḥammad sent for me and for my brother, and we were brought forward and beaten 300 times each. As he was beating me and saying, "You meant to kill

923. Abū Bakr b. ʿAbdallāh b. Muḥammad b. Abī Sabrah was a muḥaddith and judge of Mecca under al-Manṣūr. He died in Baghdad in 162/778. Ṣafādī, Wāfi, X, 228; Ibn Ḥajar, Tahdhib, XII, 29; Dhahabī, Siyar, VII, 330–32; Van Arendonk, Débuts, 312 = Opkomst, 286.
me," I said to him, "I spared you when you were keeping yourself hidden behind a rock and in a tent. But finally, at the point when Medina came into your hand and your position became harsh, I stood against you. With whom should I stand? I have no intention of losing my power, or my possessions, or my kinfolk [for your sake]." Then Muhammad ordered us back to prison, and we were fettered with leg irons and chains amounting to eighty ratls in weight. Muhammad b. 'Ajlan went to see Muhammad and said, "I have beaten these two men viciously and so completely fettered them that they cannot pray the ritual prayer." Ayyub b. 'Umar's father and brother remained imprisoned until the arrival of 'Isa.

According to 'Umar—Muhammad b. Yahya—'Abd al-'Aziz b. Abi Thabit—'Abd al-Hamid b. Ja'far b. 'Abdallah b. al-Ḥakam: As 'Isa was drawing near Medina, we were with Muhammad one night when he said, "Give me your advice. Should I get out of here or should I stay?" His followers differed, so he turned to me and said, "Tell me what to do, Ibn Abi Ja'far." "Don't you know," I said, "that you are in the land of God least endowed with horses, food, and weapons and the most deficient in manpower?" "Yes, I do," he replied. "Don't you know," I said, "that you will be fighting the strongest of God's lands in men and the one with the most wealth and weapons?" "Yes, to be sure," he replied. "The best course, then," I said, "is to proceed to Egypt with those who support you. For I swear that no one there could turn you back, and you could fight the fellow with weapons like his, with mounts like his, with men like his, and with resources like his." At this Hunayn b. 'Abdallah shouted out, "God forbid that you should leave Medina" and recounted to him the saying of the

---

924. Thumma amara binā. Ţabari, Addenda et Emendanda, p. DCCXXXVIII.
925. The Baghdādi standard for the raṭl [pl. arṭāl] is the equivalent of about 406 grams, i.e., about one pound. Hinz, Islamische Masse und Gewichte, 31.
926. Abū 'Abdallah Muhammad b. 'Ajlan was a Medinese muḥaddith and faqīh who died in 148/765. He was the mawla of Fātimah bt. Walid b. 'Utba b. Rabī'ah, whose father and grandfather were killed at the battle of Badr. According to Ţafadī, Wāfī, IV, 92, his mother was pregnant with him for three years and he was born with developed teeth. Dḥahabi, Šīyar, VI, 317–22; Ibn Ḥajar, Tahdhib, IX, 303–5; Van Arendonk, Débuts, 312–13 = Opkomst, 286.
927. Ţabari, Addenda et Emendanda, p. DCCXXXVIII.
928. See Lassner, "Abū Ja'far al-Mansūr," 42–43, who notes this conversation as a parallel to that between Abū Ja'far and Ja'far b. Ḥanzalah (p. 186).
The Events of the Year 145

Prophet, "I saw myself in an invulnerable breastplate, and I took that to be Medina."\(^929\)

According to 'Umar—Muhammad b. Ismā'īl b. Ja'far—someone close whom he trusted: At the time of his uprising, the people of Medina and its environs, as well as certain bedouin tribes such as Juhaynah, Muzaynah, Sulaym,\(^930\) the Banū Bakr,\(^931\) Aslam\(^932\) and Ghifār,\(^933\) responded to Muhammad. [Unfortunately] he gave precedence to the Juhaynah, which angered the Qaysi tribes.

According to Muhammad—'Abdallāh b. Ma'rūf, one of the descendants of Riyāh b. Mālik b. 'Uṣayyah b. Khufāf,\(^934\) who had witnessed this himself: The Banū Sulaym came to Muhammad under the leadership of their headmen. Their spokesman, Jābīr b. Anas al-Riyāḥī, said, "Commander of the Faithful, we are your maternal uncles and your neighbors, and we have weapons and mounts in our possession. By God, Islam came at a time when the Banū Sulaym owned more horses than there were in the Hijāz. Indeed, if a bedouin had what remains with us now, the entire desert would be at his disposal. Do not dig a trench. The Messenger of God dug his trench for reasons God knows best. If you dig a trench, the footsoldiers will not be able to fight effectively and the horses will not be able to be moved on our behalf between the lines. Those in front of whom a trench is dug are those who must fight in it, while it prevents them from getting at those against whom it is dug." At this one of the Banū Shuja'\(^935\) inter-
Abbasid Authority Affirmed

vened, saying, "The Messenger of God dug a trench, so follow his way of thinking, or do you intend to set aside the Messenger of God's way for your own?" "O Ibn Shu'ayb," Jābir responded, "nothing weighs more heavily on you and your associates than actually meeting them [in battle], and nothing is more to my liking and that of my associates than fighting them directly." "With the trench," Muḥammad added, "we have simply followed the Messenger of God's footsteps. No one can turn us from him nor will I forsake him."

According to ʿUmar—Muḥammad b. Yaḥyā—al-Ḥarīth b. Ishaq: When Muḥammad knew for certain that ʿĪsā had advanced, he excavated the trench, the one dug by the Prophet for the confederacies.

According to ʿUmar—Saʿd b. ʿAbd al-Ḥamīd b. Jaʿfar—Muḥammad b. ʿAṭīyyah, the mawālī of the Muṭṭalibīs. When Muḥammad had the trench dug, he rode out to it, wearing a white outer garment and a sash. With him rode the people. When he came to the place, he got down into it and took the lead in digging with his hand, extracting a brick from the Prophet's trench. He shouted Allāhu akbar, as did the people with him, who [also] exclaimed, "Rejoice in victory. This is the trench of your forefather, the Messenger of God."

According to ʿUmar—Muḥammad b. al-Ḥasan b. Zabālah—Muṣ`ab b. ʿUthmān b. Muṣ`ab b. ʿUrwah b. al-Zubayr: As ʿĪsā made camp in al-Aʿwaš, Muḥammad ascended the pulpit to praise and glorify God. Then he said, "God's enemy and yours, ʿĪsā b. Muṣa, has now encamped at al-Aʿwaš. Surely the people with the strongest claim to uphold this religion are the descendants [ʿabnāʾ] of the first Muhājirūn and the Anṣār who assisted them."

According to ʿUmar—Ibrāhīm b. Abī Ishaq al-ʿAbsī, a shaykh of the Ghaṭafān—Abū ʿAmr, the teacher (muʿaddib) of

---

936. Often found within the expression ʿabnāʾ al-dawlah, this term became one of special significance for the 'Abbasids as a designation for the family members and the descendants of their early Khurāsānī supporters. *E2, s.v.* [B. Lewis].


938. He is subsequently identified in Ṭabarī, III, 234, as Ibrāhīm al-Ghaṭafānī.

939. The Banū Ghaṭafān b. Saʿd, a tribal subgroup of Qays ʿAyān, were late in offering allegiance to the Prophet and renounced their alliance in the riddah
Muhammad b. 'Abd al-Rahmân b. Sulaymân—al-Zubayrî, i.e., 'Uthmân b. Muḥammad b. Khālid, whom Abû Ja'far killed: Gathered with Muḥammad was a group whose equal or augment I have never seen. I would estimate that we were 100,000. As 'Īsâ drew close to the city, Muḥammad preached to us, saying, "O people, this man has now come near you with a large force and full war apparatus. I hereby absolve you from your oath of allegiance to me. Whoever wishes to stay may do so. Whoever wishes to leave may do so." People slipped away until Muḥammad was left at the head of a band which was far from numerous.

According to 'Umar—Mawhûb b. Rashîd b. Ḥayyân b. Abî Sulaymân b. Sam‘ân, one of the sons of Qarît b. 'Abdallâh b. Abî Bakr b. Kilâb—his father: When Muḥammad made his uprising, the people rallied to him. He crowded them together and seized control of the mountain passes so that no one could get out. Hearing that 'Īsâ and Ḥumayd b. Qaḥtabah had approached, Muḥammad climbed the pulpit and said, "O people, we gathered you together to fight and closed the mountain passes against you. Now this enemy is near to you and at the head of a large force. Victory, however, comes from God, and the affair is in His hand. It seems right to me that I should give you permission [to leave] and open the passes for you. Whoever wishes to remain should stay but whoever wishes to be off may leave." A world of people left, including me. When we were in al-'Urayd,940 which is about three mîls from Medina, 'Īsâ b. Mūsâ's vanguard met up with us just outside of al-Ruḥbah.941 Their forces looked exactly like a swarm of locusts. We kept going, and 'Īsâ's forces headed for Me-\n\n"B'dina going in the opposite direction to ours.942

According to 'Umar—Muḥammad b. Yahyâ—al-Ḥârîth b. Ishâq: Many people from Medina left the city with their children and their families for the outlying regions and the mountains. Muḥammad ordered Abû al-Qalāmāms to bring back those

940. Al-'Urayd is a district in the harra[ a area near Medina. Tabari, I, 1365, 1372; Yaqût, Buldân, IV, 114.
941. Al-Ruḥbah is a town on the route to Syria that runs through Wâdi al-Qurâ. Yaqût, Buldân, III, 33.
942. Wa-khâla[ fûnâ ila al-Madinah. Tabari, Glossarium, s.v. khâla[; Dozy, Supplément, I, 396; Lane, Lexicon, II, 794.
whom he could, but a considerable number were impossible to reach, so he left them alone.

According to `Umar—ʻIsā—al-Ghādiri:943 Muhammad asked me, "If I give you a weapon will you fight with me?" "Yes," I said, "if you give me a spear, I shall pierce them with it when they are in al-Aʿwaṣ, a sword and I shall strike them with it when they are in Hayfā."944 Before very long he sent for me and asked, "What are you waiting for?" "How light a matter for you, may God preserve you!" I said. "If I am killed and people pass by, and someone will say, 'There, by God, was a real desert Arab!' what will you care?]." Muhammad replied, "Woe to you, the people of Syria, Iraq, and Khurasān have already put on white." I said, "[Go ahead and] make the world be white as cream and me black as the pencase's wool! With ʻIsā in al-Aʿwaṣ, what difference does it make to me?"

According to `Umar—ʻIsā—his father—his grandfather: Together with ʻIsā b. Mūsā, Abū Jaʿfar dispatched Ibn al-ʿAṣamm ["the Deaf"], who attended to his staging posts for him. When they reached the environs of Medina, they settled about a mil from the mosque of the Messenger of God. Ibn al-ʿAṣamm said, "Look you, the cavalry have no task alongside the foot soldiers. I am afraid that if the troops leave you exposed, they will penetrate your forces." ʻIsā therefore moved them up to the watering place of Sulaymān b. ʻAbd al-Malik in al-Jurf,941 which was about four mils from Medina. He cautioned, "No foot soldier should venture more than two or three mils beyond until the cavalry catches up with him."

According to `Umar—ʻIsā—Muhammad b. Abī al-Karrām: Having made camp near al-Qadūm,946 ʻIsā sent for me in the middle of the night, and I found him sitting with a [lighted] candle and monies in front of him. "Scouts have come to inform me," he said, "that this man is in a weak position, but I fear that he will sally forth. I assume that he has no road but to Mecca. Take for

943. Al-Ghādiri al-Mudhik.
944. Tabari, Addenda et Emendanda, p. DCCXXXIX, while the Leiden text reads Hasfā. This is the only reference in Tabari, and it is not cited in Yaqūt.
945. Al-Jurf was a site about three mils from Medina on the way to Syria. Yaqūt, Buldān, II, 128; 'Ali, "Topography of Medina," 90.
946. Al-Qadūm was a mountain near Medina. Yaqūt, Buldān, IV, 312.
yourself 500 men and go with them toward Mecca, yet veering from the road until you come to the tree. Then stay there.” Ḥūsan b. Mūsā paid them by the light of the candle, and I went forth with them, passing the al-Baṣrah [road] in the Baṭḥā’, i.e., the Baṭḥā’ Ibn Azhar, about six miles from Medina. The people there were afraid, so I said, “Don’t be afraid. I am Muḥammad b. ‘Abdallah. Do you have any barley mush (sawīq)’? They brought us some barley mush, and we drank, staying there until Muḥammad was killed.

According to ‘Umar—Muḥammad b. Ismā‘īl—a trustworthy source he knew: As Ḥūsan drew close [to Medina], he sent al-Qāsim b. al-Ḥasan b. Zayd to Muhammad to prevail upon him to abandon his purpose and to inform him that the Commander of the Faithful had given him and his household a guarantee of safety. Muḥammad said to al-Qāsim, “By God, were it not for the fact that messengers are not to be killed, I would behead you. From the time you were a lad, I have never seen you faced with a choice between good and bad parties when you didn’t go for the bad rather than the good.” Muḥammad sent word to Ḥūsan, “Listen, fellow, certainly you are closely related to the Messenger of God. Therefore do I summon you to the Book of God, to the sunnah950 of His Prophet and to acting in obedience to Him. I warn you of God’s retribution and His punishments. I will not abandon this affair until God Himself has cast it aside. Hear me now, lest the one who calls you to God kills you, and you die as the worst

---

947. A baṭḥā’ is a broad, shallow riverbed. The Prophet halted beneath a tree in the Baṭḥā’ Ibn Azhar when making his raid on al-‘Ushayrah. Guillaume, Life of Muhammad, 285 = Ibn Iṣḥāq, Sirāh, 421; Ṣābārī, I, 1268; Groom, Arabic Topography, 59; Yaqūt, Buldān, I, 446.

948. Lane, Lexicon, IV, 1472, describes this as a kind of gruel made by moistening barley or wheat with water, clarified butter, or other forms of fat. A Qurashi expedition against the Prophet in the second year after the hijrah became known as ghawzat al-sawīq because of the sacks of barley meal which were discarded by the raiders as they made their retreat. Guillaume, Life of Muhammad, 361–62 = Ibn Iṣḥāq, Sirāh, 543–44; Ṣābārī, I, 1364–67; Waines, “Cereals, Bread, and Society,” 266, 282–83.

949. Al-Qāsim b. al-Ḥasan b. Zayd was the great-great-grandson of ‘Alī b. Ābī Ṭalib. Öhrnberg, Offspring of Fāṭima, table 8.

950. The “practice” of the Prophet, i.e., the norms for Muslim behavior that are drawn from the words and deeds of Muḥammad as recorded in the canonical collections of hadith.

951. Hatta. Ṣābārī, Addenda et Emendanda, p. DCCXXIX.
[possible] victim. On the other hand, if you kill him, then surely your burden will be even greater and your offense more monstrous." Muhammad sent this letter with Ibrahim b. Ja`far.952 When Ibrahim delivered it to Isa b. Musa, the latter said, "Go back to your master and say to him, 'There can be nothing between us but battle.'"

According to Umar—Ibrahim b. Muhammad b. Abi al-Karram b. Abdallah b. Ali b. Abdallah b. Ja`far—his father: When Isa drew near to Medina, he sent me to Muhammad with a guarantee of safety for him. Muhammad said to me, "Why would you people fight me and consider shedding my blood lawful when I am simply a man who is trying to avoid killing?"953 "My people are calling you to [accept] the guarantee of safety," I said. "If you refuse to do anything but fight them, they will fight you just as the best of your ancestors, 'Ali, fought Talhah and al-Zubayr954 for breaching the oath of allegiance made to them, for assailing their regnal authority,955 and for striving against them." I later informed Abu Ja`far of that, and he said, 'It certainly does not make me happy that you said one thing to him and quite another to me.'"

According to Umar—Hisham b. Muhammad b. Urwah b. Hisham b. Urwah956—Mahan b. Bakht, Qahtabah's mawla: As we arrived at Medina, Ibrahim b. Ja`far b. Mus`ab came to look us over, riding around our army until he had spied out all of it and then turning to leave. We were so frightened by him that Isa and Humayd b. Qahtabah began to exclaim with admiration, "One lone horseman is advance scout for his cohort!" As he got to the limit of our range of vision, we saw him standing in one place. "Blast you, go and find out what's happening with that fellow," said Humayd, "I can see his horse is not moving at all." So Humayd dispatched to Ibrahim b. Ja`far two men from his cohort, and they discovered that Ibrahim's mount had stumbled and

---

952. Isfahani, Magatil, 268, gives the name as Ibrahim b. Ja`far al-Zubayri.
954. A reference to the Battle of the Camel.
955. Wa-f'ala kaydi al-mulk. Tabari, Glossarium, s.v. kada. See note 424.
956. His great-grandfather Abû al-Mundhir Hisham b. Urwah b. al-Zubayr b. al-Awwâm (d. 146/763) was a Medinese muhaddith and faqih who eventually joined al-Manṣūr's entourage in Baghdad and died there. GAS, I, 88; Ṣafadi, Wāfī, VI, 34–47; Zirikli, A'lam, VIII, 87.
The Events of the Year 145

thrown him to the ground. His armor (tannūr) had broken his neck. Humayd’s two men took his booty and brought us armor said to belong to Muṣʿab b. al-Zubayr. It was gilded and unlike any ever seen.

According to ʿUmar—Muḥammad b. Yaḥyā—al-Ḥārith b. Ishāq: ʿĪsā made camp at Qaṣr Sulaymān in al-Jurf early on a Saturday morning, 12 Ramaḍān 145 and stayed there both Saturday and Sunday. Early Monday morning he went out to take up a position at Sal so that he could survey Medina and those who were entering and leaving it. He covered all its approaches with cavalry and troops except the area around the mosque of Abū al-Jarrāh at Buṭḥān. This he left open as an exit for those wanting to flee, and Muḥammad showed himself at the head of the people of Medina.

According to ʿUmar—ʿĪsā—Muḥammad b. Zayd: We reached Medina together with ʿĪsā. He summoned Muḥammad [to desist and accept the guarantee of safety] three times, on Friday, on Saturday, and on Sunday.

According to ʿUmar—ʿAbd al-Malik b. Shaybān—Zayd, the mawlā of Misma: After ʿĪsā had set up camp, he made a mounted advance, with something like 500 foot soldiers surrounding him as they marched. Before him moved a banner that he carried on the march. ʿĪsā halted at al-Thaniyyah and cried out, “O people of Medina, God has forbidden us to shed each other’s blood. Come and take the guarantee of safety! Whoever takes his stand under our banner is safe, as is whoever goes into his house, enters the

957. Ṭabari, Glossarium, s.v. tannūr. The term ordinarily connotes a baking oven, especially one for bread.


959. December 4, 762.

960. Sal was a mountain pass near Medina; see the map on p. 1001 of El’, s.v. al-Madina ii. The modern city (R. B. Winder) for Djabal Sala [sic]. Yaqūt, Buldān, III, 236–37.

961. Perhaps the mawlā of Umm Ḥabībah, a wife of the Prophet, who transmitted hadith from her and from the third caliph, ʿUthmān b. ʿAffān. Ibn Ḥajar, Tahdhib, XII, 56.
mosque, throws down his weapons, or leaves Medina. Leave us and our opponent to face each other, and [may the victory go] to us or to him." The people of Medina heaped abuse upon him and vilified him, saying such things as, "O son of a sheep, O son of this, O son of that!" That very day Ṣā ā went away and returned next morning. He did what he had done the day before, and once again the people of Medina reviled him. On the third day, he approached with [many] horses, men, and weapons, the like of which I've never seen. Lord knows, we didn't have long to wait before he got the better of us, proclaimed the guarantee of safety, and left for his encampment.

According to 'Umar—Ibrāhim al-Ghatafānī—Abū 'Amr, teacher of Muḥammad b. Abd al-Rahmān—al-Zubayrī, i.e., Uthmān b. Muḥammad b. Khālid: When we came face to face, Ṣā ā himself proclaimed, "O Muḥammad, the Commander of the Faithful has ordered me not to fight you before I extend to you the guarantee of safety. I am bound to offer this to you, your family, your descendants, and your associates. Furthermore, you will be given thus and thus amount of money. Your debt will be discharged, and you will be treated in an appropriate way."

Muḥammad shouted back, "Forget this! If you only understood that fear does not make me swerve from you nor does desire draw me near, you would not behave thus." The fighting was relentless, and Muḥammad dismounted to engage in it. I would estimate that he killed seventy men on that day by his own hand.

According to 'Umar—İsā—Muḥammad b. Zayd: On Monday Ṣā ā halted at Dhubab. Summoning a mawla of 'Abdallāh b. Muʿāwiyyah who had accompanied him as head of his armored troops. Ṣā ā said, "Take ten of your cohort, the ones who have protective armor." The man brought them forward, and Ṣā ā said to us, "Ten of you should stay with him, O family of Abū Ṭālib." This we did, and with us were the two sons of Muḥammad

963. Dhubāb was a mountain near Medina. Yāqūt, Buldān, III, 3; Wüstenfeld, "Medina," 135.
b. ʿUmar b. ʿAli,964 ʿAbdallah965 and ʿUmar, Muḥammad b. ʿAbdallah b. ʿAqil, al-Qāsim b. al-Ḥasan b. Zayd b. al-Ḥasan b. ʿAli, and ʿAbdallah b. Ismāʿīl b. ʿAbdallah b. Jaʿfar, who was in command of ten of us. “Hurry to the people,” Ḥisā said, “call upon them to support us, and offer them a guarantee of safety. God’s guarantee of safety is enduring.” We first went as far as the market of the fuel vendors and made an appeal to them. But they called us names and showered us with arrows, saying, “This is the descendant of God’s Messenger who is with us. We, therefore, are with him.” Al-Qāsim b. al-Ḥasan b. Zayd spoke to them, saying, “I, too, am descended from the Messenger of God. Most of those whom you see are descended from God’s Messenger. We call you to the Book of God, to the sunnah of His Prophet, to the sparing of your blood, and to a guarantee of safety for you.” Again, they began to call us names and to shoot flights of arrows at us. Al-Qāsim told his servant to collect these arrows, which he did. Al-Qāsim then took hold of them and went to see Ḥisā. “What are you waiting for?” he asked Ḥisā. “Look what they did to us.” Ḥisā therefore sent Ḥumayd b. Qahtabah at the head of 100 men.

According to ʿUmar—Azhar b. Saʿīd b. Nāfiʿ—his brothers, ʿUthmān and Muḥammad, the sons of Saʿīd who were with Muḥammad: Al-Qāsim b. al-Ḥasan and a man from the Abū Ṭalib family who was with him halted at the top of Thaniyyat al-Wadaʿ. They called upon Muḥammad to accept the guarantee of safety, but he hurled insults at them, so they retired. At this point, Ḥisā advanced. He had already assigned the army commanders to their sectors, putting Hazārmard966 near the baths of Ibn Abī al-Ṣaʿbāḥ, Kathīr b. Ḥuṣayn near the house of Ibn Aflaḥ,967 which was in Baqīʾ al-Gharqad, and Muḥammad b. Abī

964. Ṣafadī, ʿWāfiʾ IV, 238, placing his death about 140/757, identifies Muḥammad b. ʿUmar simply as a grandson of ʿAli b. Abī Ṭalib and one of the sayyids of the Banū Ḥāshim. Ibn Ḥajar, ʿTahdhib, IX, 321.

965. His mother was Khadijah bt. Zayn al-ʿAbidin, daughter of the fourth Shiʿi imām, and he was known as Dāfin, i.e., “One who Conceals.” He died in 152/769. Ibn Ḥajar, ʿTahdhib, VI, 16.

966. Not ʿUmar b. Ḥafṣ b. Abī Ṣufrah al-ʿAtākī (see note 374), who was also known as Hazārmard. For this Persian epithet, see Noth, Quellenkritische Studien, 152.

967. Wüstenfeld, “Medina,” 143.
al-'Abbās at the Banū Salīmah gate. The remaining army commanders he assigned to the passageways leading into Medina. Ḥsā led his close associates to the head of al-Thanīyyah, where they shot arrows and catapulted stones for a while.

According to 'Umar—Azhar: Muḥammad made the mosque curtains into chain armor for his associates.

According to 'Umar—'Abdallāh b. Ishaq b. al-Qāsim—'Umar, an Anṣārī shaykh: Muḥammad made mosque covers into quilted armor for his associates. Two men from [the tribe of] Juhaynah came to him, and to one he gave quilted armor, but not to the other. So the one who had the quilted armor fought, but the other one did not join him. During the battle, an arrow struck the one with the armor and killed him. His friend uttered this verse:

O Lord, do not make me like a treacherous one968 who sold his remaining days for [a piece of] quilted armor.

According to 'Umar—Ayyūb b. 'Umar—Ismā‘īl b. Ābī ‘Amr: We were stopped at the Banū Ghifār's trench when a man approached us on horseback, and all that could be seen of him were his two eyes. He called out for a guarantee of safety, which was granted him. He then came right up next to us and said, “Is there anyone with you who could give Muḥammad a message from me?” “Yes,” I said, “I could.” “Then give him a message from me,” he said, uncovering his face. To our surprise it was an old man with dyed hair. He said, “Tell Muḥammad that so-and-so the man of Tamīm speaks to you with a sign to this effect: You and I sat in the shade of the rock on Jabal Juhaynah in the year such-and-such. Wait patiently until nightfall, because the greater part of the army is on your side.” Ismā‘īl continued: I came to Muḥammad before morning—that was on Monday, the day when he was killed—and I found in front of him a waterskin of white honey split down the middle. A man was pulling out a handful of honey and dipping it in water. Then he fed it to Muḥammad little by little. Another man wrapped his belly with a turban cloth. At this point I delivered the message to him. “Now you have made your report,” he said. I replied, “My two brothers are in your power.” “Where they are is good for them,” he said.

968. Ka-man khān. Addenda et Emendanda, p. DCCXXXIX.

According to `Umar—İsā—his father: Al-Aftas Hasan b. ʿAlī b. Ḥusayn was accompanied by a yellow standard with the picture of a serpent on it. Each of Muḥammad’s associates from the family of ʿAlī b. Abī Ṭālib was accompanied by a standard. Their war cry was “One and one alone!” which was the Prophet’s war cry at the Battle of Ḥunayn.

According to `Umar—Saʿīd b. `Abd al-Hamid b. Jaʿfar b. ‘Abdallāh b. Abī Ḥakam—Jahm b. Uthmān, the mawlā of the Banū Sulaym as well as one of the Banū Bahz: On the day we faced ʿIsā’s associates in battle, Abī Ḥamīd b. Jaʿfar said to me, “Today we number what the people of Badr did on the day they faced the idolaters.” We were a few more than 300.

According to `Umar—Ibrāhīm b. Mūsā b. ʿIsā b. Mūsā b. Muḥammad b. ʿAlī b. ‘Abdallāh b. ‘Abbās—his father: ʿIsā b. Mūsā was born in 103 and took part in the war with Muḥammad and Ibrāhīm when he was forty-three years old. Ḥumayd b. Qaḥtabah was in charge of ʿIsā’s vanguard, while Muḥammad b. Abī al-ʿAbbās, son of the [former] Commander of the Faithful, led the right flank. The Khūrasānī Dāwūd b. Karrāz was charged

969. Ibrāhīm b. Muṣʿab would be the great-great-grandson of Muṣʿab b. al-Zubayr al-Awwām [d. 72/691], the governor of al-Baṣrāh who is remembered for the severity of his attack against the `Alid partisan al-Mukhtār b. Abī Ubayd al-Thaqafī and his followers. Ṭabarī, II, 718–50; El’, s.v. Muṣʿab b. al-Zubair [H. Lammens]; Dhahabi, Sīyar, IV, 140–45.

970. According to the Glossarium, s.v. ahad, this expression signifies that “God is one, without partner,” i.e., it is the equivalent of the credal formula inna allāha wāḥidun lā sharika lahu.

971. Hunayn was the site of a battle in 8/630, mentioned in the Qur’an 9:25, where the Prophet’s forces were initially ambushed but soon regrouped to rout the enemy. El’, s.v. (H. Lammens and Abd al-Hafez Kamal).

972. Ibrāhīm b. Mūsā b. ʿIsā was the grandson of al-Saffāh’s designated successor to al-Maṣūr.

973. Ṭabarī, III, 519, mentions his death in the year 167/783–84, and Dhahabi, Sīyar, VII, 435, notes that he lived to be 65. But see El’, s.v. ʿIsā b. Mūsā [D. Sourdel].

974. Ṭabarī, Addenda et Emendanda, p. DCCXXXIX. Dāwūd b. Karrāz served under Abū Muslim in Marw and is mentioned among the Khūrasānī duʿāt. Ṭabarī, II, 1968–69; Akhbār al-dawlah, 221.
with the left flank, and al-Haytham b. Shu`bah was in command of the rear guard.

According to `Umar—his father: Abū al-Qalammās encountered Asad b. al-Marzubān’s975 brother, Muḥammad b. Uthmān, in the market of the firewood vendors. They laid on with swords, until the swords themselves were broken, and then returned to their respective battle stations. At this point Asad’s brother grabbed another sword while Abū al-Qalammās picked up a trivet stone (uthfiyyah),976 placed it on the bow of his saddle, and covered it with his armature. They then returned to each other, and as they drew close, Abū al-Qalammās stood up in his stirrups and hit Asad’s brother in the chest with the trivet, knocking him down. Abū al-Qalammās then dismounted and cut off his head.

According to `Umar—Muḥammad b. al-Ḥasan b. Zabālah—`Abdallāh b. `Umar b. al-Qāsim b. `Abdallah al-ʿUmarī: While we were with Muḥammad, a man from Medina, a mawlā of the family of al-Zubayr named al-Qāsim b. Wā’il, stepped forth and called for a duel. In response, a man came forward against him whose perfection and equipment was unique in my experience. When Ibn Wā’il saw this man, he took off. We were very affected by that, and, in the grip of that emotion, I heard the sound of a footstep behind me.977 I wheeled around and was surprised to see Abū al-Qalammās and hear him say, “God curse the prince of fools for letting someone like that make bold with us. If a man steps out, he may be going out to something beyond his range.” He then fought a duel with the opponent and killed him.

According to `Umar—Azhar b. Sā`īd b. Nāfī`: On that day al-Qāsim b. Wā’il left the trench and called for a duel. Hazārmard answered the challenge, but when al-Qāsim saw him, he was so awed by the man that he retreated. Abū al-Qalammās then

975. Asad b. al-Marzubān was a Persian army officer who later appears in the incidents of harassment directed against `Isā b. Mūsā in order to convince him to renounce his claim to the caliphate in favor of al-Mansūr’s son. Asad’s eventual execution for suspected treason is graphically presented in the events of 151/768–69. Tabari, III, 344, 368. In the late Sasanid period, the marzbdn was the military governor of a frontier district. Tabari, I, 1056, and Nöldeke, Geschichte der Perser, 102.

976. Tabari, Glossarium, s.v. thafā.

977. Khashfa rajulin. Tabari, Glossarium, s.v. khashfa and şata.
stepped forward to duel with him and said that he had never used his sword as he did on that day. Then he struck Hazārmard on his shoulder vein and killed him, saying, "Take that blow! I am the son of al-Fārūq!" One of Ḥisā's comrades retorted, "You have killed a better man than 1000 Fārūqs."

According to 'Umar—the Kūfān 'Abū al-Ḥasan al-Ḥadhdhā' (the Cobbler)—Mas'ūd al-Rāḥḥāl: I was witness to Muḥammad's murder in Medina. In fact, I was watching them near the Aḥjār al-Zayt. I was looking down on them from the mountain, i.e., Sal', when I noticed one of Ḥisā's cohort come forward on horseback, armored in such a way that you could see nothing of him but his eyes. He came far enough forward that he left the line of his confederates behind. Then he came to a standstill between the two combat lines and called for a duel. One of Muḥammad's cohort went out to meet him wearing a white full-sleeved gown (qabā') and a white cap. He was on foot, and he conversed with the challenger for a long time. I assumed that he was asking him to dismount so that their positions would be equal. Eventually, I observed the man on horseback bend his leg and dismount. Then the two faced off against each other. Muḥammad's associate struck the challenger a blow on the iron helmet he was wearing, forcing him to sit back on his haunches stunned and motionless. At this point Muḥammad's man pulled off his helmet, hit him on his head, and killed him. He then went back and joined his fellow soldiers. Without a moment's loss, another came forth from Ḥisā's line, just like the first, and the original fellow from Muḥammad's side challenged him to combat and did to him what he had done to his comrade. Once again, he went back to his battle line. A third fellow came forth, and Muḥammad's man challenged him, dueled with him, and killed him. When the third was killed, he turned back to head for his associates but Ḥisā's men attacked him in waves, throwing spears at him and piercing him. He rushed toward his confederates but never reached them, in-

978. "Al-Fārūq" was an epithet of the caliph 'Umar b. al-Khaṭṭāb.
979. Aḥjār al-Zayt was a site near al-Zawrā', the sūq in Medina, where the prayer for rain is performed. Yaqūt, Buldān, I, 109, III, 156; Lecker, "Markets of Medina," 143.
980. See Dozy, Vêtements, 352–62; Ahsan, Social Life, 41–42.
stead falling flat on the ground so that Ḥāzī’s men killed him short of his goal.

According to Ḥāzī—Muḥammad b. Zayd: When we told Ḥāzī that Muḥammad’s supporters were shooting at us, he ordered Ḥumayd b. Qaḥṭabah to move forward. Ḥumayd advanced with 100 men carrying arrows and shields, all of them on foot except him. Before long they had marched up to a rampart this side of the trench where certain of Muḥammad’s partisans were ensconced. Ḥumayd’s men forced them in the open and then came to a halt at the wall. Ḥumayd sent word to Ḥāzī that the wall should be razed. Ḥāzī, therefore, sent for laborers, and they razed it, and Ḥumayd’s men got all the way to the trench. Ḥumayd then let Ḥāzī know that they had reached the trench. Ḥāzī sent gates the size of the trench to Ḥumayd so that his troops crossed over on them to the other side. Then they fought a very fierce battle from early morning until late afternoon.

According to al-Ḥārith—Ibn Sa’d—Muḥammad b. ʿUmar: In the company of his cohort Ḥāzī b. Mūṣā moved forward to lay siege to Medina. Muḥammad b. ʿAbdallāh and his supporters came out to meet him, and for several days they battled each other fiercely. A troop from the Juhaynah tribe called the Banū Shujā’ stood steadfastly with Muḥammad b. ʿAbdallāh until they were killed. They were, indeed, doughty fighters.

The account returns to that of ʿUmar.

According to ʿUmar—Azhar: ʿIsā ordered them to throw the camels’ saddlebags into the trench. He also ordered the two gates from Sa’d b. Maṣʿūd’s house at al-Thaniyyah thrown over the trench. The cavalry then crossed, and the opposing forces met near the sluice gates of Khashram,981 where they fought until late afternoon.

According to ʿUmar—Muḥammad b. Yahyā—ʿAbd al-ʿAzīz b. Abī Thābit: Muḥammad went out that day, before noon, to the Dār Marwān. There he performed the ritual ablution and anointed himself as if for burial. Only then did he go forth [to battle].

According to ʿAbd al-ʿAzīz b. Abī Thābit—ʿAbdallāh b. Jaʿfar: I drew near to Muḥammad and said to him, “By the life of my fa-

981. Ṭabarī, Glossarium, s.v. fatḥa.
ther, as I judge the situation, you don’t hold a chance. None of those with you believes in fighting. Leave immediately to meet up with al-Hasan b. Mu‘āwiyyah in Mecca, for he has the greatest part of your partisans with him.” “O Abū Ja‘far,” said Muḥammad, “by God, were I to leave, the people of Medina would be killed. I swear that I shall not turn back until I have killed or been killed. But as far as I’m concerned, you may do as you like, go wherever you wish.” I went with him as far as Dār Ibn Mas‘ūd982 in the camel market. Then I hurried off, making my way toward the oil sellers [section]. Muḥammad went on to al-Thaniyyah, and those who were with him were killed by arrows. When it was time for the afternoon prayer, Muḥammad prayed.

According to `Umar—Muḥammad b. al-Hasan b. Zabālah—Ibrāhīm b. Muḥammad: I saw Muḥammad between the two houses of the Banū Sa‘d. He was wearing a clay-dyed robe983 and mounted on an old packhorse. At his side stood Ibn Kuḍayr, who was begging him to go on to al-Asrah or elsewhere. To this Muḥammad kept answering, “By God, you people will not be afflicted with me twice. Go where you wish; you are quite free to do so.” “Where is there escape from you?” said Ibn Kuḍayr, but then he left, set fire to the stipends register [i.e. that recording the names of Muhammad b. ‘Abdallāh’s partisans], and killed Riyāh. Next he met up with Muḥammad in al-Thaniyyah and fought until he was slain.

According to `Umar—al-Ḥarīth—Ibn Sa‘d—Muḥammad b. `Umar: Ibn Kuḍayr, a descendant of Muṣāb b. al-Zubayr, rebelled with Muḥammad b. ‘Abdallāh. On the day Muḥammad was killed, Ibn Kuḍayr, seeing the disorder among Muḥammad’s partisans and how the sword had exhausted them, asked Muḥammad’s permission to enter Medina. Muḥammad gave his consent but without knowing what Ibn Kuḍayr intended. The latter entered the presence of Riyāh b. Uthmān b. Ḥayyān al-Murrī and his brother and slaughtered the two of them. He went back to tell Muḥammad what he had done and then moved forward and fought until, without delay, he was killed.

---

982. ‘Abdallāh b. Mas‘ūd was a Companion of the Prophet and is cited as the source of many exegetical hadiths. His house stood to the north of the main mosque. *Ep*, s.v. [J.-C. Vadelet]; Wüstefeld, “Medina,” 104.

983. ‘Alayhi jubbatun mumashshaqatun. Tabari, Glossarium, s.v. mashaqa.
The account returns to that of 'Umar.

According to 'Umar—Azhar—his brother: When Ibn Ku'dayr went back, he killed Riyāh and Ibn Muslim b. 'Uqbah.

According to 'Umar—Muḥammad b. Yaḥyā—al-Ḥārith b. Iṣḥāq: Ibn Ku'dayr slit Riyāh’s throat but without finishing him off. Therefore he began beating Riyāh’s head against the wall until he died. Riyāh’s brother, ‘Abbas, a righteous man, was killed with him, and the people held that against Ibn Ku'dayr. The latter then went on to Ibn al-Qasri, who was imprisoned in the Dār Ibn Hishām. Having been alerted, Ibn al-Qasri barricaded the two gates of the Dār against him. Ibn Ku'dayr worked hard against the gates, but those in the prison joined forces to block them. Ibn Ku'dayr could not prevail against them, so he returned to Muḥammad and fought in front of him until he was killed.

According to 'Umar—Miskin b. Ḥabib b. Muḥammad: At the prescribed time Muḥammad prayed the afternoon prayer in the mosque of the Banū al-Dīl in al-Thaniyyah. When he had uttered the concluding formula, he asked for something to drink, and Rabīḥah bt. Aḥī Shākīr of the Quraysh tribe gave him a drink. Then she said to him, “If only I could be a ransom for you! Save yourself!” Muḥammad replied, “Then in Medina not a cock would be left to crow.” He went on, and when he was in the bed of the watercourse of Salc, he dismounted. He hamstrung his mount and the Banū Shu'ā' hamstrung theirs. Each and every one broke his sword scabbard.

Miskin: I saw myself, as a lad, gathering something like 300 dirhams’ worth of ornaments from them. Muḥammad said to them, “You have given me the oath of allegiance, and I am not moving until I am killed. But whoever wishes to go has my permission to do so.” Then Muḥammad turned to Ibn Ku'dayr and asked him whether he had set fire to the stipends register.” “Yes,”
replied Ibn Khudayr, "I feared that on the basis of it people would be seized." Muhammad said, "You did right."

According to 'Umar—Azhar—my two brothers: On that day we put 'Isa's cohort to flight two or three times, without ourselves suffering a reverse. We even heard Yazid986 b. Mu'awiyah b. 'Abdallâh b. Ja'far say, "We've routed them, but what a victory it would have been if only he had had [enough] men!"

According to 'Umar—'Isa: 'Abd al-'Azîz b. 'Abdallâh b. 'Abdallâh b. 'Umar b. al-Khaṭṭâb987 was one of those who were routed and ran away from Muhammad that day. Muḥammad sent after him, and he was brought back. Then the young boys started to shout out after him, "Behold the babbling old fart!"988 Afterwards 'Abd al-'Azîz used to say that the worst thing that ever happened to him was the young boys' taunting.

According to 'Umar—'Isa—a mawlā of Hishâm b. Umârah b. al-Walid b. 'Adî al-Khiyâr: We were with Muhammad, and Hishâm b. Umârah came up to him along with me. He said, "I'm not sure those you see won't desert you. If ever I run away or you are killed or I am killed or we are vanquished, I testify that this servant of mine is to be freed in God's sight." Then, by God, I was with Muhammad when an arrow fell on his shield and split it in two, before sinking into his armor." He turned toward me and said, "Hey there.\" "Here I am," I replied. "Blast your eyes!" he said; "have you ever seen anything like this, what's your name? Do you care more for yourself or for me?" "For you, of course," I responded. At this he said, "You are free in God's sight, so get out of here as fast as you can."

According to 'Umar—Mutawakkil b. Abî al-Fâḥwah—Muḥammad b. 'Abd al-Wâḥid b. 'Abdallâh b. Abî Farwah: We were overlooking the ridge of Sal—there were bedouins of the Juhaynah tribe there as well—when a man climbed up to us holding a spear on which he had stuck a man's head with the throat, liver, and entrails still attached. I found it a terrifying sight. See-

986. Tabari, Addenda et Emendanda, p. DCCXL.
987. 'Abd al-'Azîz b. 'Abdallâh was a great-grandson of the second caliph.
988. Tabari, Glossarium, s.v. baqqâ, where this translation in offered tentatively as ecce garrula cum crepitu ventris. For two proverbial uses of the term baqqâh, see Tabari, I, 759–60.
ing an evil omen in it, the bedouins shied away, fleeing until they reached level ground. The man climbed to the summit and shouted down the mountain to his associates some gibberish in Persian like *kuhban*. His confederates climbed up to him, right to the top of Sal', where they erected a black flag. Then they swooped down the mountain toward Medina and entered it. Asmā bt. Ḥasan b. ʿAbdallāh b. Ḥubaydallāh b. ʿAbbās b. ʿAbd al-Muṭṭalib, the wife of ʿAbdallāh b. Ḥusayn b. ʿAbdallāh b. Ḥubaydallāh b. ʿAbbās, ordered a black veil erected on the minaret of the Messenger of God's mosque. When Muḥammad's confederates saw that, they called out to each other, 'Medina has been entered,' and they fled. Hearing of the people who had entered Medina from the Sal' mountain, Muḥammad said, 'Every people has a mountain that protects them, while our mountain is only a way for people to come at us!'

According to 'Umar—Muḥammad b. Ismā'īl—someone he trusted: The sons of Abū ʿAmr al-Ghifārī opened a way for the wearers of black via the Banū Ghifar. The ʿAbbāsid forces entered that way, coming up on Muḥammad's partisans from behind.

According to 'Umar—Muḥammad b. Yahyā—ʿAbd al-ʿAzīz b. ʿImrān: On that day Muḥammad shouted at Ḥumayd b. Qaḥṭabah, 'If you are a cavalryman and are proud of so being above all the people of Khurasān, then fight a duel with me. I am Muḥammad b. ʿAbdallāh.' 'I know very well who you are,' responded Ḥumayd; 'you are a nobleman and the son of a nobleman; you are a sharīf and the son of a sharīf.' No, by God, Abū ʿAbdallāh, I shall not duel with you while from these throngs but one man still stands before me. When I have dealt with that lot, then I swear that I shall duel with you.'

According to 'Umar—Uthmān b. al-Mundhir b. Muṣʿab b. Urwah b. al-Zubayr—a man from the Banū Ṭhaʿlabah b. Saʿd: I was in al-Thaniyyah on the day Muḥammad b. ʿAbdallāh b. Ḥasan was killed. With him was Ibn Khudayr, to whom Ibn

989. The Persian means "mountain guards." As an alternative, the *Addenda et Emendanda*, p. DCCXL, give *kūhiyyān*, which would mean "mountain dwellers."

990. The term *sharīf* is applied to those who claim descent from the Prophet Muḥammad.

Qaḥṭabah began offering the guarantee of safe-conduct, reluctant to see him die. But, dismounting, Ibn Khudayr continued to attack people with his sword, while quoting the following lines:

Give him to drink neither sour milk nor sweet,
if you find him not swift and big-strided.
Full of liveliness, he swallows the hard ground
like the wolf chases prey that comes near.
Overtaking the tracks as though they turn back,
and the veil on the sun’s disc as it sinks.

He mingled with the people, and someone struck Ibn Khudayr a piercing blow on his buttock. He withdrew to his associates, ripped off a piece of cloth to wind around his back, and then returned to the fight. This time someone hit him on the eyesocket brow, pushing the sword into the eye itself. Ibn Khudayr sank to the ground, and people rushed at him, slashing his head. When he was killed, Muḥammad got down off his horse and fought standing over his corpse until he himself was killed.

According to ‘Umar—Makhlad b. Yaḥyā b. Ḥādir b. al-Muhājir al-Bāhili—al-Faḍl b. Sulaymān, the mawlā of the Banū Nu’mayr—his brother (a brother of his had been killed with Muḥammad): When the Khurāsānīs caught sight of Ibn Khudayr, they shouted to each other, “Khudayr has come! Khudayr has come!” Because of that they took off in all directions.

According to ‘Umar—Hishām b. Muḥammad b. ‘Urwah b. Hishām b. ‘Urwah—Māhān b. Bakht, Qaḥṭabah’s mawlā: Ibn Khudayr’s head was brought to us, but it contained so many wounds we could not even begin to carry it. It looked like an eggplant that had been ripped apart, but we stuck most of it back together.

According to ‘Umar—Azhar b. Saʿīd: Beholding the black standard on the minaret of the mosque undermined the morale of Muḥammad’s partisans. Ḥumayd b. Qaḥṭabah came against

992. Dhā may’ātīn. Ṭabarī, Glossarium, s.v. mā’a.
993. Fa-darabahu dāribun ‘alā ialiyatihī fa-khallahā. Ṭabarī, Addenda et Emdanda, p. DCCXL.
994. Ḥisfahānī, Maqātil, 269, gives this name as al-Fudayl b. Sulaymān.
Muḥammad from the alley of Ashja'\(^{995}\) and killed him unawares. He then took his head and brought it to ʿĪsā. Along with Muḥammad, Humayd killed many other men.

According to ʿUmar—Abū al-Ḥasan al-Ḥadhdhāʾ—Masʿūd al-Raḥḥāl: On that day I saw Muḥammad plunging into the fight by himself. Indeed, I was watching him when a man struck him a sword blow just beside his right earlobe. Muḥammad fell to his knees, and they joined forces against him.\(^{996}\) Humayd b. Qaḥṭabah shouted, "Don't kill him," so they held off, and Humayd himself came and cut off Muḥammad's head.

According to ʿUmar—Muḥammad b. Yaḥyā—al-Ḥārith b. Iṣḥāq: On that day Muḥammad fell to his knees, trying to defend himself and saying, "Woe to you! I am descended from your Prophet, yet beset by difficulties and deeply wronged."\(^{997}\)

According to ʿUmar—Muḥammad b. Yahyā—Ibn Abī Thābit—ʿAbdallāh b. Jaʿfar: Ibn Qaḥṭabah pierced his chest and knocked him down. Then he dismounted, cut off his head, and brought it to ʿĪsā.

According to ʿUmar—Muḥammad b. Ismāʿīl—Abū al-Ḥajjāj al-Minqārī: I saw Muḥammad on that day—of all God's creatures he most closely resembled the tales told of Ḥamzah b. ʿAbd al-Muṭṭalib\(^{998}\)—cutting people sharply with his sword and killing all who drew near him so long as he carried it. By God, indeed, his thrusts continued unabated until a man shot an arrow at him. I believe I actually saw him turn first red then grey. Suddenly the cavalry descended upon us, and Muḥammad came to a standstill at the side of a wall. People held back from him, and as he felt death overcome him, he leaned against his sword and broke it.

According to ʿUmar—Muḥammad b. Ismāʿīl—his grandfather: Muḥammad carried the sword of God's Messenger, Dhū al-Faqār.\(^{999}\)

---

\(^{995}\) Ashja' b. Rayth were a clan of the Ghatafān tribe. Caskel, ʿAmharat annasab, I, 92, 135, II, 201; Ibn Hazm, Jamharat ansāb al-ʿarab, 249–50.

\(^{996}\) Wa-ta`awaw/tagḥawaw ʿalayhi. Tabari, Addenda et Emendanda, p. DCCXL.

\(^{997}\) Muhrijun wa-maglimun. Ibid.

\(^{998}\) Ibid. Ḥamzah was the Prophet's uncle whose legendary battle exploits were memorialized in various epic recensions. See note 859.

\(^{999}\) This sword, which Muḥammad obtained as booty in the battle of Badr, became the property of ʿAlī but eventually passed into ʿAbbāsid possession. El
According to 'Umar—Hurmuṣ Abū ‘Alī, the mawlā of the Bāḥilah [tribe]1000—'Amr b. al-Mutawakkil, whose mother served Fāṭimah bt. Ḥusayn: On the day he was killed, Muḥammad carried the Prophet's sword, Dhū al-Faqār. When he sensed death approaching, he gave his sword to a merchant who was with him and to whom he owed a debt in the amount of 400 dinārs. Muḥammad said to the man, "Take this sword. You will never meet any member of the family of Abū Ṭālib who will not take it and give you your just due." The sword stayed in the merchant's possession until Jaʿfar b. Sulaymān1001 was appointed governor of Medina. Jaʿfar was told about the sword, and, summoning the man, he took the sword from him and give him 400 dinārs. It stayed with him until al-Mahdī became Caliph where Jaʿfar continued as governor of Medina. News of the sword's whereabouts reached al-Mahdī, and he took it. It then passed to Mūsā,1002 who tried it out on a dog,1003 and the sword broke in pieces.

According to 'Umar—'Abd al-Malik b. Qurayb al-ʿAṣmaʿī:1004 I saw [Hārūn] al-Rashīd, the Commander of the Faithful, in Tūs,1005 girded with a sword. He said to me, "O ʿAṣmaʿī, would you not like me to show you Dhū al-Faqār?" "Yes," I said, "may God make me your ransom." He said, "Unsheathe this sword of

---

1000. A component tribe of Qays whose traditional lands lay along the route between Mecca and Riyāḍ. El², s.v. [W. Caskel]; Caskel, Gamharat an-nasab, I, 92, 137, II, 220.


1002. Mūsā, i.e., Mūsā b. Muḥammad al-Ḥādī ilā al-Ḥaqī, son of al-Mahdī, was the fourth ʿAbbāsid caliph and reigned briefly from 169/785 to 170/786. El², s.v. al-Ḥādī ila ʾl-Ḥaqī [D. Sourdel].

1003. Dogs are considered unclean under Muslim law, and in popular belief they have a long-standing association with evil spirits.


1005. Tūs was a town and a district in the Naysābūr quarter of Khurāsān. El¹ s.v. (V. Minorsky); Le Strange, Lands, 388–90; Cornu, Répertoires, 155.
mine." I did so, and I saw on it eighteen notches like vertebrae (faqārah).\textsuperscript{1006}

According to `Umar—Abū `Āsim al-Nabil—the brother of al-Fadl b. Sulaymān al-Numayri: We were with Muḥammad when 40,000 troops encircled us, surrounding us like a tract of black stones. I said to him, "If you were to charge at them, they would scatter before you." "Surely," he said, "the Commander of the Faithful does not charge in such a way. Were he to do so, he would have nothing left." However, we kept repeating that to him, so that finally he launched an attack, but they pressed in upon him and killed him.

According to `Umar—ʿAbdallāh b. Muḥammad b. ʿAbdallāh b. Salm, known as Ibn al-Bawwāb, successor to al-Fadl b. al-Rabī` as chamberlain for Ḥārūn [al-Rashīd], a cultured and learned person—his father—al-Aslami, i.e., ʿAbdallāh b. ʿĀmir: Muḥammad said to me when we were fighting ʿĪsā with him, "A rain cloud is enveloping us; if it showers us, we will be victorious. If it passes over us to ʿĪsā's forces, then look for my blood on the oil stones." Before long, by God, a cloud was right on top of us. As it began to shift, I exclaimed, "It's doing so!" Then it passed right over us and hit ʿĪsā and his confederates. From that point on things were as bad as could be until I saw him lying dead among the oil stones.\textsuperscript{1007}

According to ʿUmar—Ibrāhīm b. Muḥammad b. ʿAbdallāh b. Abī al-Karrām b. ʿAbdallāh:\textsuperscript{1008} About the time of the afternoon prayer ʿĪsā said to Ḥumayd b. Qaḥṭabah, "I see that you've been taking your time with this fellow; now put Ḥamzah b. Mālik\textsuperscript{1009} in charge of warring against him." "By God! Though you may wish that," said Ḥumayd, "I won't leave you while I'm still fighting men and have scented victory in the offing." He then redoubled his efforts until Muḥammad was slain.

\textsuperscript{1006} According to some early Muslim traditions, the sword was made of material from Paradise and was passed down among the prophets who preceded Muḥammad. Rubin, "Prophets and Progenitors," 47.

\textsuperscript{1007} Wüstenfeld, "Medina," 146.

\textsuperscript{1008} Tabari, Addenda et Emendanda, p. DCCXL.

\textsuperscript{1009} Ḥamzah b. Mālik (d. 181/797), the son of Mālik b. al-Haytham al-Khuzaʿī, was head of the šurtah, or police guard, for the caliphs al-Mansūr and al-Mahdi. He was appointed governor of Sijīstān in 159/775–76 and of Khurāsān in 176/792–93. Tabari, III, 459, 626; Crone, Slaves, 181.
According to `Umar—Jawwād b. Ghālib b. Mūsā, the mawlā of the Banū ʿĪl—Humayd, the mawlā of Muḥammad b. Abī al-ʿAbbās: On that day ʿĪsā had doubts about Humayd b. Qaḥtābah, who was in charge of the cavalry. He said to him, “O Humayd, I don’t see you doing your utmost.” “Do you have doubts about me?” retorted Humayd. “By God, when I see Muḥammad I shall give him a death strike with my sword or be killed before I reach him.” Humayd then passed Muḥammad when he had already been killed and struck a blow with his sword in order to fulfill his oath.

According to `Umar—Yaʿqūb b. al-Qāsim—ʿAlī b. Abī Ṭālib: Muḥammad was killed after the late afternoon prayer on Monday, 14 Ramaḍān.

According to `Umar—Ayyūb b. ʿUmar—his father: ʿĪsā sent someone to break into the prison, and we were brought before him while the battle between Muḥammad and ʿĪsā was still going on. We stayed where we had been thrown down before him until Muḥammad’s head was brought to ʿĪsā. I said to my brother Yūsuf, “He will call upon us to identify him, but we will not do so for him, for we can [pretend to] be afraid that we could be wrong.” When the head was brought ʿĪsā said, “Would you recognize Muḥammad?” “Yes,” we said. “Take a look,” said ʿĪsā; “is this he?” I cut in before Yusuf, saying, “I see a great deal of blood and wounds but, by God, I cannot be sure that it is he.” He released us from the irons, and we stayed with him through the entire night until morning. Eventually, ʿĪsā gave me jurisdiction over the area that lies between Mecca and Medina, a post that I held until Jaʿfar b. Sulaymān arrived. At this point Jaʿfar had me brought down to him and placed me under his own jurisdiction.

According to `Umar—ʿAlī b. Ismāʿīl b. ʿAlī b. Mitham—Abū Kaʿb: I was in ʿĪsā’s presence at the time when he had Muḥammad killed and his head was placed before him. ʿĪsā turned to his associates and said, “What do you say about this fellow?” Those present slandered Muḥammad, but one of ʿĪsā’s army commanders turned to them and said, “You have lied, by God, and spoken falsehoods. It was not for these reasons that we fought him. He set himself in opposition to the Commander of the Faithful and...
sowed dissension among the Muslims, even if he did rigorously keep the fast and pass the night in prayer.” At these words those people fell silent.

According to 'Umar—Ibn al-Bawwab 'Abdallāh b. Muḥammad—his father—al-Aslami: Someone reached Abū Ja'far with a report that Muhammad had fled. But the caliph called him a liar and declared, “We do not put the People of the House (ahl al-bayt) to flight.”

According to 'Umar—'Abdallāh b. Rāshid b. Yazīd—Abū al-Hajjāj the camel driver: I was standing next to Abū Ja'far, as he questioned me about Muhammad's revolt, when news reached him that 'Īsā had been defeated. He sat up from a reclining position and struck his prayer rug with a stick he was carrying. “That cannot be,” he exclaimed. “What would become of the games of our young lads there on the minbars or of the gossiping chatter of the women? I cannot survive this.”

According to 'Umar—Muḥammad b. al-Ḥasan—one of his associates: An arrow hit Abū al-Qalammas on the knee, the head becoming embedded. He worked at it but to no avail. Then someone told him to leave it alone until it began to fester, when it would come out. Therefore he let it be. When the enemy forces went looking for him after the rout, he had only gotten as far as the stony tract (al-Ḥarrah), because what hit him in the knee had slowed him down. But he kept working at the arrowhead until he extracted it. He then fell to his knees and emptied his quiver, shooting at them until they sheered off from him. Thus he caught up with his associates and was saved.

According to 'Umar—Muḥammad b. al-Ḥasan—'Abdallāh b. 'Umar b. al-Qāsim: After our defeat that day, we were [standing around] in a group that included Abū al-Qalammas. I turned to him because suddenly he was overwhelmed with laughter. “By God,” I said, “this is no place for laughter!” But lowering my glance, I saw one of the defeated soldiers whose shirt had been cut

---

1011. See note 899.
1012. A Qur'ānic phrase that has come to designate the family of the Prophet Muḥammad, whether narrowly conceived as applying only to the 'Alids or, more broadly, as embracing the Ṭalibids, 'Abbāsids, and others. EFP, s.v. (I. Goldziher, C. Van Arendonk, and A. S. Tritton); Bosworth, “Al-Maqrizi’s Epistle,” 42–43; Daniel, “Anonymous ‘History,’ ” 427–29.
to shreds, only its collar\textsuperscript{1013} remaining. His breast was completely bare and, though he was quite unaware of it, even his genitals were in plain sight. Abū al-Qalammas' guffaws made me start to laugh.

According to `Umar—īsā—his father: Abū al-Qalammas stayed hidden in al-Fur\textsuperscript{1014} remaining there for some time. Then one of his slaves assaulted him and shattered his skull with a rock. The slave subsequently went to one of Abū Qalammas' concubines and said, "I have killed your master. Come to me now and I'll marry you." "Wait a moment," she said, "and I shall prepare myself for you." So he gave her some time, but she went straight to the authorities and informed on him. The slave was therefore seized and his own skull shattered.

According to `Umar—Maḥmūd b. Maʿmar b. Abī al-Shadāʾid [al-Fazārī]—his father: When īsā's cavalry contingent entered [Medina] via the gorge of the Banū Fazārah\textsuperscript{1015} and Muḥammad was killed, one group rushed recklessly against Abū al-Shadāʾid. They killed him and took his head.\textsuperscript{1016} His daughter, al-Naʿimah bt. Abī al-Shadāʾid, cried out, "Alas for the [fine] men!" One of the men in the army asked her, "Who are your menfolk?" "The Banū Fazārah," she said. "By God," he replied, "had I known that, I would not have entered your house. But don't be afraid; I am kin of yours from the Bāhīlah tribe." He then gave her a snip from his turban, and she fastened it to her door. Abū al-Shadāʾid's head was brought to īsā while Ibn Abī al-Karrām and Muḥammad b. Lūṭ b. al-Mughirah b. Nawfal b. al-Ḥārith b. ābd al-Muṭṭalib\textsuperscript{1017} were with him. They both intoned the formula "We are God's and to Him is our return" and said, "Of the people of Medina there is no one left. This is the head of Abū al-Shadāʾid Fāliḥ b. Maʿmar, a blind man of the Banū Fazārah."

\textsuperscript{1013} Jurubbān, from Persian girībān or girbān, is defined by Lane, 
Lexicon, II, 403, as the neck opening of a shirt, the part upon which the buttons are sewed. According to Dozy, 
Supplément, I, 181, it was the part of the shirt that covered the buttocks.

\textsuperscript{1014} Al-Fur' was a city between Mecca and Medina, at a distance of eight posting
stations from the latter. Cornu, 
Répertoires, 73; Yāqūt, 
Buldān, IV, 252.

\textsuperscript{1015} Fazārah was a component tribe of Dhubyān b. Baghīd. Caskel, 

\textsuperscript{1016} See note 775.

\textsuperscript{1017} His great-grandfather Nawfal b. al-Ḥārith was the Prophet's cousin.
‘Isā commanded a herald to proclaim: "Whoever comes with a head will have his own head struck off."

According to ‘Umar—‘Ali b. Zādān—‘Abdallāh b. Barqā: I saw one of ‘Isā’s army commanders come at the head of a group to ask where Ibn Hurmuz1018 abode was. We directed him there, and Ibn Hurmuz came out wearing a thin white shirt.1019 They had their army commander get down, and they transported Ibn Hurmuz on the commander’s nag. Thus they went forth conducting him in procession until they had brought him into ‘Isā’s presence. But ‘Isā did nothing to alarm him.

According to ‘Umar—Qudāmah b. Muḥammad:1020 ‘Abdallāh b. Yazīd b. Hurmuz and Muḥammad b. ‘Ajlān rebelled with Muḥammad. When the fighting came, each of the two girded on a longbow. We assumed1021 they wanted to show people that they were quite fit to do so.1022

According to ‘Umar—‘Isā—Husayn b. Yazīd: Ibn Hurmuz was brought to ‘Isā after Muḥammad was killed, and ‘Isā said, "O shaykh, shouldn’t your good sense have kept you from rebelling with those who rebelled?" Ibn Hurmuz replied, "It was disaster that engulfed the people and engulfed us with them." "Follow a straight course [i.e., watch your step in the future]," said ‘Isā.

According to ‘Umar—Muḥammad b. al-Ḥasan b. Zabālah—Mālik b. Anas: I would go to see Ibn Hurmuz, and he would command a slave girl to bolt the door and to lower the curtain. Then he would reminisce about the early days of this ummah1023 and weep until his beard was wet. When later he rebelled with Muḥammad, someone said to him, "By God, there’s no fight left

1018. Abū Bakr ‘Abdallāh b. Yazīd b. Hurmuz al-‘Aṣamm (d. 148/765) was a muḥaddith and faqīh of Medina known to be cautious in his legal pronouncements but a vigorous opponent of heterodoxy. Dhahabi, Siyar, VI, 380, recounts how on one occasion Muḥammad b. ‘Ajlān kissed Ibn Hurmuz’s head in gratitude for the latter’s instruction. 1019. ‘Alayhi qamīsun riyaţun. Ṭabārī, Glossarium, s.v. rayt. 1020. Qudāmah b. Muḥammad b. Qudāmah b. Khashram b. Yasar al-‘Ashja‘ī was a muḥaddith of Medina. Ibn Ḥajar, Tahdhib, VIII, 326–27. 1021. Following 1brāhīm’s edition, VII, 599, with fa-zanannā. 1022. Note a in the Leiden text offers the explanation that "they were, of course, educated men who were unaccustomed to carrying bows." 1023. A term that signifies the Muslim community as a religio-political unit.
The Events of the Year 145

in you!" "I'm well aware of that," he replied, "yet some ignorant fellow may see me and follow my example."

According to Umar—İsâ—Muḥammad b. Zayd: When Muḥammad was killed, the sky was rent with a rainstorm unlike anything I've ever seen. İsâ's herald cried out, "No one in the army should spend the night in Medina except Kathîr b. Ḫuṣayn and his men. İsâ reached his encampment in al-Ĵurf and stayed there until morning. Then he sent news of the victory [to Abû Ja'far] with al-Qāsim b. Ḥasan b. Zayd and sent Muḥammad's head with Ibn Abî al-Karrâm.

According to Umar—Muḥammad b. Yahyâ—al-Ĥârîth b. Ishâq: Morning found Muḥammad still lying where he had been killed. His sister Zaynab bt. 'Abdallâh and his daughter Fâṭimah sent word to İsâ, "You killed this man and have no further need of him. With your permission, we shall inter him." İsâ sent word back to them, "As for what you mentioned, cousins, which bears upon what happened to Muḥammad: I did not order it, nor did I know of it, so inter him as two upright women would." They sent1024 for Muḥammad, and he was brought to them. It is said that the slash in his neck was stuffed with a corresponding amount of cotton. He was buried in al-Baqî cemetery, his tomb facing the alley of 'Ali b. Abî Ṭâlib's house, at the entrance to the main road or thereabouts. İsâ sent some flags, and one was placed on the door of Asmâ' bt. Ḥasan b. 'Abdallâh, another on al-‘Abbâs b. 'Abdallâh b. al-Ĥârîth's, another on Muḥammad b. 'Abd al-‘Azîz al-Zuhri's door, another on Ubaydallâh b. Muḥammad b. Şafwân's, and yet another on the door of Abû 'Amr al-Ghifârî's house. His herald proclaimed, "Whoever enters under one of these flags or enters one of these houses is under our protection." The heavens poured down copious rain, but in the morning the people went peacefully about their marketplaces. İsâ began to go back and forth to the mosque from al-Ĵurf, remaining in Medina for several days. Then he left for Mecca on the morning of 19 Ramaḍân.1025

1024. Following Ibrahim's edition, VII, 600, fa-ba'athană.
1025. Saturday, December 22, 762.
According to `Umar—Azhar b. Sa`id: The day after Muḥammad was killed, ʿIsā gave permission for his burial but commanded that his associates be gibbeted between Thaniyyat al-Wadāʿ and Dār `Umar b. `Abd al-ʿAzīz. Azhar said, “I saw them in two rows. ʿIsā entrusted Ibn Khudayr's stake to the one guarding it, but some people carried it away during the night and buried him before anyone could stop them. The other bodies remained gibbeted for three days. Then the people began to find them noisome, so ʿIsā ordered them to be thrown on the open area (mafraq) in Sal, which was the graveyard of the Jews. They were not left there, however, but were subsequently thrown into a trench at the base of Dhubāb.”

According to `Umar—ʿIsā b. ʿAbdallāh—his mother, Umm Husayn bt. ʿAbdallāh b. Muḥammad b. ʿAlī b. Husayn: I said to my uncle Jaʿfar b. Muḥammad, "May I be your ransom, what happened to Muḥammad b. ʿAbdallāh?" He said, “Muḥammad was killed near the Bayt Rūmi in the civil disorder that he instigated. His brother was killed in Iraq by the same father when the hooves of his horse were in water.”

According to ʿUmar—ʿIsā—his father: Hamzah b. ʿAbdallāh b. Muḥammad b. ʿAlī took part in the uprising with Muḥammad. Although his uncle Jaʿfar forbade him to do so, Hamzah remained one of Muḥammad's staunchest supporters. Jaʿfar kept saying to Hamzah, “By God, he will be killed,” and himself played no active part.

According to ʿUmar—ʿIsā—Ibn Abī al-Karrām: ʿIsā sent me to Abū Jaʿfar, accompanied by 100 soldiers, with the head of Muḥammad. When we reached a point overlooking al-Najaf, we shouted Allāhu akbar. ʿĀmir b. Ismāʿīl was in Wāṣīt besieging...
Hārūn b. Sa’d al-‘Ilī at that time, so Abū Ja‘far asked al-Rabī‘, "Woe to you, why this shout of Allāhu akbar?" "That is Ibn Abī al-Karrām," said al-Rabī‘, "who has come with the head of Muḥammad b. ‘Abdallāh." Abū Ja‘far said, "Allow him to enter along with ten of those who are with him." Al-Rabī‘ therefore gave me permission, and I set the head before the caliph on a shield. Abū Ja‘far asked, "What members of his family were killed with him?" "No one," I said, "by God, not a man." "God be praised, so this is he?" exclaimed Abū Ja‘far. He then lifted Muhammad's head up to al-Rabī‘ and asked, "What did his associate who was here earlier tell us?" Al-Rabī‘ replied, "He suggested that a large number of them were killed." "No," I insisted, "by God, not a one."

According to ʿUmar—ʿAlī b. Ismā‘il b. Ṣāliḥ b. Mitham: When Abū Ja‘far was brought Muhammad's head while in al-Kūfah, he ordered it to be carried about on a white plate. I saw it when it had become brown and spotted. That evening the caliph had it sent to the outlying provinces.

According to ʿUmar—ʿAbdallāh b. ʿUmar b. Ḥabīb of the people of Yanbū‘: When Abū Ja‘far was brought Muḥammad’s head while in al-Kūfah, he ordered it to be carried about on a white plate. I saw it when it had become brown and spotted. That evening the caliph had it sent to the outlying provinces.

According to ʿUmar: ʿĪsā b. Ibrāhīm, Ibn ʿAbdallāh b. Ḥamzah b. Muṣʿab b. ʿUmārah b. Ḥamzah b. Muṣʿab, Muḥammad b. Yaḥyā, Muḥammad b. al-Ḥasan b. Zabālah and others quoted to me the poem of

and, along with Shu‘bah b. Kathīr al-Māzinī, killed him at Būṣīr. He died in Baghdad, and Abū Ja‘far offered prayers over his corpse. Ṭabarī, III, 46, 49, 380; Kindī, Wulāh, 110; ʿAffā, XVI, 590; Caskel, Ğamharat an-nasab, I, 262, II, 160.

1032. Hārūn b. Sa’d al-‘Ilī was a Kūfī muḥaddith, faqīḥ, and poet who had earlier supported Zayd b. ‘Ali’s revolt. He died in hiding about 150/768. Zirikli, Al-ʿĀlam, VIII, 60; Van Arendonk, Débuts, 309, 314 = Opkomst, 282, 287; GAS, I, 560; Ibn Hajar, Tahdhib, XI, 6, 7.

1033. Abū Nūḥ ʿĪsā b. Ibrāhīm b. Nūḥ (d. 255/869) was the secretary of al-Fatḥ b. Khāqān, an adopted son of the caliph al-Muʿtaṣim, who served in several important capacities under his successor, al-Mutawakkil, and was murdered with him. Ṭabarī, III, 1462.
‘Abdallāh b. Muṣ'ab b. Thābit b. ‘Abdallāh b. al-Zubayr\textsuperscript{1034} who, elegizing Muḥammad, recited:

You weep for Mudillah,\textsuperscript{1035} as they were hunted, lassoed by ʿĪsā,\textsuperscript{1036} who aimed a shrewd hit at ʿUthmān.\textsuperscript{1037}

Why not for the Mahdi, and the two sons of Muṣ'ab, did you shed your tears, pouring them out, flowing like rain?

And for Ibrāhīm’s loss when there parted from him the throngs and [alone] he faced his opponents?

But your tears have flowed astray, and you arouse in me the torments of an emotion evoking sorrows.

By God, midwives have never delivered the like of them, keenest and loftiest in lineage and status.

First to rise up and first to speak, rejecting slander from the well-springs of justice.

There, were you to gouge out, without disfigurement, your eyes from anguish, you’d be publicly excused.

A calamity, by your life, if the like struck Mayṭān,\textsuperscript{1038} Mayṭān would be split open by it.

Ibn Muṣ'ab said:

O my two friends, stop scolding and know that I am not in this more blameworthy than you.

Stop at the son [descendant] of the Prophet’s tomb and offer greeting.

There’s no harm in stopping and offering greeting

[256] To a tomb that contains the best man of his time in rank and good temper and generous spirit.

\textsuperscript{1034} ʿA'id al-Kalb ʿAbdallāh b. Muṣ'ab [d. 184/800] served various posts under the caliphs al-Mahdī and al-Hāḍī and was governor of Medina and the Yemen for Hārūn al-Rashīd. His son, Abū ‘Abdallāh Muṣ'ab al-Zubayrī, was a noted genealogist of the Quraysh. Saḍr, Wāfi, XVII, 618–19; Zambaur, Manuel, 25; GAS, I, 271–72, II, 647–48; Zirikli, A’lām, IV, 138.

\textsuperscript{1035} Ṭabarī, Addenda et Emendanda, p. DCCXLI, gives this vocalization although the name has been previously vocalized at III, 185, as Mudallah in a reference to ʿAbdallāh b. al-Ḥasan.

\textsuperscript{1036} I.e., ʿĪsā b. Kuḍayr.

\textsuperscript{1037} I.e., ʿUthmān b. Muḥammad b. Khālid b. al-Zubayr, the son of Abū Ja'far’s former governor of Medina.

\textsuperscript{1038} Taking the reading in note 1 of the Leiden text, which is the name of a mountain in the vicinity of Medina. Yaqūt, Buldān V, 243–44.
A man who refuted with justice the injustice of our land and wiped out monstrous deeds and gave graciously.

He neither avoided the path’s goal nor swerved from it; he did not open his mouth with vile speech.

Had fortune [good and bad] magnified anything between the Prophet’s time and his, then you would be the one glorified in him.

Or allowed anyone to enjoy well-being before him, the goal of it would be that he should be made safe.

They sacrificed in Ibrāhim the finest victim, his days were severed as was he.

A hero who by himself plunged into their adversities, neither wavering, nor trembling, nor yielding

Until the swords passed into him. Perhaps the swords were their deaths; perhaps.

A sacrifice were the Banū Ḥasan. Their sacred things have been laid bare among us, their plunder has been scattered.

In their homes their women weep, cooing like doves when doves trill.

They used killing them to seek favor and see it as an honor for themselves in the Imām’s eyes and as an advantage.

By God, had the Prophet Muhammad witnessed, [God’s blessing on the Prophet and peace]

His ummah pointing spears at his son [descendant] until blood drips from their spearheads,

In truth, he would know for sure that they had squandered this kinship and made lawful what is forbidden.

According to ʿUmar—Ismāʿīl b. Jaʿfar b. Ibrāhīm—Mūsā b. Abdallāh b. Ḥasan: One night I left our dwellings in Suwayqah—which was before Muḥammad b. ʿAbdallāh’s revolt—when suddenly I saw some women who looked as if they had come from our houses. I was concerned about them, so to see

1039. [La] ṭarahān. Ṣabhār, Addenda et Emendanda, p. DCCXI.
1040. Kanat ḥuṭaḥahum al-suṣūfū. Ibid.
1041. Suwayqah was an area in Medina where the family of ʿAli b. Abī Ṭalib lived. Yaḥṣū, Buldān, III, 286–87.
where they were heading, I followed them as far as the outskirts of al-Ḥumayrā\textsuperscript{1042} toward al-Ghars.\textsuperscript{1043} One of them then turned to me and said:

Suwayqah, once occupied, is now ruined.

Now in the evening has desolation afflicted it.\textsuperscript{1044}

I then realized that they were jinn\textsuperscript{1045} so I went back.

According to `Umar—\'Īsā: When \'Īsā b. Mūsā killed Muḥammad he seized all the assets of the Hasanids, and Abū Ja'far subsequently declared this lawful.

According to `Umar—Ayyūb b. \textsuperscript{1046} `Umar: Ja'far b. Muḥammad\textsuperscript{1047} met Abū Ja'far and said, “O Commander of the Faithful give me back my land grant, the spring of Abū Ziyād, so that I may eat from its palm boughs.” “How dare you speak in such a manner!” retorted the caliph. “By God, I shall really give you a bad time.” Ja'far b. Muḥammad replied, “Don't be too hasty with me. I have already reached sixty-three years of age, the age when my father and my grandfather and\textsuperscript{1048} 'Alī b. Abī Ṭālīb died. May I thus be held accountable if I have ever caused you a moment's unease or, if I should outlive you, if I do so to the one who comes after you.” So Abū Ja'far had sympathy for him and forgave him.

According to `Umar—Hishām b. Ibrāhīm b. Hishām b. Rāshid: Abū Ja'far did not return the spring of Abū Ziyād before his death, but eventually al-Mahdī gave it back to Ja'far b. Muḥammad's descendants.

According to `Umar—Hishām b. Ibrāhīm: When Muḥammad was killed, Abū Ja'far ordered a sea embargo against the people of Medina. Nothing was transported to them from the area of al-

\textsuperscript{1042} Al-Ḥumayrā' was a date-palm grove near Medina. Yaqūt, 
\textit{Buldān}, II, 306.\textsuperscript{1043} Wādī al-Ghars lay between Ma'din al-Naqrah and Fadak. “Ghars” was also the name of a spring in Medina whose water was blessed by the Prophet. He asked 'Ali that his corpse be washed with it before burial. Yaqūt, \textit{Buldān}, IV, 193.\textsuperscript{1044} \textit{Laqad amsat ajadda bihd al-khardbu}. Ţabarī, \textit{Glossarium}, s.v. \textit{jadda}.
\textsuperscript{1045} \textit{Sākini al-ard}. Ţabarī, \textit{Glossarium}, s.v. \textit{sakana}.
\textsuperscript{1046} On this passage see Nagel, “Bericht,” 257–58.\textsuperscript{1047} I.e., Ja'far al-Ṣādiq.
\textsuperscript{1048} Ibrāhīm's edition, VII, 603, offers the alternate reading “and my forefather, 'Ali b. Abī Ṭālīb,” which would satisfy those traditions that place the death date of Ja'far al-Ṣādiq's grandfather 'Alī b. Husayn Zayn al-'Abidin well short of the age of sixty-three.
Jār \(^{1049}\) until al-Mahdī became caliph and lifted the embargo, permitting transport.

According to `Umar—Muhammad b. Ja'far b. Ibrāhīm—his mother, Umm Salamah bt. Muhammad b. Taḥāh b. ‘Abdallāh b. ‘Abd al-Raḥmān b. Abi Bakr, the wife of Mūsā b. ‘Abdallāh: The sons of the Makhzūmī woman, \(^{1050}\) i.e., ‘Īsā, \(^{1051}\) Sulaymān \(^{1052}\) and Idrīs, \(^{1053}\) sons of ‘Abdallāh b. Ḥasan quarreled with the sons of Muḥammad b. ‘Abdallāh b. Ḥasan about ‘Abdallāh’s legacy, saying, “Your father Muhammad was killed and ‘Abdallāh had made him his heir.” \(^{1054}\) They took the dispute to al-Ḥasan b. Zayd \(^{1055}\) who, in turn, wrote to the Commander of the Faithful, Abū Ja’far, about the matter. The caliph replied as follows: “When this letter of mine reaches you, make them the heirs of their grandfather. I return their assets to them in recognition of their relationship and to protect their kinship connection.”

According to `Umar—‘Īsā: Among those of the Hāshimites who rebelled with Muḥammad were al-Ḥasan, Yazid, and Sāliḥ, the sons of Mu‘āwiyyah b. ‘Abdallāh b. Abī Taḥlib, and Ḥusayn and ‘Īsā, the sons of Zayd b. ‘Ali b. Ḥusayn b. ‘Ali b. Abī Taḥlib. \(^{1056}\)
According to ʿUmar—ʿĪsā: I heard that Abū Jaʿfar used to say, “Whoever would have believed that the sons of Zayd b. ʿAlī would join the uprising when we had killed their father’s killer just as he killed Zayd b. ʿAlī, gibbeted him just as he did and consigned him to fire just as he consigned Zayd b. ʿAlī.” Other rebels were Ḥamzah b. ʿAbdallāh b. Muḥammad b. ʿAlī b. Ḥusayn b. ʿAlī b. Abī Ṭālib, and ʿAlī and Zayd, the sons of Ḥasan b. Zayd b. al-Ḥasan b. ʿAlī b. Abī Ṭālib.


According to Ḥašā: Abū Jaʿfar said to Jaʿfar b. Iṣḥāq, “Who is this al-Murağījā? God do such and such to him!” Jaʿfar b. Iṣḥāq said, “O Commander of the Faithful, that one is my son. By God, if you want me to sever relations with him, I shall certainly do so.” Among those of the Banū ʿAbd Shams1058 who rebelled was Muḥammad b. ʿAbdallāh b. ʿAmr b. Saʿīd b. al-ʿĀṣ b. Umayyah b. ʿAbd Shams.


1057. A descendant of the Prophet’s cousin Jaʿfar b. Abī Ṭālib. 1058. ʿAbd Shams was a clan of Quraysh. Caskel, Camharat an-nasab, I, 4, 8, II, 131; Guillaume, Life of Muḥammad, 45, 58 = Ibn Iṣḥāq, Sirāḥ, 68, 87. 1059. ʿAbdāl b. Kathīr al-Thaqīfī was a Meccan muḥaddith [although born in al-Baṣra] who died about 170/786–87. ʿAlī b. Ṣafādī, Wāfī, XVI, 613; Dahabi, Siyār, VII, 106; Ibn Ḥajar, Tahdhib, V, 87–89. 1060. Abū ʿAbdallāh Muḥammad b. ʿAjīlān. See note 926. 1061. Al-Ḥasan al-Baṣrī (d. 110/728), who has been dubbed “the patriarch of Muslim mysticism” (Schimmel, Mystical Dimensions, 30), was greatly admired

"Well," I replied, "Ibn 'Ajlan's situation here is like al-Hasan's there." Therefore Ja'far let Ibn 'Ajlan go. Muḥammad b. 'Ajlan was the mawla of Fāṭimah bt. 'Utbah b. Rabī'ah b. 'Abd Shams.

According to 'Umar—Sa'd b. 'Abd al-Ḥamīd b. Ja'far b. 'Abdallāh: 'Ubaydallāh b. 'Umar b. Ḥafṣ b. 'Āṣim took part in Muḥammad's uprising. After Muḥammad was killed, 'Ubaydallāh was brought before Abū Ja'far, and the caliph said to him, "You are one of those who joined Muḥammad's rebellion against me." "I had no choice," replied 'Ubaydallāh, "but that or disbelief (kufr) in what God sent down upon [our Prophet] Muḥammad." ('Umar regarded this tradition as conjectural.)


1062. Abū Uthmān 'Ubaydallāh b. 'Umar [d. 147/764], a descendant of the third caliph, was a noted muhaddith and faqīḥ of Medina. GAS, I, 89; Ibn Ḥajar, Tahdhib, VII, 35; Van Arendonk, Débuts, 313=Opkomst, 286; Zirikli, A'īm, IV, 195.

1063. 'Abd al-Wāḥid was a trustworthy muhaddith of Medina. According to Ibn Ḥajar, Tahdhib, VI, 388, his devotion to 'Abdallāh b. al-Hasan aroused Abū Ja'far's suspicions. This prompted 'Abd al-Wāḥid to go into hiding with Muḥammad b. Ya'qūb b. 'Utbaḥ [who is mentioned as transmitting on his authority], where he died unexpectedly. Tabarī, III, 2456.

1064. 'Abdallāh b. 'Aṭā', a muhaddith and faqīḥ, went into hiding after Muḥammad's uprising but was eventually put to death during Ja'far's tenure as governor of Medina. Van Arendonk, Débuts, 313=Opkomst, 286.

1065. Sibā' b. 'Abd al-'Uzza was a clan of the Banū al-Ḥārithah. Caskel, Gamharat an-nasab, I, 200, II, 512.
‘Abdallāh b. al-Zubayr: I was in al-Murr in Batn Idām1066 accompanied by my wife, Aminah bt. Khudayr, when a man passed us ascending from Medina. She asked him, "How's Muḥammad doing?" "He's been killed," the man replied. She then asked, "How's Ibn Khudayr doing?" "He, too, has been killed," he answered. At this news she fell to the ground in prostration. When I asked whether she was prostrating herself because her brother was killed, she said, "Yes; why was he not put to flight or captured?"

According to ʿĪsā—his father: Abū Jaʿfar asked ʿĪsā b. Mūsā, "Who came to Muḥammad's assistance?" "The family of al-Zubayr," said ʿĪsā. When the caliph asked, "Who else?" ʿĪsā named ʿUmar's family. At this the caliph exclaimed, "By God, it certainly is for something other than his friendship for them or [their] love for him or his family!" Abū Jaʿfar used to say, "Were I to find 1,000 from al-Zubayr's family, all of them good except for one evildoer, I would kill the whole lot. But if I were to find 1,000 of ʿUmar's family, all of them evil except for one good man, I would forgive the whole lot."

According to ʿUmar—Ibrāhīm b. Muṣʿab b. Umārah b. Hamzah b. Muṣʿab—Muḥammad b. Uthmān b. Muḥammad b. Khālid b. al-Zubayr: When Muḥammad was killed, my father fled, as did Mūsā b. ʿAbdallāh b. Ḥasan.1067 Abū Ḥabbār al-Muzani and I were with them. We first came to Mecca and then descended to al-Baṣrah, where we hired [mounts] from a man named Ḥakim. Arriving at al-Baṣrah after the night was well advanced, we found the entrances closed off and sat nearby until daybreak. Then we entered and dismounted at the Mirbad.1068 In the early morning hours we sent Ḥakim to buy food for us. He had it brought by a black man wearing a leg iron.1069 When the man carried the food in to us, Ḥakim paid him his wage, but the black became angry

1066. Al-Murr is identified as a wādī in Batn Idām or as Batn Idām itself. "Idām" was the name of a wādī belonging to the Ashja‘ and Juhaynah tribes and the name of a mountain between al-Yamāmah and Ḍariyyah. Yāqūt, Buldān, I, 214, V, 106.

1067. See note 411.

1068. The Mirbad was a vast open area where caravans stopped and camels and other animals were traded. Yāqūt, Buldān, V, 97–99; EI², s.v. [C. Pellat]; Pellat, Le milieu baṣrien, 11–12.

1069. The account in Isfahānī, Magātil, 392, offers some variation: The black bearer is described as an insignificant porter, but there is no specific mention of leg irons. When asked his wage, he first set it at four dawānīq, which would have
The Events of the Year 145

with us. We told Ḥākim to increase the amount, but the fellow was still angry. At this point, we said to Ḥākim, “Woe to you, double the amount for him.” Ḥākim refused, beginning to have some misgivings about us. He started to take a close look at our faces and then left. Before long cavalry surrounded our house. We asked the landlady why they had come, but she said, “Don’t be concerned about them. They are looking for one of the Banū Sa‘d1070 named Numaylah b. Murrah1071 who joined Ibrāhīm’s rebellion.” And, indeed, we only became concerned when the black man was brought into our presence with his head and face covered. When he was brought in the covering was removed, and he was asked, “Are these the ones?” “Yes,” he said, “these are the ones. This one is Mūsā b. ‘Abdallāh, this other is ‘Uthmān b. Muhammad, and this third is ‘Uthmān’s son. The fourth I recognize only as one of their associates.” Together we were seized and brought before Muḥammad b. Sulaymān.1072 Looking at us, he approached Mūsā and said, “May God not keep your line intact! Why have all of you left your land and come to me? If I release you, I will be opposing the Commander of the Faithful. Yet if I seize you, I am severing your lineage.” Muḥammad b. Sulaymān then wrote to the Commander of the Faithful, while we were placed in irons.1073 The caliph responded that we be transported to him. Accordingly, we were dispatched to him in the company of an army contingent. Upon arrival in al-Baṭīḥah,1074 we found

1070. The Banū Sa‘d al-Fīzr was a large component group of Tamīm. El1, s.v. Sa‘d al-Fīzr [F. Krenkow]; Caskel, Ġamhatat an-nasab, I, 59, 75, II, 497.


1072. Muḥammad b. Sulaymān b. ‘Ali b. ‘Abdallāh b. ‘Abbās was a cousin of Abū al-‘Abbās and Abū Ja‘far. He followed his father as governor of al-Baṣrah and held that position at the time of his death in 173/789–90, during the reign of Hārūn al-Rashid. He also governed al-Kūfah for a time. Tabari, III, 607–8; Ṣafādī, Wāfī, III, 121–23; Zambaur, Manuel, 40, 43.

1073. Wa-haddadnā. Tabari, Glossarium, s.v. ḥadda; Ibrāhīm’s edition, VII, 606, offers the alternative reading bi-khabarinā, “with news of us.”

1074. Al-Baṭīḥah is the marsh area created by the lower Tigris and Euphrates between al-Kūfah and al-Baṣrah. El2, s.v. [M. Streck and Saleh El-Alī]; Cornu, Répertoires, 27; Yaqūṭ, Buldān, I, 450–51.
another contingent awaiting us. We came by one army post to another all the way to Baghdad. Once there, we were brought before Abū Ja‘far. Looking at my father, he said, “Now then, did you join Muhammad’s rebellion against me?” “That is so,” my father replied. Abū Ja‘far shouted coarse remarks at him and kept at him for a long time. Finally, he ordered him to be beheaded. He next commanded Musa to be beaten with scourges and ordered that I be brought to him, saying, “Have them bring him in and make him stand right next to his father. While he is looking at him, behead him over his father’s cadaver.” ‘Isā b. ‘Alī spoke to the caliph, saying, “By God, I would not judge he has yet reached manhood.” I added, “O Commander of the Faithful, I am but a lad, a gullible youth, simply obeying my father’s command.” Abū Ja‘far therefore ordered me to be given fifty lashes and had me confined in the Mutbaq. One of the inmates at that time was Ya‘qūb b. Dāwūd, who was extremely kind to me and of whom I grew very fond. He even fed me from his food and let me drink from what he had. Such was our situation until Abū Ja‘far died and al-Mahdī assumed the caliphate. At that point he released Ya‘qūb, who spoke with al-Mahdī on my behalf, so that the caliph let me go.

According to ‘Umar—Ayyūb b. ‘Umar—Muḥammad b. Khālid—Muḥammad b. ‘Urwah b. Hishām b. ‘Urwah: I was with Abū Ja‘far when someone came and told him that ‘Uthmān b. Muhammad b. Khālid had just been brought in. When the caliph had him brought in and Abū Ja‘far saw him, he said, “Where’s the money you had?” “I handed it over to the Commander of the Faithful, may God have mercy upon him,” ‘Uthmān replied. “And who,” asked the caliph, “is the Commander of the Faithful?” “Muḥammad b. ‘Abdallāh,” he said. The caliph asked, “Did you give him the oath of allegiance?” “Yes,” answered ‘Uthmān, “just as you did.” Abū Ja‘far retorted, “O son

1075. The Mutbaq was a fortress-like prison that al-Mansūr built in the southwest quadrant of Baghdad. Le Strange, Baghdad, 27, and Lassner, Topography, 243, both of whom vocalize it as maṭbaq. Ṭabarî, Glossarium, s.v. tabaqa, gives the vocalization mutbaq, as does Dozy, Supplément, II, 26.

1076. Abū ‘Abdallāh Ya‘qūb b. Dāwūd [d. 186/802] became vizier to Abū Ja‘far’s son, the caliph al-Mahdī. He eventually fell from favor for suspected treason and was imprisoned once again. EI², s.v. [S. Moscati]; Jahshiyārī, Wuzarā', 155–63.

1077. See note 741.
of an uncircumcised woman!" To this `Uthmān replied, "That is said of those whom slave women have born." The caliph then ordered him to be executed so `Uthmān was dragged away and beheaded.

According to `Umar—Sa`d b. `Abd al-Ḥamīd b. Ja`far—Muḥammad b. `Uthmān [b. Muḥammad] b. Khālid al-Zubayrī: At the time Muḥammad made his uprising one of those who joined him was a man from the family of Kathīr b. al-Ṣalt. When Muḥammad was killed and his partisans were routed and went into hiding, my father and the Kathīrī disappeared with them. They remained hidden until Ja`far b. Sulaymān was made governor of Medina and intensified the search for Muḥammad's associates. At this point my father hired camels belonging to the Kathīrī, and we [all] left Medina for al-ṣārah. Ja`far heard about this and wrote to his brother Muḥammad to let him know that we were on our way to al-ṣārah. He ordered him to keep an eye out for us and to be alert to our situation and our progress. When we arrived, therefore, Muḥammad b. Sulaymān knew of it and knew where we were. He sent men for us, and we were seized and brought before him. My father turned to him and said, "Listen here, go in fear of God in your treatment of this fellow who rented mounts to us. He's a bedouin who knows nothing about us. Wanting to keep body and soul together, he simply rented [mounts] to us. Had he known of our offense, he never would have done so. If you make him vulnerable to Abu Ja`far, whose nature you know well, you will be his killer and bear the guilt of his death." Muḥammad b. Sulaymān was silent for a long time and then he said, "He, by God, is Abu Ja`far; I will not oppose him." We were then transported all together and taken before Abu Ja`far. No one in the caliph's entourage recognized the Kathīrī except al-Ḥasan b. Zayd. He went up to him and said, "O enemy of God, are you in the habit of renting [mounts] to the Commander of the Faithful's enemy and conveying him from one country to another? Do you sometimes hide him away and at other times let him show..."
himself?" "O Commander of the Faithful," the Kathiri replied, "I know nothing about him, his crime, or his enmity toward you. I simply hired [mounts] out to him, knowing nothing about him and thinking him merely a Muslim of innocent intention and sound purpose. Had I been aware of his case, I would not have done so." Al-Hasan b. Zayd bent down to look at the ground and did not raise his head, while Abū Ja'far threatened the Kathiri and tried to intimidate him. Finally, he ordered him to be released, and the man went off into hiding. The caliph then turned to my father and said, "Now then, 'Uthmān, so you rebel against the Commander of the Faithful and help to oppose him?" 'Uthmān replied, "I gave the oath of allegiance to a man in Mecca just as you did. I lived up to my oath while you betrayed yours." The caliph ordered him to be beheaded.

According to 'Umar—'Iṣā—his father: 'Abd al-'Azīz b. 'Abdallāh b. 'Abdallāh b. Umar b. al-Khaṭṭāb was brought before Abu Ja'far. The caliph looked at him, and said, "If I kill a Qurashi like this, whom shall I spare?" Then he released him. Subsequently, 'Uthmān b. Muhammad b. Khālid was brought before him. He had him killed, while yet releasing a number of Qurashis. 'Iṣā b. Mūsā said to him, "O Commander of the Faithful, how unlucky this one was with you among all the rest!" "Indeed," replied the caliph, "this one comes from a noble family.""

According to 'Umar—'Iṣā—Hasan b. Zayd: I went to see Abu Ja'far one morning and discovered that he had ordered a bench to be made on which he then took up his position, without moving. 'Alī b. al-Muṭṭalib b. 'Abdallāh b. Ḥanṭab was brought before him, and he commanded that 'Alī be given 500 lashes. Next, 'Abd al-'Azīz b. Ibrāhim b. 'Abdallāh b. Muṭī was brought forward,

---

1080. This follows Ibrāhīm's edition, VII, 608, with the transcription of bari?.
1081. Inna ḥādhā baytiyyun. Tabari, Addenda et Emendanda, p. DCCXLII, and Glossarium, s.v. bāta as nobili familia ortus est, and Dozy, Supplément, I, 132. Ibrāhīm's edition, VII, 608, offers the alternative ḥādhā yadi, "this is my power," i.e., "this is what lies within my discretion."
1082. 'Abd al-'Azīz b. Ibrāhim was a grandson of Abdallāh b. Muṭī b. al-Aswad al-'Adawi, who led the Qurashi opposition against the Umayyad caliph Yazid b. Mu'awiyah and fought in the battle of the Harrah. He later became 'Abdallāh b. al-Zubayr's governor of al-Kūfah and perished with the anticaliph in 73/692. Tabari, II, 413, 601–37 passim; EIP, s.v. (K. V. Zetterstén and C. Pellat); Şafadi, Wāfi, XVII, 620–21.
and the caliph ordered him to be flogged 500 lashes. Neither of them made the slightest move, prompting Abū Ja‘far to say to me, “Have you ever seen anyone with more endurance than these two? By God, those who’ve lived rough and toilsome lives have been brought before us, but they have not shown this sort of endurance. These men, on the other hand, are used to a life of ease, shelter, and comfort.” “O Commander of the Faithful,” I replied, “these are your people, people of nobility and rank.” He turned away from me, saying, “All you care about is [tribal] solidarity.” After that he had ‘Ābd al-‘Azīz b. Ibrāhīm brought back for a beating. “O Commander of the Faithful,” implored ‘Ābd al-‘Azīz, “God, God be with us. Lord knows I’ve been flat on my face for forty nights, not once able to pray to God.” The caliph replied, “This is something which you’ve brought upon yourselves.” “But where is forgiveness, O Commander of the Faithful?” begged ‘Ābd al-‘Azīz. To this Abū Ja‘far responded, “All right, you’re forgiven.” Then he released him.

According to ʿUmar—al-Ḥārith—Ibn Saʿd—Muḥammad b. ʿUmar: ʿĪsā’s forces outnumbered Muḥammad’s and fought relentlessly until Muḥammad was finally killed in the middle of the month of Ramaḍān in 145. His head was carried to ʿĪsā b. Mūsā, who called for Ibn Abī al-Karrām and had him look at it. He recognized it as Muḥammad, so ʿĪsā b. Mūsā made a prostration, entered Medina, and gave all the people amnesty. From the time of his uprising until the time he was killed, Muḥammad b. ‘Abdallāh held out for two months and seventeen days.

In this year ʿĪsā b. Mūsā appointed Kathīr b. Ḥuṣayn as his deputy when he left Medina after Muḥammad b. ‘Abdallāh b. Ḥasan was killed. Kathīr b. Ḥuṣayn’s term as governor of Medina lasted one month. Then ‘Abdallāh b. al-Rabī‘ al-Ḥārithī arrived as governor of Medina on behalf of Abū Ja‘far al-Manṣūr.

In this year the blacks in Medina rebelled against ‘Abdallāh b. Rabī‘ and he fled from them.

The Uprising of the Blacks in Medina in This Year and What Incited It

'Abdallâh b. Abî Sabrah as tax collector over Asad and Taiyî'. When Muḥammad rebelled, Abû Bakr took what he had collected to Muḥammad and threw in his lot with him. When Ḥisâ made Kathîr b. Ḥuṣayn his deputy in Medina, the latter seized Abû Bakr, beat him with seventy lashes, bound him in irons, and imprisoned him. Then 'Abdallâh b. al-Rabi' arrived as governor on Saturday, 25 Shawwâl 145, on behalf of Abû Ja'far. His troops got into a dispute with the merchants about some of the purchases that they made from them. Eventually a group of merchants went off to the Dâr Marwân, where Ibn al-Rabi' was staying, and complained to him about the situation. But Ibn al-Rabi' yelled at them and called them names. At this, the army began to act against the merchants with even greater avidity, and both sides grew increasingly hostile to each other.

According to 'Umar—'Umar b. Râshid: The troops made off with various goods from the market. One morning they came upon a money changer named 'Uthmân b. Zayd and tried to wrest his purse away from him. 'Uthmân yelled for help, thus saving his money from them. At this juncture the leading citizens of Medina met and complained to Ibn al-Rabi' about the matter. Ibn al-Rabi', however, did nothing to either condemn or bring about a change in the troops' behavior. On Friday a soldier came to buy meat from a butcher but refused to pay his price, drawing his sword against him instead. From under the butcher's block the butcher came at him with a big knife and stabbed the soldier in the hip. The man tumbled from his mount, and all the butchers fell upon him and killed him. The blacks issued a call against the army as they went to the Friday prayer (jum'ah), killing the soldiers with clubs on all sides. They kept at this until well into evening, and the next morning Ibn al-Rabi' fled.

According to 'Umar—Muḥammad b. Yahyâ—al-Ḥarîth b. Ishâq: The blacks sounded a trumpet they had. People from high and low in Medina told me that they saw black men living there stop whatever work they were doing and listen to the trumpet.
The Events of the Year 145

blast, cocking their ears to it until they were quite certain of the sound. Then the black would drop whatever he held and follow the sound until he reached it. ʿUmar continued: That was Friday, 22 Dhū al-Ḥijjah 145. There were three individuals who led the blacks, Wathiq, Yaʿqul, and Ramaqah. During the morning they broke in upon Ibn al-Rabiʿ and the people during the Friday prayer. The blacks hurried the people out from the prescribed prayer, and Ibn al-Rabiʿ went out against them. They chased after him as far as the market, where he passed five people who were begging on the road to the mosque. In company with those who were with him, Ibn al-Rabiʿ attacked and killed them. Then he passed some small boys on a house ledge and, supposing that the people [he sought] were among them, he told them to come down, tricking them with guarantees of safety. But when they actually descended, he had them beheaded. He continued on and stopped near the wheat dealers. There the blacks attacked him [again], so he took off in flight. They followed him as far as the Baqiʿ cemetery, where they overtook him. At this point he scattered dirhams before the blacks, thereby distracting them, and kept going straight ahead until he encamped in Baṭn Nakhl some two nights out of Medina.

According to ʿUmar—İsā: The blacks rebelled against Ibn al-Rabiʿ. Their leaders were Wathiq, Ḥadya, ʿUnqud, and Abū Qays. Ibn al-Rabiʿ fought them, but they routed him, so he left [Medina] and went to stay in Baṭn Nakhl.

According to ʿUmar—Umar b. Rāshid: When Ibn al-Rabiʿ fled, the blacks pounced upon various food supplies belonging to Abū Jaʿfar, such as barley mush, flour, oil, and hard dates, and confiscated them. The load of flour was worth two dirhams, whereas the skin of oil was worth four dirhams.

According to ʿUmar—Muḥammad b. Yaḥyā—al-Ḥarīth b. Ishāq: The blacks raided both the Dār Marwān and the Dār Yazīd, two places containing food supplies that had been brought to the army by sea, and left nothing in either location. On that day, Sulaymān b. Fulayḥ b. Sulaymān left to go to Abū Jaʿfar. As soon as he reached him, he informed Abū Jaʿfar of the situation.

1084. Wathiq is earlier identified, III, 219, as the trumpet blower in al-Ḥasan b. Muʿāwiyyah’s attack on Abū Jaʿfar’s governor of Mecca, al-Ṣarī b. ʿAbdallāh.
According to 'Umar—Muḥammad b. Yaḥyā—al-Ḥarīth b. Ishāq: Since the blacks killed a number of the troops, the army was so intimidated by them that if a cavalry man encountered a black man wearing nothing but a light shirt and two rags over his private parts, the black would scornfully turn his back on him but would then waste no time in bashing him with one of the market poles and killing him. They said that these blacks were nothing but sorcerers or satans.

According to 'Umar—'Uthāmah b. 'Amr al-Sahmi—al-Musawwar b. 'Abd al-Malik:1085 When Ibn al-Rabi‘ imprisoned Abū Bakr b. Abī Sabrah for bringing the taxes (jibāyah) from Ṭayyīr and Asad and handing them over to Muḥammad, the Qurashis felt sympathy for Ibn Abī Sabrah. When the blacks rebelled against Ibn al-Rabi‘, Ibn Abī Sabrah left the prison, addressed the people, and called upon them to remain loyal. He acted as prayer leader for the people until Ibn al-Rabi‘ returned.

According to 'Umar—Muḥammad b. Yaḥyā—al-Ḥarīth b. Ishāq: Ibn Abī Sabrah left the prison and went on to the mosque still wearing irons. He sent for Muḥammad b. 'Imrān,1086 Muḥammad b. 'Abd al-'Azīz,1087 and others. These men came and met with him, and he said, “I swear this is a catastrophe that has befallen. If it runs its full course against us, in the Commander of the Faithful’s eyes, especially after the first action [i.e., Muḥammad’s rebellion], it will lead to the destruction of the land and its people. The slaves are all in the market. So, for God’s sake, won’t you go and talk them into returning and coming around to your point of view? They have no proper discipline and have pressed no claim to authority. They’re simply a group motivated by passion.” They did go to the slaves and spoke with them. At which the latter said, “Welcome, masters of ours. We attacked only out of resentment at what’s been done to you. Our hands join yours, and our affair is at your disposal.” They then went forward to the mosque with them.

---

1085. Al-Musawwar b. 'Abd al-Malik al-Yarbu‘i; he also transmits from ‘Uthāmah (Imāmah) b. al-Sahmi in I, 1313.
The Events of the Year 145

According to 'Umar—Muhammad b. al-Hasan b. Zabalah—al-Husayn b. Muṣ'ab:1088 When the blacks made their uprising and Ibn al-Rabi' fled, I went to see them, accompanied by certain others, at their encampment in the market. We asked them to disperse, informing them that neither we nor they had any power over what they had set themselves against. Wathiq said to us, "The situation has developed as you see, and he will spare neither us nor you. Let us take revenge for you, and we ourselves shall be avenged, too." We refused, however, and stayed with them until they dispersed.

According to 'Umar—'Umar b. Rashid: Their leader was Wathiq, and his deputy was Ya'qul the butcher. Ibn 'Imran went to see him and asked, "With whom will you negotiate terms, Wathiq?" "With four of the Banū Hāshim," replied Wathiq, "with four Qurashis, with four of the Anṣār, and with four of the mawlās. The matter shall be arranged by consultation among them." "I ask God to sustain us with your justice, if He entrusts you with anything to do with us." To this he replied, "Already, by God, has God charged me with it."

According to 'Umar—Muhammad b. Yahya—al-Ḥārith b. Ishāq: The blacks were there at the mosque along with Ibn Abi Sabrah. Still in an iron fetter he climbed up the minbar to settle himself on the seat of God's Messenger. Muhammad b. 'Imrān followed, taking a position below him. Muhammad b. 'Abd al-'Aziz followed them, taking a yet lower seat, while Sulaymān b. 'Abdallāh b. Abi Sabrah followed all of the above and sat at the lowest level of all. The people began to raise a great clamor while Ibn Abi Sabrah remained sitting in silence. Ibn 'Imrān announced that he was going off to the market and climbed down the minbar, as did those sitting beneath him. Ibn Abi Sabrah remained unmoving, however, and began to speak, urging the people to obey the Commander of the Faithful and recounting the affair of

Muḥammad b. ʿAbdallāh at length. In the meantime, Ibn ʿImrān went on as far as the market. There he stood on a sack of wheat and started to talk from that position. Little by little the people came back, and no one led the people in prayer that day except the muezzin. When it was time for the final night prayer, the people had at last returned, and the Qurashis had gathered in the reserved section of the mosque. Muḥammad b. ʿAmmār, the muezzin whose nickname was Kasākas, recited the prelude to the prayer (iḡāmah). He asked the Qurashis, “Who will lead the prayer for you?” but no one answered him. “Didn’t you hear me?” he repeated, but again they did not answer. Next he called out, “O Ibn ʿImrān and O Ibn So-and-So [what about you?]!” but no one responded. At this point al-ʿAshbāḥ b. Sufyān b. ʿĀṣim b. ʿAbd al-ʿAzīz b. Marwān stood up and said, “I will lead the prayer.” He then stood in the proper place and told the people to take their positions. When the prayer rows were properly arranged, he turned to face them and shouted at the top of his voice, “Will you not listen? I am al-ʿAshbāḥ b. Sufyān b. ʿĀṣim b. ʿAbd al-ʿAzīz b. Marwān and I shall lead the people in prayer in full loyalty to Abū Jaʿfar.” He repeated that declaration two or three times and called out Allāhu akbar and performed the prayer. When the people awoke next morning, Ibn Abī Sabrah said, “Yesterday, as on your part you well know, you plundered what was in your governor’s house as well as provisions intended for the Commander of the Faithful’s troops. Nothing should be retained and not returned by any of you. I have therefore set al-Ḥakam b. ʿAbdallāh b. al-Mughirah b. Mawḥab to deal with you.” To him the people returned what they had plundered, and it is said to have reached a value of 1,000 dinārs.

According to ʿUmar—ʿUthāmah b. ʿAmr—al-Musawwar b. ʿAbd al-Malik: The Qurashis plotted to prevail upon Ibn al-Rabiʿ to leave. After that they would talk to him about making Ibn Abī Sabrah his deputy over Medina so that what the Commander of

1090. Al-ʿAshbāḥ b. Sufyān was the great-great-grandson of the fourth Umayyad caliph, Marwān b. al-Ḥakam, and grand-nephew of the eighth, ʿUmar b. ʿAbd al-ʿAzīz. His grandmother was Umm Ṭāṣim bt. ʿĀṣim b. ʿUmar b. al-Khaṭṭāb. Šafādi, Wāfi, XXII, 506–10 s.v. ʿUmar b. ʿAbd al-ʿAzīz.
1091. The second fa-qāma is a typographical error.
the Faithful had against him would eventually dissolve. When the blacks drove Ibn al-Rabi' out, Ibn 'Abd al-'Aziz said to him, "Are you leaving without the installation of a deputy governor? Put somebody or other in charge of Medina." "Who?" asked Ibn al-Rabi'. "Qudāmah b. Mūsā," Ibn 'Abd al-'Aziz replied. At this point they shouted for Qudāmah, and he came in and sat down between Ibn al-Rabi' and Ibn 'Abd al-'Aziz. "Go back, Qudāmah," said Ibn al-Rabi', "I have appointed you governor of Medina and its administrative districts." To this Qudāmah responded, "By God, whoever suggested this to you did not have your best interests at heart. He has not looked at the one who is behind it and has in mind nothing but evil. The one who has a greater claim to this office than I or my nominator is the one who can manage the affairs of the people. He, i.e., Ibn Abī Sabrah, is sitting in his house. Go back, man! By God, you have no excuse to leave!" Ibn al-Rabi' therefore went back.

According to `Umar—Muḥammad b. Yaḥyā—al-Ḥārith b. Ishaq: Ibn 'Abd al-'Aziz rode out to Ibn al-Rabi' with a group of Quraysh and implored him while he was at Baṭn Nakhl to return to his post as governor. Ibn al-Rabi', however, turned them down. Ibn 'Abd al-'Aziz then spoke to him in private and kept him until finally he came back, and the people became peaceful and calm.

According to `Umar—Umar b. Rāshid: Ibn ʿImrān and others rode out to Ibn al-Rabi', who had stopped at al-A'wāṣ. They spoke with him, and Ibn al-Rabi' came back and suppressed Wathiq, Abū al-Nār, Yaʿqūl, and Masʿur.\footnote{1092}

In this year the city of Baghdad, which is called "The City of al-Mangfir/' was founded.\footnote{1093}

The Reason Abū Jaʿfar Built Baghdad

The reason for that is as follows: Tradition has it that at the time when the caliphate devolved upon Abū Jaʿfar al-Maṣūr, he built al-Hāshimiyyah opposite Madīnat Ibn Hubayrah.\footnote{1094} Between the

\footnote{1092. Ibrāhīm's edition, VII, 614, vocalizes this as Mis'ar.
1094. Although the Leiden index equates this with Qaṣr Ibn Hubayrah, Lassner (EI², s.v. Qaṣr Ibn Hubayrah) argues that the former was founded somewhat earlier, on a site closer to al-Kūfah. See note 638.}
two was the whole extent of the road. Madinat Ibn Hubayrah, opposite which stood Abū Jaʿfar’s al-Hāshimiyyah, lay toward al-Kūfah. Al-Manṣūr also built a city behind al-Kūfah by the name of al-Ruṣāfah.1095 When the Rawandiyyah1096 were stirred up by [their beliefs about] Abū Jaʿfar in his city called al-Hāshimiyyah—the one that lies opposite Madinat Ibn Hubayrah—the caliph began to dislike living there. His dislike was due to the disturbance that various of the Rawandiyyah set in motion against him as well as to the city’s close proximity to al-Kūfah. Abū Jaʿfar had no confidence in the loyalty of its inhabitants and wanted to distance himself from them. He is said to have gone out personally, exploring for a site that he could use as a settlement for himself and for his army, and where he could build a city. He began by going down to Jarjarāyā.1097 From there he went to Baghdad and then on to al-Mawṣīl. Finally, he went back to Baghdad and said, “This is a good place for an army camp. Here’s the Tigris, with nothing between us and China, and on it arrives all that the sea can bring, as well as provisions from the Jazirah, Armenia and surrounding areas. Further, there is the Euphrates on which can arrive everything from Syria, al-Raqqah, and surrounding areas. The caliph therefore dismounted and pitched his camp on the Sarāt Canal.1098 He sketched a plan of the city and put an army commander in charge of each quarter.

According to Ḥabīb b. Shabbah—Muḥammad b. Maʿrūf b. Suwāydaʾ—his father1099—Sulaymān b. Mujālid:1100 The people of al-Kūfah fomented rebellion against him in the the Commander of

---

1095. The name was used for a number of sites from Andalusia to Khurāsān, of which Taḥārī mentions, in addition to this one in al-Kūfah, those in Baghdad, in al-Baṭāʾīn, and in al-Ruṣāfah of Hishām in Syria. Yāqūt, Buldān, III, 46–50.
1096. The account of this uprising may be found under the year 141.
1097. Jarjarāyā was a town on the east bank of the Tigris about seventy-five kilometers southeast of al-Madāʾin. Cornu, Répertoires, 28; Le Strange, Lands, 37, and Baghdad, 9; Yāqūt, Buldān, II, 123.
1098. The Sarāt Canal was a branch of the great ʿIsā Canal that flowed eastward through the upper Karkh section of Baghdad, while the ʿIsā itself flowed through the lower part of this section. Le Strange, Baghdad, 50–54; Lassner, Topography, 122; Yāqūt, Buldān, III, 399–400.
1100. Sulaymān b. Mujālid is later, III, 273, 429, mentioned among various of al-Manṣūr’s commanders and personal retinue.
the Faithful's, i.e., al-Manṣūr's, army. Therefore he headed for al-Jabal\(^{1101}\) in search of a place to settle. At that time the road went by way of al-Madā'in. We left via Sābāt,\(^1102\) but one of our companions fell behind, afflicted with an eye inflammation. As he stayed there to have his eyes treated, the physician asked him where the Commander of the Faithful was heading. "He is looking for a place to settle," the man replied. To this the physician responded: "In one of our books we find it written that a man named Miqlāš\(^{1103}\) will build a city called al-Zawrā\(^{1104}\) between the Tigris and the Šarāt. After he has laid its foundation and built one course of its walls, a problem will erupt for him in the Hijāz, and he will interrupt construction of the city and turn his attention to repairing that breach of the peace. When this is almost done, trouble will arise for him in al-Baṣrah, this one more difficult for him than the first. Before long, however, the two breaches will be mended, and he will return to building the city and will complete it. Then will he be given a long life and sovereignty shall remain in his progeny."

Sulaymān continued: The Commander of the Faithful was on the outskirts of al-Jibāl searching for a place to settle when my companion reached me and gave me this account. I reported this to the Commander of the Faithful, and he summoned the man, who repeated the story to Abū Ja'far. At this the caliph turned right around and went back to his start-

---

1101. Or al-Jibāl. As well as naming a province of Persia (see note 193), "al-Jibāl" was also the name of a town known additionally as "Ayn al-Gibāl" or "Hiyāl," in the Jazīrah about 140 kilometers west of al-Mawṣil. *EI*\(^2\), s.v. al-Djibāl (L. Lockhart); Le Strange, *Lands*, 185–231; Cornu, *Repertoires*, 17; Yaqūt, *Buldān*, II, 99, 103.

1102. Sābāt was one of the cities comprising the Sāsānid metropolis that is known in Arabic as "al-Madā'in." It was situated at the point where the Nahr al-Malik met the Tigris. *EI*\(^2\), s.v. al-Madā'in [M. Streck and M. Morony], Yaqūt, *Buldān*, III, 166–67.

1103. Steingass, *Persian-English Dictionary*, 1295, identifies this word as the term for a camel that is growing fat in the summer, noting also that it was the nickname of a famous thief. It was apparently on the latter account that a childhood prank that involved filching left Abū Ja'far with this nickname. Lassner, *Shaping*, 165.

1104. The word itself means "the crooked," and the name has been the subject of much historical speculation.

1105. Among other prophecies associated with Baghdad is one predicting that no caliph would die a natural death there. Yaqūt, I, *Buldān*, 460, records it as nājiīa fi adillati al-nujūmi annahū lā yamūtu bihā khalīfatun abadan ḥatfa anfihi. See also Eisenstein, "Vom Tode der Kalifen."
ing point, saying, "By God, I'm that very man! I was called Miqlāṣ as a lad but then the name for me fell into disuse."

According to al-Haytham b. ʿAdī—Ibn ʿAyyāsh: Intending to move from al-Ḥāshimiyyah, Abū Jaʿfar sent scouts to search out a site for him, a place where he could settle that would be centrally located and comfortable for both the common people and the army. A site near Bārimmā was described to him, and it was commended to him as having excellent victuals. He went to take a look at it himself and even spent the night there. Searchingly he scanned the site, seeing it to be a good place, and then questioned a group of his associates, including Sulaymān b. Mujālid, Abū Ayyūb al-Khūzī, ʿAbd al-Malik b. Ḥumayd, the secretary, and others, about their opinion of it. "We've not seen anything to equal it," they replied; "it is pleasant, fitting, and congenial." To this the caliph responded, "You are right; it is just as you say, yet it could not support the army, the people, and the various groups. What I want is a place that is comfortable for the people and congenial for them as well as for me, a place where the prices will not become too high for them and the food supplies will not prove too hard to obtain. If I live in a place where it is impossible to import anything by land or sea, the prices will be high, goods will be scarce, and shortages in the food supply will cause hardship for the people. On the way here, I actually passed a place that combines these various natural qualities, so I shall stop and stay overnight there. If I find it to be the precise combination that I want, i.e., a healthful nocturnal environment, convenience, and the capacity to support both the army and the people, I shall build there.

According to al-Haytham b. ʿAdī: I was told that Abū Jaʿfar came toward the bridge, crossed over at [what is now] Qaṣr al-Salām, and then performed the late-afternoon prayer. It

---

1106. Bārimmā was a town in the province of al-Jazīrah on the east bank of the Tigris somewhat south of al-Sinn. Yaqūt, Buldān, I, 320; Cornu, Répertoires, 26; Le Strange, Lands, 91.

1107. See note 106.

1108. ʿAbd al-Malik b. Ḥumayd is earlier identified as a mawlā of Ḥātim b. al-Nuʾmān al-Bāhili, who is listed among the administrative officers in Khurāsān when al-Ḥakam b. Ṭābirī al-Ghifārī was governor. Ṭabārī, II, 81, 840.

1109. As Qaṣr al-Salāmah, Ṭabārī, III, 502, mentions the construction of this palace by al-Mahdī in the events of 164/780–81. Its site was ʿIsābād, a village
was summertime, and at the site of al-Qaṣr was a priest's church.\footnote{1110} The caliph stayed there all night and into the next morning, enjoying the most pleasant and refreshing night's rest on earth. The caliph then remained for the rest of the day without seeing anything he did not like. Consequently he declared, "This is the site on which I shall build. Goods can come here via the Tigris, the Euphrates, and various canals. Only a place like this can support both the army and the populace." He marked the boundaries of the city and calculated the extent of its construction. With his own hand he set the first brick in place while saying the words "In the name of God" and "Praise God" and "The earth belongs to God who makes heirs of it those of His servants whom He wishes, and the outcome is to the upright."\footnote{1111} He concluded with the statement "Build, then, with God's blessing."

According to Bishr b. Maymūn al-Sharawi—Sulaymān b. Mujālid: Upon al-Manṣūr's return from the region of al-Jībāl, he asked about the account that the army commander had heard from the physician. This was the physician who had told him about the report of a certain Miqlāṣ that they had found in their books. He stopped at the monastery that lay opposite his [future] palace known as al-Khuld.\footnote{1112} Al-Manṣūr summoned the head of the monastery and had the Patricius, the master of Raḥā al-Bīṭrīq ("Mills of the Patricius"),\footnote{1113} brought to him as well. Others whom he summoned were the overlord of [the village of] Bagh-

\footnote{1110} Bi'atu qassin. See Le Strange, \textit{Baghdad}, 132, for association of this with the subsequent mention of Bustān al-Qass.

\footnote{1111} Qur'ān, 7:128.

\footnote{1112} The name means "Eternity," and the palace complex that al-Manṣūr began to build there in 157/773–74 included gardens thought to rival those of paradise [cf. Qur'ān 25:15, for jannat al-khuld]. The monastery itself is identified as Dayr Mārfathion or al-Dayr al-ʿAtiq. Ţabari, III, 379; \textit{Ey}, s.v. Baghdād [A. A. Duri]; Lassner, \textit{Topography}, 149; Le Strange, \textit{Baghdad}, 101–5.

\footnote{1113} Or Arḥāʾ al-Bīṭrīq; according to al-Khaṭīb al-Baghdādi's \textit{Taʾrikh Baghdād}, these mills, which were situated at the junction of the Greater and Lesser Šārat Canals, were a commercial venture between the caliph al-Mahdi [Abū Jaʿfar's son] and the Byzantine ambassador to his court. \textit{Ey}, s.v. Bīṭrīq [I. Kawar].
dad, the overlord of al-Mukharrim,\footnote{Mukharrim was a district of Baghdad that lay to the south of the Shammasiyyah and Rusafah quarters on the east side of the Tigris. Baladhuri, Futuh, 295, states that it is named after Mukharrim b. Shurayh b. Hazn al-Harithi. Le Strange, Baghdad, 169–76, 217–30; Lassner, Topography, 81, 264.} and head of the monastery known as Bustan al-Qass ("Garden of the Priest")\footnote{Bustan al-Qass was located on the west side of Baghdad between the Damascus and al-Kufah gates. Le Strange, Baghdad, 132, notes the identification of al-Qass as a freedman of al-Mansur but is puzzled about the significance of this earlier, and more generic, place name. Lassner, Topography, 68, 254.} and the overlord of al-'Atiqah.\footnote{Al-'Atiqah, also known as al-Suq al-'Atiqah, was one of the "suburbs" of Baghdad that lay somewhat to the southeast of the Round City. Le Strange, Baghdad, 90; Lassner, Topography, 73–74, 258.} The caliph questioned them about the places where they lived, asking what they were like in heat and cold, in rainy and muddy weather, and in terms of bugs and vermin. Each one told him what he knew from personal experience. Next, the caliph dispatched men on his own behest and ordered each of them to spend the night in one of these villages. Accordingly, each of these men passed the night in one of these villages and brought the caliph information about it. Al-Mansur next sought the advice of those whom he had summoned and examined carefully\footnote{Wa-tanahbara akhbdrahum. Tabari, Glossarium, s.v. nahara; Dozy, Supplement, I, 653.} what they said. Their unanimous choice fell upon the overlord of Baghdad, so the caliph had him brought for consultation and careful questioning. (Now he was the \\textit{dihqan},\footnote{The \\textit{dihqan}s were the landed nobility of Sasanid Persia. EP, s.v. Dihkân [Ann K. S. Lambton].} whose village still stands in the quarter known as that of Abû al-'Abbâs al-Fadl Sulaymân al-Ṭūsi.\footnote{See Lassner, Topography, 67. For Abû al-'Abbâs al-Fadl b. Sulaymân al-Ṭūsi, see note 304.} To this very day the domes of the village are still maintained in good repair, and his house survives intact.) The overlord of Baghdad said, "O Commander of the Faithful, you have asked me about these places, about their [relative] suitability, and about which of them should be chosen. What I think, O Commander of the Faithful, is that you should settle in four sectors, the two on the west side being Quṭrabbul and Bâdūrayâ,\footnote{Quṭrabbul and Bâdūrayâ were the administrative districts west of Baghdad that were separated by the Šarât Canal. EP, s.v. Bâdūrayâ [M. Streck] and s.v. Kuṭrabbul [J. Lassner]; Cornu, Répertoires, 26, 32; Yaqût, Buldân, I, 317–18, IV, 371–72.} and the two on
The Events of the Year 145

243

the east side being Nahr Būq and Kalwādhā.1121 There you would be among date palms and near water. If one sector suffers from drought and its productivity is delayed, the other could be cultivated. Further, O Commander of the Faithful, you would be on the Sharāt Canal, permitting provisions to come to you along the Euphrates in ships from the west, as well as the choice products of Egypt and Syria. Supplies would also come to you along the Tigris in ships from China, India, al-Baṣrah and Wāṣīt. Finally, stores would reach you from Armenia and those adjacent areas via the Tāmarra Canal1122 connecting to the Zāb, as well as from Byzantium, Āmid,1123 the Jazīrah, and al-Mawṣīl down the Tigris. You would be among waterways where no enemy of yours could reach you except by a floating or fixed bridge. When you cut the floating bridge and destroy the fixed bridges, your enemy will not be able to reach you at all. You would be between the Tigris and Euphrates, where no one could come to you from either the east or west without having to make a crossing. You would be midway among al-Baṣrah, Wāṣīt, al-Kūfah, al-Mawṣīl, and the whole Sawād. You would be near land, sea, and mountain.” Al-Manṣūr became ever more determined to settle on the site that he had selected. The overlord of Baghdad added, “Furthermore, O Commander of the Faithful, God has blessed the Commander of the Faithful with such a great quantity of forces, commanders, and troops that not one of his enemies would aspire to come anywhere near him. The proper organization of cities requires you to make walls, moats and forts, but the Tigris and Euphrates shall be the moats for the Commander of the Faithful’s city.”

1121. Nahr Būq and Kalwādhā were localities on the east side of the Tigris. The Nahr Būq branched off from the Nahrawān Canal, and from it issued tributaries in east Baghdad. The name of the town of Kalwādhā is associated with kilwādh, the Ark of the Covenant, said to be buried there. EP, s.v. Kalwādhā (Ed.); Yaqūt, Buldān, V, 318; Le Strange, Baghdad, 50.

1122. The great Qāṭūl-Tāmarra-Nahrawān canal system, which was well over 200 kilometers long, watered the lands east of the Tigris from above Sāmarra’ to around al-Nu’māniyyah. EP, s.v. Didjla [R. Hartmann and S. H. Longrigg] and Diyālā [S. H. Longrigg]; Cornu, Répertoires, 30; Yaqūt, Buldān, II, 7; Le Strange, Lands, 59–60.

1123. Āmid was the principal city of Diyar Bakr, the northern province of the Jazīrah, from which the Tigris flows. EP, s.v. Diyar Bakr [M. Canard and C. Cahen]; Yaqūt, Buldān, I, 56–58; Le Strange, Lands, 108–11.
According to Ibrahim b. 'Isa—Hammad the Turk: In the year 145 al-Mansur sent men to search out for him a place where he could build his city. They investigated and explored, but the caliph remained dissatisfied with every site until he came to stop at the monastery on the Sarat Canal and declared, "This is a site with which I am satisfied. Provisions come to it from the Euphrates, from the Tigris, and from this Sarat Canal."

According to Muhammad b. Salih—Muhammad b. Jabir—his father: At the time when Abu Ja'far was of a mind to build his city at Baghdad, he saw a monk and called out to him. When the monk responded to him, Abu Ja'far asked, "In your books do you find it predicted that a city will be built here?" "Yes," the monk replied, "a certain Miqlas is to build it." At this Abu Ja'far exclaimed, "Miqlas was my name as a lad!" The monk answered, "Then you're the man for it!" Similarly, when the caliph wanted to build al-Rafiqah in Byzantium territory, the people of al-Raqqah opposed this and were intent on fighting him. They argued, "You will ruin our markets, take away our livelihood, and reduce our way stations to hardship." Abu Ja'far was minded to make war on them when he sent for a monk in the local hermitage and asked, "Do you know any prediction that a city is to be built here?" "I have heard that

1124. Ibrahim b. 'Isa b. al-Mansur Burayh (III, 331) or Burayh b. al-Mansur (III, 1141) was the grandson of Abu Ja'far, his father being one of the sons born to the caliph by Fatimah bt. Muhammad, a descendant of the prophet Muhammad's companion, Talhah b. Ubaydallah. Tabari, III, 442.
1125. Hammad the Turk was a personal retainer to al-Mansur who on occasion handled his horses and was responsible for the caliph's locked personal records. Tabari, III, 392, 429, 443; Jahshiyari, Wuzard', 143.
1126. Abu Abdallah Muhammad b. Salih b. Mihran (d. 252/866), a mawla of the Banu Hashim, was a Basran traditionist and genealogist who settled in Baghdad. Al-Nadim (Dodge, Fihrist of al-Nadim, I, 236) cites his as the first history of the 'Abbasid dynasty (but see Rosenthal, Muslim Historiography, 89). He was known as "Abu Tayyab," probably in reference to a twisted gait. Ibn Hajar, Tahdhib, IX, 201-2, GAS, I, 317, GAL, I, 216.
1128. Al-Rafiqah was a garrison city, built on the plan of Baghdad, that eventually became part of al-Raqqah. A variant of this account from Muhammad b. Jabir's father is included with the events for 154/770-71. Tabari, III, 372; Le Strange, Lands, 101-2; Cornu, Répertoires, 21; Yaqut, Buldan, III, 15-16.
The Events of the Year 145

a man called Miqlâş will build it," the monk replied. At this Abû Ja'far exclaimed, "I am Miqlâş!" and built al-Râfiqâ on the model of Baghdad except for the walls, iron gates, and a moat at some distance.

According to al-Sâri1130—Sulaymân b. Mujâlid: Al-Manşûr sent for a host of craftsmen and laborers from Syria, al-Mawṣîl, al-Jabal, al-Kûfah, Wâsit, and al-Baṣrah to be brought to him, commanding [also] the selection of a group of people endowed with virtue, integrity, intelligence, fidelity, and surveying competence.1131 Consequently, among those brought to him were al-Ḥajjâj b. Arṭâh1132 and Abû Ḥanîfah al-Nu'mân b. Thâbit.1133 The caliph ordered the city to be marked out, its foundations excavated, its mud bricks shaped, and its baked bricks fired.1134 Thus was it begun, the first stage of the project being initiated in 145.

It is said: When al-Manşûr decided to build Baghdad, he wanted to see for himself what it would look like, so he commanded that its outline be drawn with ashes. He then proceeded to enter through each gate and to walk among its outside walls, its arched areas, and its courtyards, all of which were outlined in ashes. He made the rounds, looking at the workmen and at the trenches that had been sketched. Having done that, he ordered cotton seeds placed on this outline and oil poured on it. Then he watched as the fire flared up, seeing the city as a whole and

1130. Abû al-Haytham al-Sâri b. Yahyâ b. Iyâs [d. 167/783-84] was a Barrâni traditionist and a principal source for Ţâbarî's accounts of the conquests undertaken during the earliest caliphates. GAS, I, 312; Ibn Ḥajar, Tahdhib, III, 400-1.

1131. Hitti, Capital Cities, 88, reckons the laborers as 100,000 and the cost of the city's construction as 4,883,000 dirhams. See also Alsayyad, Cities and Caliphs, 117, on Ţâbarî's use of the term handasah.


1133. Abû Ḥanîfah was the famous faqih of al-Kûfah from whose teachings the Ḥanâfî madhhab claims descent. He died in a Baghdad prison in 150/767. EFl, s.v. [J. Schacht]. For more about the relations between al-Manşûr and Abû Ḥanîfah see Rustum, Abû Ja'far al-Manşûr, 102-5.

1134. Creswell, Short Account, 232-33, describes the use of both kinds of brick, while Levy, Baghdad Chronicle, 19-20, notes that the bricks were huge, with some weighing about 200 pounds.
recognizing its full plan. Subsequently, he ordered the foundations to be excavated along those lines and commenced its construction.

According to Ḥammād the Turk: Al-Maḥṣūr sent men to search out a site on which to build his city. They made such exploration in 144, a year or so before Muhammad b. ‘Abdallāh’s uprising. The scouts’ selection fell upon a place called Baghdad, a village on the bank of the Sarāt, in the area adjacent to [the future] al-Khuld. On the site of al-Khuld stood a monastery, and in the curve of the Sarāt, adjacent to al-Khuld on the east side, was also a village called Sūq al-Baqar ("Cattle Market")\(^{1135}\) and a large monastery. The village itself, [also] known as al-ʿAtiqah, was the one conquered by al-Muthannā b. Ḥārithah al-Shaybānī.\(^{1136}\)

Ḥammād continued: Al-Maḥṣūr came to stay in the monastery located at al-Khuld on the Sarāt Canal. Finding there few noisome insects, he stated, “This is a place with which I am satisfied. Supplies can reach it via the Euphrates and Tigris. It’s a good place to build a city.” The caliph therefore said to the monk in the monastery, “O monk, I intend to build a city here.” To this the monk responded, “It cannot be. The only one who is to build a city here is a king called Abū al-Dawānīq.” Al-Maḥṣūr chuckled to himself, saying, “I, in fact, am Abū Dawānīq.”\(^{1137}\) He then commanded the outline of the city drawn and assigned to it four army commanders, one for each quarter.

According to Sulaymān b. Mujālid: Al-Maḥṣūr wanted Abū Ḥanīfah al-Nuʿmān b. Thābit to head the judiciary, but he refused that appointment. Al-Maḥṣūr swore that he should assume office, but Abū Ḥanīfah, in turn, swore that he would not do so. The caliph, therefore, put him in charge of the city’s construction, i.e., making the mud bricks, calculating the amount, and overseeing the men at work. Al-Maḥṣūr made that appointment simply to relieve himself of the oath he had sworn. Abū Ḥanīfah

---

\(^{1135}\) Sūq al-Baqar was a site in east Baghdad. Lassner, Topography, 103.

\(^{1136}\) Al-Muthannā b. Ḥārithah al-Shaybānī was an officer who fought with Khalid b. al-Walīd in the early conquest of Iraq. He was wounded in the Persian victory at al-Qarqas, the Battle of the Bridge, which occurred in 13/634 or 14/635, and died about about a year later. Ṭabarī, I, 2156; Balādhurī, Futūḥ, 241-56; Zirikli, Aʿlām, V, 276; Donner, Early Islamic Conquests, 377-78, 380-81.

\(^{1137}\) See note 800.
remained in charge of the project until he completed final construction, in 149, of the city wall next to the moat.

According to al-Haytham b. ‘Adi: Al-Manṣūr asked Abū Ḥanīfah to head the judiciary and the court for complaints and petitions [mażālim], but the latter turned him down. The caliph then swore that he would give him no rest until he took the job, and this was reported to Abū Ḥanīfah. The latter called for a reed linear measure (qaṣabah) and counted the bricks that a [given] man made—Abū Ḥanīfah was the first to count bricks with reeds—and this served to discharge Abū Ja’far’s oath. Eventually, Abū Ḥanīfah fell ill and died in Baghdad.

According to some sources: When Abū Ja’far ordered trenches to be dug, construction begun, and the foundations firmed up, he commanded that at its lowest point the wall should be fifty cubits (dhird’) thick, and at its highest, twenty cubits. In the construction he used cane beams rather than wood for every corridor. In 145, when the wall had reached the height of one fathom (qāmah), the caliph received word of Muhammad’s uprising, so he interrupted construction.

According to Ahmad b. Ḥumayd b. Jabalah—his father—his father Jabalah: Before it was built, [the site of] Abū Ja’far’s city was a common field known as al-Mubāraakah (“the Blessed”) that was shared by sixty citizens of Baghdad. The caliph compensated these people in a manner that satisfied them. My grandfather received a share of this reimbursement.

---

1138. The mażālim court sessions were a judicial structure of broad responsibility that functioned as both a complement and a constraint to the power of judges. EI², s.v. [J. S. Nielsen]; Schacht, Islamic Law, 51.
1139. A qaṣabah was the equivalent of about four meters. Hinz, Islamische Masse und Gewichte, 63.
1140. Bi-hafri al-khandāqiq. Tabari, Addenda et Emendanda, p. DCCXLIII.
1141. The various equivalences for the dhird’, which average about fifty centimeters, may be found in Hinz, Islamische Masse und Gewichte, 55–62.
1142. According to Levy, Baghdad Chronicle, 21, the top of the wall was about twenty-five cubits. It could function as a roadway to which horsemen mounted via inclined pathways.
1143. The qāmah equaled about two meters. Hinz, Islamische Masse und Gewichte, 54.
1144. Perhaps Abū al-Ḥasan Ahmad b. Humayd al-Ṭurayṭhithi, known as Dār Umm Salamah, who was a traditionist and ḥāfiz of al-Kūfah. His death date is reported as 220/835 and 229/843–44. This is his only mention in Tabari. Ibn Ḥajar, Tahdhīb, I, 23; Dhahabi, Siyar, X, 509–10.
According to Ibrāhīm b. ʿĪsā al-Manṣūr—Ḥammād the Turk: Surrounding Abū Jaʿfar’s future city stood various villages. Near the site of what is now the Syrian gate stood a village called al-Khaṭṭābiyyah, which ran from Darb al-Nūrah gate to Darb al-Aqfās. Some of its date palms actually stood on the main street leading to the Syrian gate until the days of the deposed caliph [al-Amin], when they were cut down during the period of civil disorder. This al-Khaṭṭābiyyah belonged to a group of dihqān families known as the Banū Farwah and the Banū Qunūrā, whose members included Ismāʿīl b. Dīnār, Yaʿqūb b. Sulaymān, and their associates.

According to Muḥammad b. Mūsā b. al-Furāt: The village that stood in what is now the Abū al-ʿAbbās quarter was the village of Muhammad b. Mūsā’s maternal grandfather, whose people were a dihqān family known as the Banū Zurārī. The village itself was called al-Wardāniyyah. Another village still existing today lies adjacent to the Abū Farwah quarter.

According to Ibrāhīm b. ʿĪsā: The area today known as Dār Saʿīd al-Khaṭīb was once a village called Sharafāniyyah. A palm grove belonging to it is still standing near Abū al-Jawn Bridge, Abū al-Jawn being one of the dihqāns of Baghdad who came from this village.

1145. The village and the two roads, i.e., the road of the Cages and the Chalk Road, were located in the Ḥarbiyyah quarter, a northwestern suburb of the Round City.
1146. Muḥammad b. Ḥārūn al-Rashīd (d. 198/813) was deposed by his brother al-Maʿmūn (for attempting to displace him in the accepted order of succession) after prolonged warfare between the Iraqi and Khūrāsānī supporters of these two claimants. Efl, s.v. al-Amin (F. Gabrieli).
1147. According to Lassner, Topography, 252, Muḥammad b. Mūsā was one of a famous family of public officials.
1148. For its site on the west side of Baghdad, see Le Strange, Baghdad, 126, and Lassner, Topography, 67.
1149. See Lassner, Topography, 67, for Banū Zarārī.
1150. According to Yaqūt, Buldān, V, 371, the village was named after a certain Wardān.
1151. See the mention of Ibrāhīm b. Abdallāh’s protector on p. 258.
1152. See Yaqūt, Buldān, III, 336; Le Strange, Baghdad, 129; Lassner, Topography, 67, 252.
1153. See Yaqūt, Buldān, III, 336; Lassner, Topography, 67, and Le Strange, Baghdad, 129.
According to a source: The land grant (qatráh) of al-Rabi'\textsuperscript{1154} was a common field for the people from a village called Banáwarí in the market town (rustāq) of al-Farawsyaj of Bādūrayā.\textsuperscript{1155}

According to Muḥammad b. Musá b. al-Furāt—his father or grandfather (he was unsure of the transmitter): One of the Bādūrayā dihqāns came to see me dressed in a torn shawl (taylasān).\textsuperscript{1156} I asked him who tore his shawl, and he replied, “It was torn, by God, in the crush of people today at a place where for ages hares and gazelles have been hunted.” He was referring to what is now the Bāb al-Karkh\textsuperscript{1157} area. They say that the outer land grant of al-Rabi'\textsuperscript{i} was only bestowed upon al-Rabi'\textsuperscript{i} by al-Mahdī. Al-Manṣūr had given him no more than the inner land grant of al-Rabi'\textsuperscript{i} on the same basis.

It is said that the Tābaq Canal\textsuperscript{1158} dates from the time of Kisrā\textsuperscript{1159} and that it is [identical with] the Bāb b. Bahrām b. Bābak Canal, named for the Bābak who built the palace\textsuperscript{1160} that lies under the castle of ʿĪsā b. ‘Alī\textsuperscript{1161} and who excavated this canal.

\textsuperscript{1154} Al-Rabi'\textsuperscript{i} b. Yūnus, al-Manṣūr’s chamberlain and vizier (see note 162), whose land grant was divided into an inner and an outer portion. The area that these occupied eventually became a commercial center of one of the most densely populated sections of the suburb al-Karkh. Yāqūt, Buldān, IV, 377; Lassner, Topography, 71, 187, 256–57; Le Strange, Baghdad, 58.

\textsuperscript{1155} For the rustāq of al-Farawsyaj and Bādūrayā, see Yāqūt, Buldān, IV, 257, and I, 317, respectively.

\textsuperscript{1156} See Ahsan, Social Life, 42–43, and Agius, Arabic Literary Works, 217–20.

\textsuperscript{1157} Bāb al-Karkh was the gate that opened onto the suburb of al-Karkh from the west. In 146/763–64, for reasons of security, Abū Ja'far had the markets relocated from within the walls of the Round City to this area. Tabari, III, 323–25; Le Strange, Baghdad, 63; Lassner, Topography, 60, 102, 247–48, and Shaping, 195, 197–202.

\textsuperscript{1158} “Tābaq” was the designation given to the section of the Karkhāyā that connected to the ʿĪsā Canal. The name of the canal is variously attributed to a certain Tābaq b. Ṣamyah, to a corruption of the name Bābak, and to a term for the construction tiles that were manufactured near where it flowed. Yāqūt, Buldān, V, 321; Lassner, Topography, 74–75, 258–59; Le Strange, Baghdad, 69, 81–84.

\textsuperscript{1159} Kisrā Anūshirwān (531–79 C.E.) and Kisrā Aparwiz (591–628 C.E.) were emperors of the late Sāsānid period renowned in Arab sources. EI², s.v. Kisrā [M. Morony].

\textsuperscript{1160} The Leiden edition reads al-‘aqr, while Yāqūt, Buldān, V, 321, gives al-‘aqd, which can mean “vault” or “arch.”

\textsuperscript{1161} ʿĪsā b. ‘Alī b. ‘Abdallāh b. ‘Abbās. See note 137.
It is mentioned that the Jaʿfar Harbor was a land grant (iqṭāʿ) from Abū Jaʿfar to his son Jaʿfar and that the Old Bridge dates from Persian times.

According to Ḥammād the Turk: Al-Manṣūr stayed in the monastery on the bank of the Tigris in the place [later] known as al-Khuld. We were there on a very hot summer day in 145. I had gone outside to sit with al-Rabīʿ and his retainers when a man approached and passed the guard on the way to the ruler’s section of the mosque. He sought permission to enter, so we announced him to al-Manṣūr. As he was accompanied by Salm b. Abī Salm, the caliph gave permission for him to enter. The man then informed the caliph of Muhammad’s uprising. Al-Manṣūr responded, “We shall immediately write to Egypt that supplies to the Haramayn be suspended.” “They are going to be in a kind of tight squeeze,” he added, “when Egyptian supplies and provisions are withheld from them.” The caliph then ordered a letter sent to al-ʿAbbas b. Muhammad, governor of the Jazirah, informing him about Muhammad and saying, “I am leaving as soon as I have written to al-Kūfah. Send me daily as many reinforcement troops from the Jazirah as you can.” He wrote in a similar fashion to the Syrian commanders, “If even one man were to show up here every day, I could augment my present Khurāsānī contingent. Furthermore, if that impostor [Muḥammad] hears that I am being reinforced, he will lose heart.” The caliph then proclaimed his immediate departure, and we left in a fierce heat for al-Kūfah, where he stayed until the war between Muhammad, Ibrahim and him was concluded. When he was free of them, he returned to Baghdad.

According to Aḥmad b. Thābit—a shaykh of the Quraysh:

When Abū Jaʿfar pulled out of Baghdad heading for al-Kūfah

---

1162. Al-Qanṭarah al-ʿAtiqah, which was located at the conjunction of the Greater Sarāt Canal with the Lesser Sarāt. Lassner, Topography, 277.
1163. The two sacred places, i.e., Mecca and Medina.
1164. Hum fi mithli harajatin. Glossarium, s.v. haraja, which explains the expression with allusion to an overgrown thicket.
1165. Abū Jaʿfar’s brother. See note 218.
1166. Ahmad b. Thābit b. ʿAttāb al-Rāzī, frequently a transmitter for Abū Maʿshar Najīh b. ʿAbd al-Rahmān al-Sindi [d. 170/787], was a source for maghāzī material who was born in Medina but died in Baghdad. GAS, I, 292; EI², s.v. Abū Maʿshar [E. Rosenthal].
The Events of the Year 145

(having received news via post dispatch about Muḥammad b. `Abdallāh’s uprising in Medina), several of his close companions, i.e., 'Uṯmān b. Umārah b. Ḥuraym,1167 Ishāq b. Muslim al-'Uqayli,1168 'Abdallāh b. Rabī’ al-Madānī, watched him go off on his mount surrounded by his brothers. 'Uṯmān said, “I think Muḥammad is going to lose, as will those of his family who have sided with him. Wiliness, cunning, and sagacity form the very stuffing of the robes of this `Abbāsi. As for Muḥammad’s waging war against him, the words of Ibn Jidhl al-Ṭī‘ān1169 are apposite:

How many raids and cavalry charges
has he faced when the meeting grew hot,
Forcing their arrogance back until he made them bend,
with a lance in which no warp could be seen.”

At this Ishāq b. Muslim added, “By God, I have examined him closely! I touched his shaft and found it rough. I clasped it and found it hard. I tasted it and found it bitter. Al-Manṣūr and his accompanying brothers remind one of what Rabi‘ah b. Mukaddam1170 said:

Horsem en rise up before me, their faces like
lamps appearing in the darkness, shining brightly.
Guided by a leader who is calamity’s brother,
frowning on the night march, for noon suns have scorched him.”

---

1167. While this is the only mention of 'Uṯmān in Ṭabarī, his father, 'Umārah b. Ḥuraym (or Ḥuraym) al-Murri, appears in the year 111/729–30 as head of the vanguard for al-Junayd b. 'Abd al-Rahmān, Hishām b. 'Abd al-Malik’s newly appointed governor of Khurāsān. He was subsequently imprisoned by al-Junayd’s successor, 'Aṣīm b. 'Abdallāh al-Hilālī. Ṭabarī, II, 1529, 1565; Crone, Slaves, 98.

1168. Ishāq b. Muslim served in Armenia under Hishām b. 'Abd al-Malik’s governor Maslamah b. 'Abd al-Malik and was later appointed governor there. Ṭabarī, II, 1635, 1871, III, 57–58; Balādhurī, Futūḥ, 206; Crone, Slaves, 106.


1170. Rabi‘ah b. Mukaddam was a poet-hero of the Banū Kinānah. Ibid., I, 47, II, 480.
Finally ‘Abdallāh b. al-Rabī’ said, “He is the lion in a lair, a restless wild cat, a predator to his peers who robs them of their spirit. When war is stirred up he is as Abū Sufyān b. al-Ḥārithī said:

Ours is a shaykh, who when war rolls up its sleeves, instantly takes the initiative before his brethren.”

Abū Ja‘far continued on to Qaṣr Ibn Hubayrah and then settled in al-Kūfah, from where he dispatched troops. When the war was over, he went back to Baghdad and finished building it.

In this year Ibrāhīm b. ‘Abdallāh b. Ḥasan, the brother of Muhammad b. ‘Abdallāh b. Ḥasan, came out in open revolt in al-Baṣrah and waged war against Abū Ja‘far al-Manṣūr. In this year he also was killed.

The Reason for Ibrāhīm b. ‘Abdallāh’s Revolt and Murder and How It Came About

According to ‘Ubaydallāh b. Muḥammad b. Ḥafs—his father: Muḥammad and Ibrāhīm grew apprehensive when Abū Ja‘far seized ‘Abdallāh b. Ḥasan. They left for ‘Adan, but feeling afraid there, they continued on by sea as far as Sind. There, however, they were denounced to ‘Umar b. Ḥafs, so they left for al-Kūfah where Abū Ja‘far was currently in residence.


---

1171. Al-Mughirah b. al-Ḥārith b. ‘Abd al-Muṭṭalib was a cousin of the Prophet. He first appears in Tabari giving Abū Lahab an account of the Qurashi defeat at Badr, but is especially remembered for his loyalty to Muḥammad at the battle of Ḥunayn. Tabari, I, 1339; Caskel, Gamharat an-nasab, I, 7, II, 419; Balādhuri, Ansāb al-ashraf, III, 4, 266; Dhahabi, Siyar, I, 202–5.

1172. ‘Umar b. Ḥafs b. Abī Ṣufrah al-Ata‘ī who, like the army commander of ‘Isā b. Mūsā mentioned earlier, was also known as Hazārmard. See note 374.


The Events of the Year 145

had a concubine of his with him, and I used to chat with her, but we didn’t realize who they were until Ibrāhīm made his uprising. At that time I went to her and asked, “Are you my friend?” “I am so,” was her reply. “No, by God, the earth has not given us a safe place to settle for five years, being at various times in Fārs, Kirmān,1175 al-Jabal, the Hijāz, and the Yemen.”

According to ʿUmar—Abū Nuʿaym al-Faḍl b. Dukayn—Muṭahhar b. al-Ḥārith: Together with Ibrāhīm we were on our way from Mecca to al-Baṣra, our group numbering ten in all. A bedouin accompanied us part of the way, so we asked him his name. “So and so, son of Abū Maṣād al-Kalbi,”1176 he replied, staying with us until we drew near al-Baṣra. One day the bedouin turned to me and asked, “Isn’t that Ibrāhīm b. ʿAbdallāh b. Ḥasan?” “No,” said I, “that’s a Syrian fellow.” When we were a night’s journey out from al-Baṣra, Ibrāhīm went on ahead while we stayed behind him and entered the next morning.

According to ʿUmar—Abū Ṣafwān Naṣr b. Qudayd b. Naṣr b. Sayyār: Ibrāhīm’s arrival in al-Baṣrah occurred at the beginning of the year 143 as people were returning from the Pilgrimage. The person who made advance preparations for him, took care of his expenses, and rode as counterbalance in his litter was Yahyā b. Ziyād b. Ḥassān al-Nabāṭī. He lodged Ibrāhīm in his house in the Banū Layth1177 [quarter], and purchased a foreign slave girl from Sind for him. Ibrāhīm got her with child in Yahyā b. Ziyād’s house.

According to Ibn Qudayd b. Naṣr: He was present at the funeral procession for that child, and Yahyā b. Ziyād said the prayer for him.

According to ʿUmar—Muḥammad b. Maʿrūf—his father: Ibrāhīm stayed in al-Ḥiyār,1178 which is in Syria, with al-Qaʿqāʾ b.

1175. Fārs and Kirmān were adjoining provinces that lay between the Persian Gulf and the Great Desert.


1177. Layth b. Bakr was a clan of the Banū Kinānah. Ibid., I, 36, II, 376; Ibn Ḥazm, Jamḥarat ansāb al-ʿarab, 81, 389.

1178. Hiyar Banī Qaʿqāʾ was a locality near Qimnasrīn that Walīd b. ʿAbd al-Malik had given to his secretary al-Qaʿqāʾ b. Khulayd [or Khālid] al-ʿAbsi. Yaḥūt, Buldān, II, 327; Ṭabari, II, 837.
Abbasid Authority Affirmed

Khulayd al-`Absi’s family.1179 Al-Faḍl b. Șāliḥ b. ʿAlī, who was then in authority at Qinnasrin, wrote to Abū Jaʿfar on a slip of paper that he appended to the foot of his letter. He told him about Ibrāhīm, about how he had searched for him but had found that now Ibrāhīm had been one step ahead of him, moving down to al-Baṣrah. The letter reached Abū Jaʿfar, and he read the first part of it, but finding nothing but the [final] salutation, he tossed the letter to Abū Ayyūb al-Mūriyānī who, in turn, pitched it into his register. When they were about to answer the governors’ correspondence, Abān b. Șadaqaḥ,1180 who was then Abū Ayyūb’s secretary, opened al-Faḍl’s letter to look at its date, and he came upon the slip of paper. As soon as he saw the beginning of it, i.e., the words “[I am informing]1181 the Commander of the Faithful,” he put it back in the letter. Abān then went to see Abū Jaʿfar and read the letter aloud. Consequently, the caliph ordered spies sent as well as checkpoints and watch posts set up.

According to ʿUmar—all-Faḍl b. ʿAbd al-Rahmān b. al-Faḍl—his father: I heard Ibrāhīm say, “The search in al-Mawsil pressed upon me until I actually sat at the tables of Abū Jaʿfar. It happened this way: He arrived there in search of me and, confused and exposed [lit. the earth spat me forth],1182 I was at my wits’ end. But the caliph had established a search and checkpoints, and had summoned the people to eat with him in the morning. I, therefore, entered with those who entered and ate with those who ate. Then I left when the search had been called off.”


---

1180. During the caliphate of al-Mahdi, Abān b. Șadaqaḥ [d. 167/783–84] was appointed secretary to the caliph’s son Hārūn al-Rashīd in 160 and then to his son Mūsā al-Ḥādī in 161. Șafādī, Wāfī, V, 301; Sourdel, Vizirat ʿabbāside, I, 97–98.
1181. Ukhbiru. Tabari, Addenda et Emendanda, p. DCCXLIV.
1182. Qadimah yatlabuni fa-tahabbartu fa-lafa;atni al-art!.
1183. Al-Nil was a city southwest of Baghdad that lay just below a canal linking the Euphrates and Tigris, i.e., the Great Šarāṭ. Yağūt, Buldān, V, 334; Cornu, Répertoires, 31; Le Strange, Lands, 72–73.
The Events of the Year 145

According to 'Umar—Naṣr b. Qudayd b. Naṣr: Ibrāhīm had corresponded with a group of people in [Abū Ja'far's] camp who were sympathetic to his cause. They wrote asking him to come to them and promising him to make a violent attack on Abū Ja'far. Ibrāhīm, therefore, went as far as Abū Ja'far's encampment. At that time, the caliph was staying in Baghdad at the monastery. He had already drawn the city plan of Baghdad and made up his mind to build. Now Abū Ja'far owned a mirror into which he could look and tell his enemy from his friend. It has been asserted that he looked into it and said, “O Musayyab, by God, I have seen Ibrāhīm in my camp. Nowhere on earth is there an enemy more hostile to me than he. Consider carefully what you are doing.”

According to 'Umar—'Abdallāh b. Muḥammad, the son of the gatekeeper: Abū Ja'far ordered the Old Bridge built over the Sarāt Canal. Going out to view it, he spotted Ibrāhīm, but the latter slipped off. He left with the crowd and went to a corn chandler, seeking asylum with him. The corn seller had Ibrāhīm ascend to one of his upper rooms. As Abū Ja'far intensified the search for him and posted lookouts everywhere, Ibrāhīm was confined to his hiding place. Abū Ja'far made the most exhaustive search possible, but Ibrāhīm kept his whereabouts well concealed.

According to 'Umar—Muḥammad b. Ma'rūf—his father and Naṣr b. Qudayd—Ibn Qudayd's father—'Abdallāh b. Muḥammad Ibn al-Bawwāb, Kathīr b. al-Naḍr b. Kathīr, 'Umar b. Idrīs, Ibn Abī Sufyān al-'Ammī, who agree on the main part of the account but disagree about some of it: While Ibrāhīm kept close, living in fear of the watch, he had the company of a man from the Banū al-'Amm. 'Umar said: Abū Ṣafwān [Naṣr b. Qudayd] told me that the man's name was Rawḥ b. Thaqaf, and Ibn al-Bawwāb said that his patronymic was Abū 'Abdallāh; others have told me that his name was Sufyān b. Ḥayyān b. Mūsā.) This man, whom 'Umar identified as the grandfather of the 'Ammī who recounted this to him, said: “I said to Ibrāhīm, ‘Events have fallen out as you see. There is no way out of risk and hazard.’ Ibrāhīm replied, ‘You

---

do it, then!” The man then approached al-Rabi'\(^{1186}\) and asked his permission to enter. “Who are you?” asked al-Rabi'. “I am Sufyān al-'Ammī,” the man replied. Al-Rabi' then ushered him into Abū Ja'far's presence, but when the caliph saw him, he spoke abusively to the man. Sufyān said, “O Commander of the Faithful, I deserve what you say, yet I come to you now in abstention and repentance. From me you shall have anything you want, if you will give me what I ask.” “What do you have for me?” asked the caliph. Sufyān answered, ‘I can bring you Ibrāhīm b. ‘Abdallāh b. Ḥasan. I've had long experience of him and his family but I have not found anything good in them. What will you give me if I do this?’ “Anything you request,” replied the caliph, “now tell me where is Ibrāhīm?” “He has already entered Baghdād,” Sufyān said, “or he will enter it in the near future.”

According to 'Umar: Abū Sa’fwan [Naṣr b. Qudayd] told me that he said to the caliph, “Ibrāhīm is in 'Abdasi,\(^{1187}\) I left him in the house of Khālid b. Nahīk.\(^{1188}\) [In return for this information] please write a travel authorization for me, for a servant of mine, and for an official guide, and transport me by postal courier.”

According to 'Umar: A certain person said to the caliph: “Send an army with me and write a travel authorization for me and for a servant of mine, and I will bring Ibrāhīm to you.” The caliph, therefore, wrote a travel authorization and gave him an armed force, saying, “Here are 1,000 dinārs; make good use of them.” “I don’t need that much,” the man replied, taking 300 dinārs. Approaching his goal, he came to Ibrāhīm while the latter was staying in a house. He was wearing a coarse shirt of wool and a turban. [Others say that he was wearing a full-sleeved gown (qabā')\(^{1189}\) of the type worn by servants.] The man yelled at him to stand, and Ibrāhīm jumped up with [apparent] fright. The man

---

1187. Or 'Abdāsi/'Abdās. Although precise identification has not been made, this place [Persian Afdāsahī] is thought to have been in the vicinity of the Nahr al-Madhār, a name given to the most eastern stretch of the Tigris. Yaqūt, Buldān, IV, 77; Le Strange, Lands, 42–43; Cornu, Répertoires, 25; Morony, Iraq, 155, 161.
1188. Khālid b. Nahīk b. Qays al-Kindī, whose tribal affiliation is identified more precisely as the Banū Dhuhl b. Mu‘āwiyyah, was killed in battle against the Kharijite rebel Shabib b. Yazid while commanding 'Uthmān b. Qaṭān's right wing. Ṭabarī, II, 910, 935–36; Caskel, Gamharat an-nasab, I, 233, II, 342.
1189. See note 980.
then proceeded to issue commands and prohibitions all the way to al-Madā'in. There the bridge master would not allow him to cross, so he handed over to him the travel authorization. "Where is your servant?" asked the bridge master. "Here he is," the man replied. When the bridge master looked into the servant's face, he exclaimed, "By God, this is no servant of yours; this is Ibrāhīm b. 'Abdallāh b. Ḥasan. Still, go right ahead." Thus he let the two of them go and then ran away himself.

According to 'Umar: Another source said, "The two of them rode the post road as far as 'Abdasi. From there they took a boat to al-Baṣrah, where they went into hiding." Yet another source reports: "The 'Ammi left Abū Ja'far's presence and went straight to al-Baṣrah. He contrived to bring them to a house having two doors and, posting ten of the escort at one of the doors, said, "Do not move until I come to you." He then went out the other door and left them, getting rid of the armed escort, so as to be on his own. Having done that, he went into hiding. Eventually news of these activities reached Sufyān b. Mu'āwiyyah, who sent for and assembled them [those whom he had left]. He also made a search for the 'Ammi, which proved fruitless.

According to 'Umar—Ibn 'Ā'ishah—his father: The one who schemed to rescue Ibrāhīm and the 'Ammi from Ibn Mu'āwiyyah was [named] 'Amr b. Shaddād. According to 'Umar—someone from al-Madā'in—al-Ḥasan b. 'Amr b. Shaddād—his father: Ibrāhīm came my way in al-Madā'in looking for a place to hide. I let him stay in a house of mine that lay on the bank of the Tigris. Subsequently, I was denounced to the governor of al-Madā'in, who beat me with one hundred lashes. I did not disclose Ibrāhīm's whereabouts, however, and when he stopped beating me, I went to tell Ibrāhīm, who then went off.

According to 'Umar—al-'Abbās b. Sufyān b. Yaḥyā b. Ziyād, the mawlā of al-Ḥajjāj b. Yūsuf [Yaḥyā b. Ziyād was one of those
captured from the camp of Qatari b. al-Fujā'ah\textsuperscript{1194}: When Ibrāhīm made his uprising, I was a lad of five. I heard our elders say that he came through here on his way down to al-Baṣrah from Syria. `Abd al-Rahīm b. Ṣafwān (one of the mawlās attached to al-Ḥajjāj who were captured from the camp of Qatari) went out to him and walked along with him, getting him across the tight spots. Later someone who had seen him came forward and said, "I saw `Abd al-Rahīm with a sly-looking fellow who was wearing a rose-colored waist wrap and carrying a hazelwood bow\textsuperscript{1195} to shoot." When `Abd al-Rahīm returned, he was asked about such a man but feigned ignorance. In fact, Ibrāhīm used to disguise himself in that way.

According to `Umar—Naṣr b. Qudayd: Upon his return from Baghdad, Ibrāhīm stayed with Abū Farwah among the Kindah.\textsuperscript{1196} He went into hiding and sent for his followers to give them assignments for the revolt.

According to `Umar—`Alī b. Ismā'īl b. Ṣāliḥ b. Mitham al-Ahwāzī—`Abdallāh b. al-Ḥasan b. Ḥabīb—his father: While Muhammad b. Ḥuṣayn\textsuperscript{1197} was searching for him, Ibrāhīm was in hiding at my place on the bank of the Dujayl\textsuperscript{1198} near the city of al-Ahwāz.\textsuperscript{1199} One day Muḥammad said, "The Commander of the Faithful wrote to tell me that astrologers had informed him that Ibrāhīm was in al-Ahwāz living on an island between two

---

\textsuperscript{1194} Qatari b. al-Fujā'ah was the last important leader of the Azraqi branch of Kharijites. He died in 78–79/698–99 during the attack against the Azariqah made under the command of Sufyān b. al-Abrah. \textit{EI²}, s.v. (G. Levi della Vida); Madelung, \textit{Religious Trends}, 57–58; Pellat, \textit{Le milieu baṣrien}, 200–11.

\textsuperscript{1195} Qawsu julāhiqin. Ibn Ṭanẓūr, \textit{Lisān al-`Arab}, X, 37, offers bunduq as a synonym for julāhiq and notes a Persian etymology for the latter.

\textsuperscript{1196} Kindah were a prominent tribal group of South Arabian origin. \textit{EI²}, s.v. (I. Shahid), Caskel, \textit{Gamharat an-nasab}, I, 176, 233, II, 371–72.

\textsuperscript{1197} Muḥammad b. al-Ḥuṣayn al-‘Abdī was governor of al-Ahwāz. See note 10.

\textsuperscript{1198} "Dujayl" was the Arabic designation for the Kārūn river, the largest river in southern Iran. It was known as the Dujayl of al-Ahwāz to distinguish it from the Dujayl Canal, which, during the time of al-Ḥanṣūr, connected the Tigris and Euphrates on a northern course parallel to the Nahr Ṣāa. \textit{EI²}, s.v. Kārūn (M. Streck and J. Lassner), Le Strange, \textit{Lands}, 232–36, and \textit{Baghdad}, 48–49; Barthold, \textit{Geography of Iran}, 188–92.

\textsuperscript{1199} Al-Ahwāz was the capital of the province of Khūzistān. In the ‘Abbāsid period it was a point of transshipment for the commercial use of the Kārūn River. \textit{EI²}, s.v. (L. Lockhart), Yaqūt, \textit{Buldān}, I, 284–86; Le Strange, \textit{Lands}, 232–34.
rivers. I have searched so thoroughly for him on the island, i.e.,
the one between the al-Shâh Jurd and the Dujayl rivers, that I am
sure he is not there. I have now decided to search the city for him
in the morning, because the Commander of the Faithful may
have meant the area between the Dujayl River and the Masruqân
Canal."\(^{1200}\) So I went to Ibrâhim and said to him, "Tomorrow you
will be the object of a search in this area." I then stayed with him
for the rest of the day and at nightfall I took him to stay in the
closer area of Dasht Arbuk,\(^ {1201}\) which lies outside of al-
Kathth.\(^ {1202}\) I returned that night and stood waiting to see if
Muḥammad would make a search for him in the morning. He did
so, however, only as the day was waning and the sun about to set.
At this point I went out to Ibrâhim and brought him back in.
Riding on two donkeys, we appeared in the city at the time of the
last prayer of evening. As we entered the city and passed near the
fissured mountain \(\text{al-jabal al-maqtū}\), we ran into the vanguard
of Ibn Hūṣayn’s cavalry. While the cavalry closed in on me,
Ibrâhim threw himself from his donkey, withdrew aside and
squatted down to urinate. Not one of the horsemen turned toward
me until I reached Ibn Hūṣayn. The latter asked me, "Abū
Muḥammad, where are you coming from at such an hour?" I re-
plied, "I spent the evening with a member of my family." "Shouldn’t I send with you someone who can help you to get
where you’re going?" he inquired. "No," I answered, ‘I’m quite
close to home.’ Ibn Hūṣayn went on searching while I kept going
my way until the last of his associates was out of sight. I then
turned around to go back to Ibrâhim and hunted around for his
donkey until I found it. We mounted\(^ {1203}\) and went on our way to
spend the night with our people. Ibrâhim said, "You know, by

1200. Above the city of Shustar (Arabic Tustar), the Kârûn River divided into
two branches (thus creating an island) that reunited after about thirty miles at
‘Askar Makram. The eastern branch of this divide was known as the Masruqân
Canal. The river designation “al-Shâh Jurd” here, which is mentioned only here
in Ṭabarî, might be the name given to a stretch of one of these branches. Le
Strange, Lands, 235–38; EI², s.v. Kârûn [M. Streck and J. Lassner].
1201. Ṭabarî later, III, 301, 1845, identifies this as a desert area that lay about
one mil from the citadel of al-Ahwâz. See also Yâqût, Buldân, I, 137.
1202. The only identification for this vocalization that Yâqût, Buldân, IV, 638,
is able to offer is a village near Bukhârâ.
1203. Fa-rakibnā, following the Leiden edition, note b.
God, yesterday I urinated blood. Send someone to look.” Coming to the place where he had urinated, I found that he had indeed passed blood.

According to `Umar—al-Faḍl b. ʿAbd al-Raḥim b. Sulaymān b. ʿAlī: Abū Jaʿfar said, “Since the crowds of al-Baṣrah encompassed him, the matter of ʿIbrāhīm has become hard for me to follow up.”

According to `Umar—Muḥammad b. Misʿar b. al-ʿAlāʾ: When ʿIbrāhīm reached al-Baṣrah, he called upon the people to support his cause, and Mūsā b. ʿUmar b. Mūsā b. ʿAbdallāh b. Khāzīm1204 responded. Mūsā then took ʿIbrāhīm, incognito, to see al-Naḍr b. Iṣḥāq b. ʿAbdallāh b. Khāzīm. Mūsā said to al-Naḍr b. Iṣḥāq, “This fellow is ʿIbrāhīm’s messenger.” ʿIbrāhīm then talked with him, asking him to join his uprising. “O fellow,” replied al-Naḍr, “how could I give the oath of allegiance to your master when my grandfather ʿAbdallāh b. Khāzīm was at odds with his grandfather1205 ʿAlī b. Abī Ṭālib, joining forces with those who opposed him?” ʿIbrāhīm responded, “Quit talking about the deeds and ways of our forefathers. All of that is an ancient debt, while I am summoning you to a [clear] duty.” “By God,” retorted al-Naḍr, “I only mentioned that to you as a joke. That’s not what keeps me from supporting your master. Rather, I see no point in fighting, and I’m not indebted to him.” ʿIbrāhīm then left, but Mūsā stayed behind and said to al-Naḍr, “By God, that was ʿIbrāhīm himself.” Al-Naḍr exclaimed, “By God’s life, you shouldn’t have done that! If you had let me know, I would have spoken to him in quite another way.”

According to `Umar—Naṣr b. Qudayd: ʿIbrāhīm summoned people to his cause while living in Abū Farwah’s house. The first to give him the oath of allegiance were Numaylah b. Murrah,1206 ʿAfwallāh b. Sufyān, ʿAbd al-Waḥīd b. Ziyād,1207 ʿUmar b. Salamah al-Hujaymī, and ʿUbaydallāh b. Yaḥyā b. Ḥuḍayn1208 al-

---

1204. His great-grandfather ʿAbdallāh b. Khāzīm al-Sulami [d. 73/692-93] was an Umayyad governor of Khurāsān. EI², s.v. ʿAbd Allāh b. Khāzīm [H. A. R. Gibb].
1205. ʿIbrāhīm was actually the great-great-grandson of ʿAlī b. Abī Ṭālib.
1206. See note 1071.
1207. When Muḥammad b. Sulaymān became governor of al-Baṣrah, Ibn Ziyād’s house and that of Ibn Sufyān were among those he destroyed upon orders from Abū Jaʿfar. Ţabari, III, 327.
1208. Ţabari, Addenda et Emendanda, p. DCCXLIV.
The Events of the Year 145

Raqāshī. They, in turn, urged the people to join him. After them, enough young men among the Arabs answered the call, including al-Mughirah b. al-Faz`1209 and others like him, that people assumed Ibrāhīm could count 4,000 men in his enlistment rolls. As his affair became well known, they said to him, “If only you were to move to the heart of al-Baṣrah, just see how many would join you!” Feeling revived, Ibrāhīm moved and stayed at the house of Abū Marwān,1210 a Naysābūrī mawla of the Banū Sulaym.

According to ‘Umar—Yūnus b. Najdah: Ibrāhīm was staying among the Banū Rāsib at ‘Abd al-Rahmān b. Ḥarb’s house. He then left his house, leading a group of his partisans that included ‘Afwallāh b. Suﬁyān, Burd b. Labid (one of the Banū Yashkur)1211, al-Maṣṣā al-Ṭaghlibi,1212 al-Ṭuhawi,1213 al-Mughirah b. al-Faz`, Numaylah b. Murrah, and Yaḥyā b. ‘Amr al-Humānī. They passed the extensive tract of the Banū ‘Aqīl1214 on their way out to al-Ṭufawah.1215 They then passed Karzam’s house1216 and Nāfīr Iblis1217 on their way to Abū Marwān’s house in the Banū Yashkur graveyard.

According to ‘Umar—Ibn ‘Afwallāh b. Suﬁyān—his father: One day I came to Ibrāhīm, finding him upset. He told me that he had received a letter from his brother informing him that he [Muḥammad] had made his uprising and commanding Ibrāhīm to stage his own revolt. He was dumbfounded with that news and greatly worried about it. I tried to smooth over the matter for him, saying, “Affairs have already worked together for you. You have al-Maṣṣā, al-Ṭuhawi, al-Mughirah, and me, as well as various

1209. Al-Mughirah b. al-Faz` is first identified in Ṭabārī, III, 76, as a supporter of Bassām b. Ibrāhīm, a Khurāsānī officer who rebelled against the caliph Abū al-‘Abbās in 134/751–52.
1210. His house, too, is listed by Ṭabārī, III, 327, as among those destroyed upon Abū Ja`far’s orders. See note 1207.
1213. His full name is never given in Ṭabārī.
1215. Although not included in Yaqūt, this place is later mentioned in Ṭabārī’s account of the Zanj rebellion at III, 1855.
1217. The site is not mentioned in the standard geographical sources.
others, on your side. Tonight we will go and break open the prison, and when you awake tomorrow you will have a host of people with you.” At this he regained his spirits.

According to ʿUmar—Sahl b. ʿAqīl b. Ismāʿīl—his father: When Muḥammad came out in open revolt, Abū Jaʿfar sent for Jaʿfar b. Ḥanẓalāh al-Bahrānī, a man of good judgment, and said, “Tell me what you think. Muḥammad has now made an uprising in Medina.” “Send the armies to al-ʿAṣrāḥ,” said Jaʿfar. The caliph then told him to leave until he was sent for. When Ibrāhīm reached al-ʿAṣrāḥ, the caliph again sent for Jaʿfar and said, “Ibrāhīm has now reached al-ʿAṣrāḥ.” Jaʿfar b. Ḥanẓalāh responded, “That’s why I was afraid for it; dispatch armies against him posthaste.” “Why are you afraid for al-ʿAṣrāḥ?” asked Abū Jaʿfar. “Because Muḥammad has made his uprising in Medina,” said Jaʿfar, “and they are not sufficiently warlike to sustain the situation by themselves. The people of al-Kūfah are under your foot, while the Syrians are enemies of the family of Abū Ṭālib. That leaves only al-ʿAṣrāḥ.” Abū Jaʿfar thus sent the two sons of ʿAqīl, both Khurasanī officers from the tribe of Tayy. They arrived in al-ʿAṣrāḥ, which was then governed by Sufyān b. Muʿāwiyah, and he gave them a place to stay.


According to ʿUmar: When Ibrāhīm arrived in al-ʿAṣrāḥ, the caliph sent for Budayl and said, “Ibrāhīm has now reached al-
The Events of the Year 145

Baṣrah. Overtake him with the army and set al-Ahwāz ablaze against him.”

According to Muḥammad b. Ḥaṣṣ al-Dimashqi, a Qurashi mawłā: When Muḥammad made his uprising, Abū Jaʿfar sought the advice of a Syrian shaykh who had sound opinions. The shaykh said, “Dispatch 4,000 Syrian troops to al-Baṣrah.” The caliph paid no attention to him, saying, “The shaykh is feebleminded.” Later, however, he sent for him again and said, “Ibrāhīm has now made an uprising in al-Baṣrah.” To this the shaykh responded, “Send against him a force of Syrians.” “Woe to you,” said the caliph, “whom can I trust to deal with them?” The shaykh replied, “Write to your governor there, telling him to send you ten men every day by the post road.” Accordingly, Abū Jaʿfar sent that order to Syria.

According to ‘Umar b. Ḥaṣṣ: I remember my father paying the army during that time. Although but a mere lad then, I held the lantern for him while he paid them at night.

According to ‘Umar—Sahl b. ‘Aqīl—Salm b. Farqad: When Jaʿfar b. Ḥanżaḷah counseled Abū Jaʿfar to have the Syrian army sent down to him, they began arriving in contingents, some right on the tracks of others. Intending to alarm the people of al-Kūfah with them, Abū Jaʿfar ordered the soldiers, when dark of night concealed them in his camp, to go back but to keep well away from the road. The next morning they entered, leaving the people of al-Kūfah in no doubt that they were another army in addition to the first.

According to ‘Abd al-Hamīd, a servant to Abū al-ʿAbbās: Muḥammad b. Yazīd was one of Abū Jaʿfar’s army commanders. He had a chestnut-colored mount of Persian breed, and frequently while we were in al-Kūfah he rode by us on it. [When he stood] his head was on level with that of the horse. Abū Jaʿfar dispatched

---

1220. Wa-ash'il al-Ahwāza 'alayhi. Ṭabarī, Addenda et Emendanda, p. DCCLXV.
1221. Ṭabarī, III, 294, later identifies him as chamberlain to Sulaymān b. Mujālid.
1222. Bi-ḥadri jundi al-sha'mi ilayhi. Ṭabarī, Glossarium, s.v. hadara.
1224. Muḥammad b. Yazīd b. 'Imrān.
1225. Qad sawā ra'sahu ra'sahu. Ṭabarī, Glossarium, s.v. sawiya.
him to al-Baṣrah, where he stayed until İbrāhīm came out in open revolt. Eventually, İbrāhīm seized and imprisoned him.

According to Saʿid b. Nūḥ b. Mujašid al-_Dbārī: Abū Jaʿfar sent Mujašid and Muḥammad, the sons of Yazīd b. ʿImrān and natives of Abīward, as army commanders. Mujašid arrived before Muḥammad; then Muḥammad arrived on the night that İbrāhīm began his rebellion. Sufyān obstructed them, imprisoning them near him in the governor's quarters until İbrāhīm made his uprising. Then İbrāhīm seized and shackled them. Along with those two, Abū Jaʿfar had also dispatched an army commander from ‘Abd al-Qays whose name was Muʿammār.

According to Yūnus b. Najdah: Mujašid b. Yazīd al-Dbārī reached Sufyān at Abū Jaʿfar's behest with 1,500 cavalry and 500 foot soldiers.

According to Saʿid b. al-Ḥasan b. Tasnim b. al-Ḥawārī b. Ziyād b. ʿAmr b. al-ʾAshraf: I heard various people I do not count among our associates mention that Abū Jaʿfar sought advice about the situation with İbrāhīm and was told, "The people of al-Kūfah are İbrāhīm's partisans (ṣīḥah). In fact, al-Kūfah is a furiously boiling pot and you are its lid, so go and remain there." The caliph did so.

According to Muslim al-Khaṣi ("the Eunuch"), Muḥammad b. Sulaymān's mawlā: The affair of İbrāhīm occurred when I was some ten years old. In those days I belonged to Abū Jaʿfar, and we were lodged in al-Ḥāshimiyyah (of al-Kūfah) while the caliph himself was living in al-Ruṣāfah, behind al-Kūfah. The totality of his army stationed in his encampment numbered about 1,500, and al-Musayyab b. Zuhayr commanded his personal guard. The army was divided into three parts of 500 men each. As soldiers patrolled around the whole of al-Kūfah every night, the caliph commanded a herald to call out: "Whomever we seize after dark has declared himself open game." When the guard seized a man after dark, they would wrap him in a woolen cloak, carry

1226. "Abiward," or "Baward," was the name of a town and district in northwestern Khurāsān. El², s.v. [V. Minorsky]; Le Strange, Lands, 394–95; Yāqūt, Buldān, I, 86–87.
1227. Banū ‘Abd al-Qays b. Afsā were a component tribe of Rabiʿah. Caskel, Gamharat an-nasab, I, 141, 168, II, 127; El², s.v. ‘Abd al-Kays [W. Caskel].
1228. Al-ʾAshraf was the son of al-Manṣūr's governor in Oman. See note 796.
him off, and make him spend the night near them. In the morn-
ing they would make inquiries about him, and if they could ascer-
tain his innocence, they would release him. If not, they impris-
oned him.

According to Abū al-Ḥasan al-Ḥadhdhāʾ ("the Cobbler"): Abū Jaʿfar made the people wear black, so I used to see people dyeing
their clothes with ink.

According to ʿAlī b. al-Jaʿd: In those days I saw the people of
al-Kūfah take to wearing black clothes to such an extent that,
even among the grocers, one of them would dye his garment
[from his stock of] paints and then wear it.

According to Jawwād b. Ghālib—al-ʿAbbās b. Salm, Ḥaṭṭabah’s
mawlā: Whenever the Commander of the Faithful Abū Jaʿfar sus-
pected anyone in al-Kūfah of favoring Ibrāhīm, he would order my
father Salm to search for him. The latter would then wait until
nightfall, when people were quiet, to set a ladder against the
man’s dwelling. He would thereby burst in upon him in his house
in order to drive him out, kill him, and take his signet ring.

According to Abū Sahl Jawwād:1229 I heard Jamīl, Muḥammad
b. Abī al-ʿAbbas’s mawlā, say to al-ʿAbbās b. Salm, “By God, had
your father bequeathed nothing but the signet rings of those cit-
izens of al-Kūfah whom he killed, you would be the best provided
for of sons.”

According to Sahl b. ʿAquīl—Salm b. Farqad, the chamberlain of
Sulaymān b. Muḥālid: I had a friend in al-Kūfah who came to me
and said, “My dear fellow, you should know that the people of al-
Kūfah are preparing to pounce on your master. If you can settle
your family in a safe place, then do so. I went to Sulaymān b.
Muḥālid and gave him this information. He, in turn, informed
Abū Jaʿfar. Now Abū Jaʿfar had a spy named Ibn Muqrin1230
among the citizens of al-Kūfah, who was by profession a money
changer. He sent for him and said, “Woe to you, the people of al-
Kūfah have become stirred up.” “No, by God, Commander of the
Faithful,” replied Ibn Muqrin, “I am your advocate with them.”
The caliph relied on his statement and left them alone.

1229. Probably Jawwād b. Ghālib b. Mūsā, the mawlā of the Banū ʿIjl. See the
preceding paragraph and p. 262.
1230. Thus vocalized in the Leiden text, but see i, 2025, for Maʿqīl b. Muqarrin.
According to Yahyā b. Maymūn of the people of al-Qādisiyyah: I heard a number of the people of al-Qādisiyyah mention that a Khurāsānī named something-or-other b. Maʿqil, and whose patronymic was Abū al-Faḍl, was put in charge of al-Qādisiyyah to prevent the people of al-Kūfah from coming to [the aid of] Ibrāhīm. People were posted as watchmen on the road to al-Baṣrah because Kūfans would come first to al-Qādisiyyah, then to al-ʿUdhayb,1231 and finally to Wādi al-Sibāʾ.1232 At this point they would detour to the left through open country until they reached al-Baṣrah. A band of twelve men left al-Kūfah and got as far as Wādi al-Sibāʾ. There one of the Banū Asad233 mawls, named Bakr, who was from the town of Sharāf,234 encountered them outside Wāqiṣah,235 two mūls from the people living near the mosque called the Mosque of the Mawls. Then Ibn Maʿqil came, and Bakr told him what was happening. Ibn Maʿqil, therefore, followed the group of twelve, overtaking them in Khaffān,1236 which is four farsakh237 from al-Qādisiyyah, and killed them all.

According to Ibrāhīm b. Salm:1238 Al-Furāfiṣah al-ʿIlī had planned to make a surprise assault on al-Kūfah but refrained from

---

1231. Al-ʿUdhayb was an oasis belonging to the Banū Tamīm that lay about ten miles south of al-Qādisiyyah on the pilgrimage route from al-Kūfah to Mecca. Yaʿqūt, Buldān, IV, 92; Morony, Iraq, 153; EI², s.v. al-Kādisiya (L. Veccia Vaglieri).
1232. Sibāʾ are predatory animals whose flesh is forbidden under Muslim dietary law. See Cook, “Early Islamic Dietary Law,” 248–51. Among the places thus identified by Yaʿqūt, Buldān, V, 343–44, are a locality in the environs of al-Kūfah and another some five mūls south of al-Baṣrah on the way to Mecca. The latter is remembered as the site of al-Zubayr b. al-ʿAwwām’s death in the Battle of the Camel.
1233. Asad b. Khuzaymah was a component of Khindif. For their presence in the vicinity of al-Qādisiyyah, see EI², s.v. [W. Caskel]; Caskel, Jamharat an-nasab, I, 3, 50, II, 194; Ibn Ḥazm, Jamharat ansāb al-ʿarab, 190–92.
1234. Sharāf was a watering place between Wāqiṣah and Qarṭāʾ on the road from al-Kūfah to Mecca. Yaʿqūt, Buldān, III, 331.
1235. Wāqiṣah was a fortified watering place about 125 kilometers south of al-Qādisiyyah. Yaʿqūt, Buldān, V, 353–54; Cornu, Répertoires, 94.
1236. Khaffān was a stage on the pilgrimage route from al-Kūfah about two or three mūls below al-Nusūkh. Yaʿqūt, Buldān, II, 379.
1237. The farsakh is the equivalent of about six kilometers. Hinz, Islamische Masse und Gewichte, 62.
1238. Perhaps this is Ibrāhīm b. Salm b. Qutaybah al-Bāhili, grandson of the Umayyad governor Qutaybah b. Muslim, and governor of the Yemen for al-Ḥādi, Ṭabarī, III, 568; Crone, Slaves, 138.
The Events of the Year 145

... doing so because of Abū Jaʿfar’s presence and his continued stay there. Ibn Māʾiz al-Asadi secretly took the oath of allegiance to Ibrāhīm there.

According to ʿAbdallāh b. Rāshid b. Yazīd: I heard Ismāʿīl b. Mūsā al-Bajalī and ʿĪsā b. al-Nāḍr, the two Sammānīs, and others report that Ghazwān belonged to the family of al-Qaʿqāʾ b. Dirār.1239 Then Abū Jaʿfar purchased him, and one day Ghazwān said to him, “O Commander of the Faithful, behold, there are ships coming down from al-Mawṣil that contain wearers of white,1240 heading for Ibrāhīm in al- Başrah.” The caliph therefore assigned Ghazwān an army, and he encountered the wearers of white in Bahamshā,1241 which lies between Baghdad and al-Mawṣil, and killed them all. Those traveling were merchants, and with them was a group of devotees, people of pious bent, as well as others. Leading them was a man named Abū al-ʿIrṭān,1242 from the people of Shuʿayb al-Sammān, who began to say, “Woe unto you, O Ghazwān, don’t you recognize me? I’m your neighbor Abū al-ʿIrfān. All I did was set out with some slaves of mine, and now I have sold them.” But Ghazwān did not accept his story and killed them all. He then sent their heads to al-Kufah, and they were set up for display all the way from the house of Iṣhāq al-Azraq,1243 which stands next to ʿĪsā b. Mūsā’s house, to Madīnat Ibn Hubayrah. Abū Aḥmad ʿAbdallāh b. Rāshid said, “I actually saw them raised up on a pile of earth.”

According to ʿUmar—Abū ʿAli al-Qaddāḥ (“the Cup maker”)—Dāwūd b. Sulaymān,1244 Naybakht,1245 and a group of [his] fellow-

---

1239. See note 305.
1240. I.e., Ṭalib supporters, as distinguished from the ʿAbbāsid wearers of black.
1241. Bahamshā was a village that lay between Awānā and al-Ḥazirah in the region north of Baghdad before Sāmarrāʿ. Yaqūt, Buldan, I, 316.
1242. With some strands of classical Sufism, ʿirfān came to denote a kind of experiential mystical knowledge or gnosis.
1245. Or Nawbakht. He is later, III, 317, identified as an astrologer at the court of al-Manṣūr and was listed (Yaʿqūbī, Buldan, 238–41) among the group of astronomers, astrologers, and mathematicians who were consulted about the founding
tradesmen: We were in al-Mawṣil at the time that Ḥarb al-Rawandi was there as a frontier soldier in charge of 2,000 because of the Khārji presence in the Jazirah. He received a letter from Abū Ja`far ordering him to return. Ḥarb left, but when he was in Bāḥamshā, its people obstructed him, saying, “We will not let you through our lines to help Abū Ja`far against Ibrāhīm.” Ḥarb replied, “Woe to you, I mean you no harm! I’m simply passing through, so give me leave.” “No, by God,” they cried, “you shall never pass us!” Ḥarb therefore fought them and wiped them out, carrying off 500 of their heads. These he brought to Abū Ja`far and told him how things had gone with them. Abū Ja`far said, “This is the beginning of victory.”

According to `Umar—Khālid b. Khidāsh b. ‘Ajlān, `Umar b. Ḥafs’s mawlā: A group of our shaykhs told me that they were present when Dāfīf b. Rāshid, the mawlā of the Banū Yazīd b. Ḥātim, came to Sufyān b. Mu‘āwiyyah the night before Ibrāhīm’s revolt and said, “Assign me some cavalry troops and I shall bring you Ibrāhīm or his head.” Sufyān replied, “Have you no work to do? Go do your job!” Dāfīf left that very night and caught up with Yazīd b. Ḥātim when he was in Egypt.

According to `Umar—Khālid b. Khidāsh: I heard a number of the Azdis speaking about Jābir b. Ḥammād, the head of Sufyān’s police force, who the day before Ibrāhīm’s revolt said to Sufyān, “I was passing the graveyard of the Banū Yashkur, and

of Baghdad. Nawbakht is a Persian patronymic meaning “new fortune” that was carried by a number of Baghdādi scholars, including several important Shi‘i theologians. El’, s.v. [L. Massignon]; Dodge, Fihrist of al-Nadim, II, 1071.

1246. Ḥarb b. ‘Abdallāh al-Rawandi, who headed al-Mansūr’s shurtah, first in Baghdad and then here in al-Mawṣil. The Ḥarbīyyah quarter of Baghdad was named after him, and the ruins of a fortress that he built in al-Mawṣil were visible in the seventh/thirteenth century. The information that follows mention of his name is repeated, and Ḥarb’s death at the hands of a Turkish force is related, among the first events of the year 147/764–65. Tabarī, III, 328–29; Zirikli, A’lām, II, 172–73; Le Strange, Baghdad, 122–23; Lassner, Topography, 158–59, 176–77.

1247. Abū al-Haytham Khālid b. Khidāsh (thus vocalized in the Leiden text) b. ‘Ajlān al-Muhallābī was a Baghdādi muḥaddith who died in 223/838. Al-Khaṭīb al-Baghdādi, Taʾrikh Baghdād, VIII, 304–7; Ẓafādi, Wāfi, XIII, 276 (where the nasab is given as Ibn Khaddāsh); Dhahabī, Siyar, X, 488–89.


1249. ‘Aqību șahībi shurāṭi Sufyān. Tabarī, Glossarium, s.v. ‘aqaba.
they yelled at me and threw stones at me.” Sufyān said to him, “Couldn’t you have gone some other way?”

According to ‘Umar—Abū ‘Umar al-Ḥawdī Ḥaṣṣ b. ‘Umar: 1250

On Sunday, the day before Ibrāhīm’s uprising, the deputy head of Sufyān’s police force was passing the graveyard of the Banū Yashkur. He was told, “Watch out for Ibrāhīm, who is planning to revolt.” “You have lied,” said the deputy, and did not let himself be diverted.

According to Abū ‘Umar al-Ḥawdī: When he was surrounded, Ibrāhīm’s partisans started to shout at Sufyān. “Remember the oath of allegiance you took in the house of the Makhzūmīs.”

According to Abū ‘Umar—Muḥārib b. Naṣr: After Ibrāhīm was killed, Sufyān passed by in a boat. Looking down from his stronghold, Abū Ja’far asked, “Is this fellow really Sufyān?” When they told him it was, the caliph said, “By God, that’s astonishing! How did the son of a whore escape me?”

According to al-Ḥawdī: Sufyān said to one of Ibrāhīm’s army commanders, “Stand with me; not all your associates know what lay between Ibrāhīm and me.”

According to ‘Umar—Naṣr b. Farqād: Karzam al-Sadūsī 1251 would come to Sufyān in the morning with news of Ibrāhīm. In the evening he would return and tell Sufyān who had come to Ibrāhīm. Sufyān, however, paid no attention to him and made no attempt to follow a single one of these leads.

Another source: In those days Sufyān b. Muḥāwiyyah was al-Manṣūr’s governor of al-BAṣrah. He was conspiring with Ibrāhīm b. ‘Abdallāh in his affair and, therefore, did not give sincere advice to his master (Abū Ja’far).

There is disagreement about the time of Ibrāhīm’s arrival in al-BAṣrah. Some say that he reached there on the first day of the month Ramaḍān in 145. The account of those who hold that view is as follows:


---

open revolt, took control of Medina and Mecca, and was greeted as caliph, he dispatched his brother Ibrāhīm b. ʿAbdallāh to al-ʿAshrāf. Ibrāhīm entered al-ʿAshrāf on the first day of the month of Ramaḍān in 145. He was victorious over it and put on white there, as did the people of al-ʿAshrāf in union with him. Those who joined his revolt were ʿĪsā b. Yūnus, Muʿādh b. Muʿādh, ʿAbbād b. al-ʿAwwām, Ishāq b. Yūsuf al-Azraq, Muʿāwiyah b. Hishām, and a considerable number of jurisprudents and scholars. He remained in al-ʿAshrāf for the months of Ramaḍān and Shawwāl. When Ibrāhīm learned of his brother Muḥammad b. ʿAbdallāh’s slaying, he made preparations and provisions and headed out to an encounter with Abū Jaʿfar in al-ʿUṣfāh.

We have already mentioned the view of those who say that Ibrāhīm arrived in al-ʿAshrāf in the beginning of 143. According to this account, however, he lived in hiding there, secretly calling upon the people of al-ʿAshrāf to give the oath of allegiance to his brother Muḥammad.

According to Sahl b. ʿAqīl—his father: Before Ibrāhīm’s uprising, Sufyān sent for two army commanders who had come to him on Abū Jaʿfar’s authority as reinforcements. They were still with him, and when Ibrāhīm gave him a firm date for the rebellion, Sufyān sent for the two commanders and kept them with him that night until Ibrāhīm had staged his revolt. Ibrāhīm then surrounded Sufyān, and the two commanders and took the latter into custody.

1252. Abū ʿAmr ʿĪsā b. Yūnus b. Abī Ishāq b. al-Sabīʿī al-Hamdānī [d. 187/803] was a Syrian muḥaddith and hāfiz who is said to have taken part in raids against the Byzantine border and to have made the Pilgrimage every year. Ibn Ḥajar, Tahdhib, VIII, 212-15; Dhahabi, Siyar, VIII, 489-94; Zirikli, Aʿlām, V, iii.


1254. Abū Sahl ʿAbbād b. al-ʿAwwām b. ʿUmar b. ʿAbdallāh b. al-Mundhir al-Kīlābī was a traditionist who died in Baghdad about 186/802. He was imprisoned for a time by Hārūn al-Rashīd and then released. Dhahabi, Siyar, VIII, 511-12; Ṣafādī, Wafāʾ, XVI, 614; Ibn Ḥajar, Tahdhib, V, 86-87.

According to ʿUmar—Muḥammad b. Maʿrūf b. Suwayd—his father: Before Ibrāhīm’s uprising, Abū Jaʿfar sent [to al-Baṣra] three army commanders, Mujālid, Muḥammad, and Yazīd, who were brothers. They advanced with their armies and started to enter al-Baṣra successively, one right after the other. Concerned that the forces would continue to increase there, İbrahim made his uprising.

According to Naṣr b. Qudayd: İbrahim staged his revolt on the eve of Monday, the first day of the month of Ramaḍān in 145. He reached the graveyard of the Banū Yashkur with some ten mounted men, including ʿUbaydallāh b. Yaḥyā b. Ḥuḍayn1256 al-Raqāši. That same night, Abū Ḥammād al-Abraṣ1257 arrived with 2,000 men as reinforcement for Sufyān. He stayed in the courtyard until the soldiers were settled. İbrahim set off, first going straight for the mounts and weapons of these soldiers. The next morning he led the people in prayer in the main mosque. Meanwhile, Sufyān blockaded himself in his quarters, having a group of his [paternal] brothers there with him. So many people approached İbrahim, either to gaze or to offer support, that their number grew large. When Sufyān saw that, he sought the guarantee of safety, and his request was granted. (Muṭahhar b. Juwayriyyah al-Sadusi went in secret to İbrahim and obtained the guarantee of safety for Sufyān.) Sufyān then opened the door so that İbrahim could enter the house. As he entered, a reed mat was thrown down for him at the entrance to the portico and a gusting wind turned it upside down. The people took it as an evil omen, but İbrahim said, “We do not take auguries” and proceeded to sit on it wrong-side-up (although repugnance could be seen on his face.) When İbrahim entered the house, he let them go their ways—as the source recounts—except Sufyān b. Muʿāwiyyah. The latter he confined in the fort and bound with a light chain. According to the sources that describe his action, İbrahim wanted Abū Jaʿfar to think that Sufyān was imprisoned near him. Jaʿfar and Muḥammad, the sons of Sulaymān b. ʿAlī, who were then in

1256. Tabāri, Addenda et Emendanda, p. DCCXLIV.
1257. A mawla of the Banū Sulaym who is earlier mentioned, III, 122, as fighting under the command of Khāzim b. Khuzaymah in the battle against the Khârijī al-Mulabbid.
al-Baṣrah, heard about Ibrāhīm’s reaching the governor’s quarters and imprisoning Sufyān. It is said that they advanced toward Ibrāhīm with 600 foot soldiers, cavalry, and archers. Against them Ibrāhīm sent al-Maḍāʾ b. al-Qāsim al-Jazari with eighteen horsemen and thirty foot soldiers, and al-Maḍāʾ routed them. One of al-Maḍāʾ’s associates caught up with Muḥammad and stabbed him in the thigh. A herald of Ibrāhīm’s cried out, “Anyone retreating will not be pursued.” Muḥammad then went himself to stand at Zaynab bt. Sulaymān’s gate. There he called out that the family of Sulaymān had a guarantee of safety and that no one should trouble them.

According to Bakr b. Kathīr: When Ibrāhīm was victorious against Jaʿfar and Muḥammad and took control of al-Baṣrah, he found 600,000 [dirhams] in the treasury, which he ordered taken into safekeeping. [Another source states that he found 2 million dirhams in the treasury.] His position was strengthened by that, and he assigned fifty dirhams to every man. It is said that when Ibrāhīm had conquered al-Baṣrah, he sent a man named al-Ḥusayn b. Thawlāʾ to al-Ahwāz so that he could call upon its people to give the oath of allegiance. Al-Ḥusayn, therefore, went and received their oaths of allegiance and then returned to Ibrāhīm. At this point, Ibrāhīm sent al-Mughirah off with fifty men, while another fully 200 joined him when he reached al-Ahwāz. In those days Abū Jaʿfar’s appointed governor in al-Ahwāz was Muḥammad b. al-Ḥuṣayn. When Ibn al-Ḥuṣayn learned that al-Mughirah was drawing near him, he went forth against him with those who were with him, a force said to number 4,000. The opposing sides met each other about a mil from the citadel of al-Ahwāz in a place called Dasht Arbuk. Ibn Ḥuṣayn and his associates were put to flight, and al-Mughirah entered al-Ahwāz.

It has been said that al-Mughirah went to al-Ahwāz after Ibrāhīm left al-Baṣrah for Bākhamrā.\footnote{Bākhamrā was a village about seventeen farsakhs (about 100 kilometers) from al-Kūfah on the road to Wāsiṭ. Yāqūt, Buldān, I, 316.}

According to Muḥammad b. Khālid al-Murabba‘ī: After Ibrāhīm had gained control of al-Baṣrah, he intended to head for the district of al-Kūfah. He therefore appointed Numaylah b. Murrah al-‘Abshami as his deputy in al-Baṣrah and ordered him to send al-
Mughirah b. al-Faz’, one of the Banū Bahdalah b. ‘Awf,1259 to al-Ahwāz, which at that time was governed by Muḥammad b. al-Ḥusayn al-‘Abdi. To Fārs, Ibrāhīm sent ‘Amr b. Shaddād as governor. Ibn Shaddād went by Rām Hurmuz,1260 where Ya‘qūb b. al-Faḍl1261 was, and asked him to follow him. Ya‘qūb b. al-Faḍl went with him as far as Fārs, where Ismā‘il b. ‘Alī b. ‘Abdallāh was Abū Ja‘far’s appointed governor. With Ismā‘il was his brother, ‘Abd al-Ṣamad b. ‘Alī. When they heard that ‘Amr b. Shaddād and Ya‘qūb b. al-Faḍl were approaching, Ismā‘il b. ‘Alī and ‘Abd al-Ṣamad were in Iṣṭakhr.1262 Immediately they hurried off to Dārābijd1263 and fortified themselves there. Fārs thus fell to the control of ‘Amr b. Shaddād and Ya‘qūb b. al-Faḍl, thereby placing al- Баşrah, al-Ahwāz, and Fārs [all three] under Ibrāhīm’s jurisdiction.

According to ‘Umar—Sulaymān b. Abī Shaykh (or Shahh):1264 When Ibrāhīm made his uprising in al-Бaşrah, al-Ḥakam b. Abī Ghaylān al-Yashkuri approached with 17,000 men to enter Wāsīt, where Harūn b. Ḥumayd al-Iyadi was Abu Ja‘far’s appointed [governor]. Harūn, therefore, took refuge in an oven in the fortress until he was brought out from it. The people of Wāsīt went to Ḥafṣ b. ‘Umar b. Ḥafṣ b. ‘Umar b. ‘Abd al-Rahmān b. al-Ḥārith b. Hishām b. al-Mughirah1265 and said to him: “You are more...”

---


1260. Rām Hurmuz, or Rāmahurmuz, was a town in Khūzistān that lay about eighty-five kilometers east of al-Ahwāz. El, s.v. Rām Hormuz [V. Minorsky]; Le Strange, Lands, 243, 247; Yaqūt, Buldān, III, 17.


1262. Iṣṭakhr, which was situated near the ruins of Persepolis, was the principal city of the province of Fārs. Persepolis, in fact, provided building material for the construction of Iṣṭakhr. El, s.v. [M. Streck and G. C. Miles]; Barthold, Geography of Iran, 148, 151–52; Cornu, Répertoires, 51; Yaqūt, Buldān, I, 211–12.

1263. Dārābijjird was a town in the province of Fārs that lay about 280 kilometers east of Shirāz. El, s.v. [D. N. Wilber]; Barthold, Geography of Iran, 152–53, 161–62; Cornu, Répertoires, 48; Yaqūt, Buldān, II, 419.

1264. Abū Ayyūb Sulaymān b. Abī Shaykh was a traditionist and poet of Wāsīt. Dodge, Fihrist of al-Nadīm, 1099.

1265. His great-great-grandfather Abū Muḥammad al-Makhzūmī ‘Abd al-Rahmān b. al-Ḥārith b. Hishām (d. 43/663) was among the tābi‘ūn, the Successors
entitled than this Hujaymi [i.e., Hārūn]. 1266 Hafṣ, therefore, took control of the city and al-Yashkuri left. Hafṣ, however, put Abū Muqrin al-Hujaymi in charge of his police forces.

According to ‘Umar b. ‘Abd al-Ghaffār b. ‘Amr al-Fuqaymi, al-Faḍl b. ‘Amr al-Fuqaymi’s nephew: 1267 Ibribim was at odds with Hārūn b. Sa’d and would not speak to him. When Ibribim made his uprising, Hārūn b. Sa’d turned up and went to see Salm b. Abī Wasil, saying to him: “Tell me about your master. Has he no need of us in this affair of his?” “Yes, God’s life!” Salm replied. Then he stood up, went into Ibribim, and said, “Here is Hārūn b. Sa’d who has come to you.” Ibribim replied, “I have no need of him.” “Don’t shun Hārūn; restrain yourself,” responded Salm, and he kept at Ibribim until he agreed to receive Hārūn, giving him permission to enter. Hārūn went into Ibribim and said to him, “Ask me to do what is of greatest importance to you.” Ibribim therefore asked him to take charge of Wāsīt and installed him as governor there.

According to Sulaymān b. Abī Shaykh—Abū al-Ṣa’dī: The Kūfān Hārūn b. Sa’d al-‘Ijī came to us, having been sent by Ibribim from al-Baṣrah. He was an important shaykh, but the most famous Baṣrān who was in his entourage was al-Ṭuhawi. The man from Wāsīt among those accompanying him whose bravery most resembled that of al-Ṭuhawi was the valiant ‘Abd al-Rahīm al-Kalbi. Among those who marched with Ibribim [from the start] or came out to join him [later] was ʿAbdawayh 1268 Kardām of Khurāsān, while Ṣadaqah b. Bakkār was a member of their cavalry. Mansūr b. Jumhūr 1269 was wont to say, “With

---

to Muḥammad’s Companions, and among those commissioned by the caliph ʿUthmān to collect and transcribe the official text (mushaf) of the Qur’ān. Şafādi, Wāfi, XVIII, 130; Zirikli, A’lām, III, 303.


1268. Ṭabarī, Addenda et Emendanda, p. DCCXLV, with this vocalization or Ṭāḏayyuh.

1269. Mansūr b. Jumhūr b. Ḥaṣan b. ʿAmr al-Kalbi was an Umayyad general who plotted the assassination of the caliph Walid b. Yazīd in 126/744. Subsequently, he governed Iraq for a very brief period and eventually moved on to Sind as governor there. After Abū al-ʿAbbās became caliph, Mūsā b. Kaʾb was sent
Šadqadh b. Bakkār on my side, I don’t care whom I encounter!’ According to some sources, Abū Ja'far dispatched ‘Amīr b. Ismā‘īl al-Musli\textsuperscript{1270} with 5,000 troops to Wāsiṭ to wage war against Hārūn b. Sa‘d—other sources say 20,000—and there were various battles between them.

According to [i.e., on the authority of] Ibn Abī al-Karrām:\textsuperscript{1271} I reached Abū Ja'far with the head of Muḥammad while ‘Amīr b. Ismā‘īl was in Wāsiṭ besieging Hārūn b. Sa‘d. The war between the people of Wāsiṭ and the associates of Abū Ja'far occurred before Ibrāhīm left al-BAṣrah.

According to Sulaymān b. Abī Shaykh: ‘Amīr b. Ismā‘īl’s camp lay behind al-Nil. The first battle occurred between Hārūn and ‘Amīr, and [in it] a slave water-bearer struck the latter, wounded him, and brought him to the ground without recognizing him. Abū Ja'far sent him a small bag containing gum arabic and said, “Treat your wound with it.” The opposing forces then met each other in battle more than once, and many from al-BAṣrah and Wāsiṭ were killed. Hārūn kept forbidding their fighting, saying, “If our master were to meet their master, the situation would become clear to us, so hold yourselves back.” But they would not do so. After Ibrāhīm left for Bākhamrā, however, the two sides, i.e., the troops of Wāsiṭ and those of ‘Amīr b. Ismā‘īl, quit battling each other and agreed to cease warring until both armies could meet. Then they would follow the victor. When Ibrāhīm was killed, ‘Amīr b. Ismā‘īl wanted to enter Wāsiṭ but its people kept him from doing so.

According to Sulaymān: When the news that Ibrāhīm had been killed reached Wāsiṭ, Hārūn b. Sa‘d fled, and the people of Wāsiṭ made peace with ‘Amīr b. Ismā‘īl on condition that he extend a guarantee of safety. Many of them, however, had no faith in any guarantee of his, so they left the city. ‘Amīr b. Ismā‘īl entered Wāsiṭ and stayed there without disturbing anyone.

\textsuperscript{1270} Tābara, Addenda et Emendanda, p. DCCXLV, gives a manuscript reference from Baladhuri for this as “al-Shalimi,” but the printed text, Ansāb al-ashrāf, III, 100, does not reflect this.

\textsuperscript{1271} Muḥammad b. Abī al-Karrām al-Ja‘farī.
According to Sulaymān: It has been said that `Āmir made a peace agreement with the people of Wāṣīṭ that he would not kill anyone in Wāṣīṭ, but they did [in fact] kill anyone found leaving the city. After Ibrāhīm’s slaying, when peace was declared between `Āmir and the people of Wāṣīṭ, Hārūn b. Sa’d fled to al-Бaṣrāh but died before he got there, or so it is said.

It is said that Hārūn b. Sa’d went into hiding and stayed there until Muḥammad b. Sulaymān became governor of al-Kūfah. Offering Hārūn the guarantee of safety, Muḥammad enticed him into the open. He even ordered Hārūn to assign positions to 200 of the members of his household. Hārūn was about to do so and rode off to present himself to Muḥammad when one of his cousins met him and said to him, “You’ve been deceived.” Hārūn, therefore, turned back and disappeared from sight until he died. Muḥammad b. Sulaymān tore down his house.

According to ‘Umar: After making his uprising there, Ibrāhīm remained in al-Baṣrāh, assigning governors to the various administrative districts and dispatching troops to the regions, until news of his brother Muḥammad’s death reached him.

According to Naṣr b. Qudayd: Ibrāhīm assigned various administrative positions in al-Baṣrāh. Three days before the feast of the Fiṭr, news of his brother Muḥammad’s death reached him. Although he led the people in observance of the feast, they recognized the deep sadness in him. He told the people about Muḥammad’s slaying, and with burning hearts1272 they redoubled their efforts against Abū Ja’far. Upon awaking the next morning, Ibrāhīm gathered his army and appointed Numaylah as his deputy over al-Baṣrāh, leaving his son Hasan1273 behind with him.

According to Sa`īd b. Huraym—his father—`Ali b. Dāwūd:1274 When he preached to us on the day of the Fiṭr, I saw death on

1272. Fa-izdādū fi qītālī Abī ja`farīn baṣiratān. Tabari, Glossarium, s.v. baṣura.
1274. ‘Ali b. Dāwūd b. Țahmān was the brother of Ya`qūb b. Dāwūd, a vizier to al-Mahdī. Although both brothers were imprisoned by al-Mansūr for the duration of his life because of their support for the rebellions of Muḥammad and Ibrāhīm, they were released when al-Mahdī became caliph. Tabari, III, 507; Sourdel, Vizirat 'abbāside, I, 103–11; El², s.v. Abū `Abd Allāh Ya`kūb (S. Moscati).
Ibrahim's face. Returning to my family I said, "That man, by God, is going to be killed."

According to Muḥammad b. Maʿrūf—his father: When Jaʿfar and Muḥammad, the sons of Sulaymān, left al-Baṣrah, they sent Maʿrūf to Abū Jaʿfar to give him the news about Ibrahim. He said, "I gave the caliph information from Jaʿfar and Muḥammad, and he said, 'By God, I don't know what I should do. By God, there are only 2,000 men in my force [here]. I have scattered my army: With al-Mahdī in al-Rayy are 30,000 and with Muḥammad b. al-Ashʿath in Ifrīqiyyah1275 are 40,000, while the rest are with ʿĪsā b. Mūsā. But, by God, if I am to come safely out of this, my force [here] should not be 30,000 short.'"

According to ‘Abdallah b. Rashid: There were not many in Abū Jaʿfar's army camp, almost no one1276 but some blacks and a few other people. The caliph regularly ordered firewood to be stacked and kindled at night. Anyone seeing the blaze would figure that there were a lot of people there. But, in fact, it was only a burning fire with no one near it.

According to Muḥammad b. Maʿrūf b. Suwayd—his father: When the news reached Abū Jaʿfar, he wrote to ʿĪsā b. Mūsā, who was then in Medina: "When you read this letter from me, stop whatever you are doing and come right here." ʿĪsā wasted no time getting there, and the caliph dispatched him against the people. He also wrote to Salm b. Qutaybah,1277 who came to him from al-Rayy. The caliph then attached him to Jaʿfar b. Sulaymān.

According to [i.e., on the authority of] Yusuf b. Qutaybah b. Muslim1278—his brother, Salm b. Qutaybah b. Muslim: When I entered the presence of Abū Jaʿfar, he said to me, "Be on your way; the sons of ʿAbdallāh have now come out in open revolt. Go after Ibrahim; his band should certainly not scare you! By God, those two camels of the Banū Hāshim will be slaughtered together. Stretch forth your hand and have faith in what I have told you.

---

1275. That part of the North African littoral that comprises essentially modern Tunisia. EI², s.v. [M. Talbi].
1276. Kathiru ahadin mā hum illā. Ṭabarī, Glossarium, s.v. abad.
1278. Yusuf was another son of Qutaybah b. Muslim, a noted governor of Khurāsān under al-Walid b. ʿAbd al-Malik. EI², s.v. Kutayba b. Muslim (C. E. Bosworth).
You will remember what I have said to you.” By God, what should happen but that Ibrāhīm was killed, and I began to remember what he had said, and I was astonished!

According to Saʿīd b. Salm:1279 The caliph put Salm b. Qutaybah in charge of the left wing of the people and detailed to him Bashshār b. Salm al-ʿUqayli, Abū Yaḥyā b. Khuraym, and Abū Ḥurāsah Sinān b. Mukhayyas al-Qushayrī. Salm wrote to al-Ḥaḍr and the Bāḥilāḥ1280 joined him, both Arabs and mawlās. Al-Manṣūr wrote to al-Mahdī, who was then in al-Rayy, commanding him to dispatch Khāzīm b. Khuzaymah to al-Ahwāz. It is said that al-Mahdī sent Khāzīm at the head of 4,000 troops. Khāzīm marched to al-Ahwāz and waged war there against al-Mughīrah. The latter then left for al-Ḥaḍr, while Khāzīm entered al-Ahwāz and allowed the troops to plunder for three days.

According to [i.e., on the authority of] al-Faḍl b. ʿAbbās b. Mūsā1281 and ʿUmar b. Māḥān1282—al-Sindi: In the days of war against Muḥammad I was an attendant who would stand beside al-Manṣūr’s head with the flyswatter. As the situation with Ibrāhīm grew ever more dense and intractable, I saw him stay on the prayer mat some fifty nights, sleeping there and sitting there. He was wearing a colored jubbah, of which the collar and the part under his beard had become soiled. Yet he did not change the jubbah and did not leave the prayer mat until God achieved victory over Ibrāhīm. When he appeared before people, however, he covered the jubbah with a black garment and sat on his cushion. But when he was in private,1283 he returned to his former aspect.

During these days Raysānāh came to him. This was after two Medinan women had been given to the caliph as brides. One of them was Fāṭimah bt. Muḥammad b. ʿĪsā b. Ṭalḥah b. ʿUbay-
The Events of the Year 1145

279
dallāh,\textsuperscript{1284} while the other was Amah al-Karīm bt. ʿAbdallāh,\textsuperscript{1285} a descendant of Khālid b. Āsid b. Ābi al-Īsā.\textsuperscript{1286} Since the caliph had not even taken a look at them, Raysānah said, "O Commander of the Faithful, the souls of these two women are sadly disturbed\textsuperscript{1287} and prey to bad thoughts because of the cruelty you show toward them." He chased her away, saying, "These days are no days for women. I will have nothing to do with them until I know whether Ibrāhīm's head is mine or my head belongs to Ibrāhīm."

It is said that after leaving al-Bāṣrah, Muḥammad and Jaʿfar, the sons of Sulaymān, wrote to inform Abū Jaʿfar [of the state of affairs], using a scrap of sacking because they could get nothing other than that to write on. When the letter reached the caliph's headquarters and he spied the scrap of sacking in the messenger's hand, he exclaimed, "By God, the people of al-Bāṣrah have renounced their allegiance together with Ibrāhīm!" Then he read the letter and summoned ʿAbd al-Rahmān al-Khatlī\textsuperscript{1288} and Abū Yaʿqūb, a relative by marriage of Mālik b. al-Haytham. He sent them off to Muḥammad and Jaʿfar at the head of a numerous cavalry unit. The caliph ordered ʿAbd al-Rahmān and Yaʿqūb to detain Muḥammad and Jaʿfar as soon as they met up with them, and to camp with them, to make them listen, and to bring them into line. He also wrote to Muḥammad and Jaʿfar, calling them weak and impotent and rebuking them for [allowing] Ibrāhīm's unbridled urge to revolt against a stronghold where they were and his successfully concealing his plans from them until he made his uprising. He wrote at the end of the letter:

\textsuperscript{1284} A descendant of one of the Companions of the Prophet Muḥammad, Fāṭimah bt. Muḥammad b. ʿIsā is later mentioned as the mother of Abū Jaʿfar's sons Sulaymān, ʿIsā, and Yaʿqūb. Ṭabarī, III, 442.
\textsuperscript{1285} Ṭabarī Addenda et Emendanda, p. DCCXLVI, based on al-Maqrīzī's Muqaffā, where her father's name is given as "Abd al-Rahmān b. ʿAbdallāh."
\textsuperscript{1286} Khālid b. Āsid b. Umayyah b. ʿAbd Shams was a Meccan butcher who became a Muslim in the year that city was conquered. Ṣafādī, Wāfi, XIII, 246; Caskel, Ğamharat an-nasab, I, 8, II, 341; Balādhu, Futūḥ, 53; El, Suppl., s.v. Djazzār [M. A. J. Beg].
\textsuperscript{1287} Qad khabuthat anfusuhumā. Ṭabarī, Glossarium, s.v. khabutha.
\textsuperscript{1288} The Leiden text's vocalization. Khuttal, or Khuttalān, is a region of central Asia that lies just north of the Oxus river. El², s.v. Khuttalān [C. E. Bosworth]; Le Strange, Lands, 235–39; Cornu, Répertoires, 165; Yaqūt, Buldān, II, 346–47.
Give to the Banû Hāshim this message conveyed from me,
Be watchful; this is the action of sleepers
Wolves attack the one who has no dogs
    but are wary of the fold of the one striking terror, the protector.

According to [i.e., on the authority of] Jaʿfar b. Rabīʿah
al-ʿAmirī—al-Ḥajjāj b. Qutaybah b. Muslim: I entered
the presence of al-Manṣūr during the days of the war with
Muḥammad and Ibrāhīm. He had already heard about the defection
of al-Baṣrah, al-Ahwáz, Fārs, Waṣīt, al-Madāʾin, and the Sawād, and he was scratching at the ground with his staff and
quoting the following:

I’ve set myself up as a target for spears.
    Truly the leader always behaves [thus] in such matters.

I said, “O Commander of the Faithful, may God uphold your
might and aid you against your enemy! You are as al-Aʾšā dijo
said:

If between them conflict is ignited
    and grows hot for them after it had been cooled.
I shall be found enduring its heat,
    yea, though wars come round ever and again.

He said, “O Ḥajjāj, truly Ibrāhīm has now recognized how ragged
my flank is, how hard my side and how rough my horn. He’s
been emboldened to head for me by way of al-Baṣrah by the adhesion
of these districts that dominate the Commander of the
Faithful’s forces. Moreover, the people of the Sawād side with him

---

1289. Mustanfīr. Tabari, Glossarium, s.v. nāfara (which explains that it is an epithet of lions); Lane, Lexicon, VIII, 2824.
1290. Al-Ḥajjāj b. Qutaybah, son of Qutaybah b. Muslim, a noted governor of Khurāsān under al-Walīd b. ʿAbd al-Malik. His only appearance in Tabari, other than as a ṭawī, is at an audience with the mother of the defeated ruler of Farghanah. Tabari, II, 1697.
The Events of the Year 145

in conflict and disobedience. I, however, have aimed against each district its stone and against each region its arrow by sending against them the gallant, the bold, the fortunate, the victorious Īṣā b. Mūsā at the head of a great mass of men and equipment. I call upon God to help him, and I rely on Him to make him capable of that affair, for there is no might and no power to the Commander of the Faithful except through God.’”

According to Ja'far b. Rabī‘ah—al-Ḥajjāj b. Qutaybah: On that day I entered the presence of the Commander of the Faithful al-Manṣūr with a word of greeting. I judged him incapable of returning the salutation, however, because of the uninterrupted succession of rips and rents in the fabric of his regime, the armies surrounding him, as well as the 100,000 swords lying in wait for him in al-Kūfah and facing his own army, all waiting for him in one ferocious horde, ready to pounce. I found him to be like a solitary hawk, intensely concentrated, a man who has risen to meet the vicissitudes that have befallen him, facing up to them and contending with them. He tackled them, his spirit never letting him buckle under. Truly he was like what the early poet said:1293

The soul of Īṣām [is what] made Īṣām a sovereign.
It taught him to wheel and attack,
And made him a gallant ruler,
so that he surpassed and excelled all peoples.1294

According to Abū 'Ubaydah:1295 He was with Yūnus al-Jarmī at the time when Muhammad b. 'Abdallah had sent his brother to war against Abū Ja'far. Yūnus said, “This fellow arrived intending to eliminate a ruler, but the daughter of 'Umar b. Salamah1296 distracted him from what he was trying to do.” In those days the

1293. The editor of the Leiden text identifies the poet as Nābighah [al-Dhubyānī], a renowned jāhili poet who is thought to have died in the early years of the seventh century. GAS, II, 110–13; EP, s.v. (A. Arazi).
1294. Ḥattā 'alā wa-jāwaza al-aqwānā. This final line is supplied in Ibrāhīm’s edition, VII, 641.
1295. Abū 'Ubaydah Ma'mar b. al-Muthannā (d. 209/824–25) was a noted historian and philologist from al-Ṭabarah who wrote, among many other works, one of the first treatises of Qur'ānic tafsīr. EP, s.v. (H. A. R. Gibb); GAS, I, 48.
woman from the [Banū] Taym was presented to Abū Jaʿfar, but he kept her at a distance, not even looking at her until the matter of Ibrāhīm was settled. Ibrāhīm, however, after his arrival in al- Başrah, married Bamakah bt. ʿUmar b. Salamah. She would come to him with her cosmetics and many-hued garments.

According to Bishr b. Salm: When Ibrāhīm intended to head toward Abū Jaʿfar, Numaylah, al-Ṭuhawi, and a group of his Başran army commanders came to see him and said, "May God prosper you! You have gained control of al- Başrah, al-Ahwāz, Fārs, and Wāsīṭ, so stay where you are and send the armies. If one of your armies is put to flight, you can send another army as reinforcement. Similarly, if one of your army commanders is routed, you can reinforce him with another army commander. Your position is feared and your enemy is on guard against you. The monies have been raised and your footing is firm. All we need now is your [good] judgment." But the Kūfans said, "May God prosper you! In al- Kūfah there are men who would die in your place, were they to see you. But if they do not see you, various reasons will lead them to stay where they are so that they don't come to you." These men kept on at Ibrāhīm until he left.

According to [i.e. on the authority of] ʿAbdallāh b. Jaʿfar al- Madini: We went forth with Ibrāhīm to Bākhamrā. When we had made camp, he came to us one night and said, "Come out with us for a stroll around our camp." On his stroll, Ibrāhīm listened to the sounds of mandolins (tanābīr) and singing and then went back inside. He came to me on yet another night and said, "Come out with us." I joined him as he listened to similar sounds and then went back in, saying, "I don't much crave the support of an army with goings-on like these in it!"

---

1297. Tabari, Addenda et Emendanda, p. DCCXLVI; the Leiden text's original vocalization was al-Yatīmah, a word meaning "orphan." She is not mentioned in the list of women who bore children to Abū Jaʿfar. Tabari, III, 442–43.
1298. Tarakah bi-mazjari al-kalb. Tabari, Glossarium, s.v. zajara (which explains this as the distance from which one would rebuke a dog).
1299. Tabari, Addenda et Emendanda, p. DCCXLVI; the Leiden text's original vocalization was Bākhanah.
According to [i.e. on the authority of] ʿAffān b. Muslim al-Šaffār: When Ibrāhīm was encamped, there were [some prominent] men from our neighborhood who were in his pay. Having gone to his camp, I estimated that there were fewer than 10,000 men with him.

According to Dāwūd b. Jaʿfar b. Sulaymān: On Ibrāhīm’s stipends register were counted 100,000 men from al-Baṣrah.

According to Ibrāhīm b. Mūsā b. ʿĪsā: Abū Jaʿfar dispatched ʿĪsā b. Mūsā with 15,000, and he put Ḥumayd b. Qaḥṭabah in charge of a 3,000-man vanguard. It is said that when ʿĪsā b. Mūsā started out toward Ibrāhīm, Abū Jaʿfar traveled as far as Nahr al- Başriyyin with him. Then Abū Jaʿfar returned, and Ibrāhīm headed from his encampment by the wine house in Khuraybat al-Baṣrah toward al-Kūfah.

According to one of the Banū Taymallāh-Aws b. Muḥallil al-Quṭālī: Ibrāhīm passed by us on the route he was taking, while we were living in the domed houses called the Domes of Aws (Qibāb Aws). I went out to meet him in the company of my father and uncle, and eventually we reached him. He was on
a packhorse of his, looking around for somewhere to encamp in that region. I heard him quote verses of al-Qūtāmi.\textsuperscript{1307}

These are matters that, if the even-tempered man deals with them,
then he forbids and incites fear as he can.
Disobeying one concerned about you could enhance your giving ear to him another time.
The best thing is what you go to meet,
not what you [merely] follow, coming after.
But when the skin is rent,
rotten and despoiled, it defeats the most skillful.

I said to the one with me that I was hearing the words of a man who was regretting his journey.

Then Ibrāhīm continued on and when he reached Karkhthā,\textsuperscript{1308} ‘Abd al-Wāhīd said to him [according to what is reported on the authority of Sulaymān b. Abī Shaykh from ‘Abd al-Wāhīd b. Ziyād b. Labid],\textsuperscript{1309} “This is the territory of my people, and I know it well. Do not pursue Īsā b. Mūsā and these armies that have been dispatched against you. I will go with you, however, if you will leave me [to choose] a road where Abū Ja`far will not know where you are until you are suddenly upon him in al-Kūfah.” But Ibrāhīm refused him. Then ‘Abd al-Wāhīd said, “We are the men of Rabī`ah, masters of the night raid. So let me make a night raid against the associates of Īsā.” “Truly I detest raiding at night,” Ibrāhīm responded.

According to [i.e., on the authority of] Sa`īd b. Huraym—his father: I said to Ibrāhīm, “You will never be victorious against this man [Abū Ja`far] until you take al-Kūfah. If, despite his being well-fortified there, al-Kūfah falls to you, he can offer no


\textsuperscript{1308} Neither this place name nor the variants suggested by the Leiden text’s note, i.e., “Kūkhthā” and “Karkhyā,” are mentioned in the standard geographical sources. Karkh Maysān, a place in the Sawād north of al-Baṣrāh, is a possible identification. Yaqūt, \textit{Buldān}, IV, 449; Morony, \textit{Iraq}, 159.

\textsuperscript{1309} See note 1207.
The Events of the Year 145

resistance once it is gone. I still have a few close relatives there; let me travel to al-Kūfah in disguise so that I can secretly summon people to your cause. Then I will come out into the open, because if they hear someone proclaim your cause [publicly], they will respond to him. If the faint-hearted Abū Ja‘far hears [about it] throughout al-Kūfah, nothing will turn back his face this side of Hulwān.”

Ibrāhīm turned to Bashīr al-Rahhāl and asked, “What do you think, Abu Muḥammad?” “Were we to put our trust in the scenario you’ve described,” said Bashīr, “that would be a sound idea. But we don’t believe that a [significant] group of Kūfans will respond to your call. Abū Ja‘far will send cavalry against them that will trample underfoot the innocent and the corrupt, the young and the old. You will have exposed yourself to the sin of that without even achieving what you hoped.” I said to Bashīr, “Whenever you’ve gone out to fight Abū Ja‘far and his associates, were you afraid of killing the weak and the small, and women as well as men? Didn’t the Messenger of God send out raiding parties at night and himself engage in fighting, thereby doing what you find repugnant?” “But those were all idolaters,” retorted Bashīr, “whereas these are people of our religious community (millah), our [prophetic] call (da‘wah), and our prayer orientation (qiblah). Their case is not the same as those others.” Ibrāhīm therefore followed his opinion, refusing permission to Huraym, and went on to encamp in Bākhamrā.

According to Khalīd b. Asīd al-Bāhili: After Ibrāhīm camped in Bākhamrā, Salm b. Quṭaybah sent Ḥakīm b. ‘Abd al-Karīm to him to say, “You have now gone into the desert, and someone like you is further from death there. Dig a trench for yourself so that there is only one access to you. If you won’t do that, [then know that] Abū Ja‘far has depleted his army, so hurry off to him at the head of a contingent and seize him from the rear.”

Ibrāhīm summoned his associates and suggested that to them. They said, “Why should we dig a trench for ourselves when we

---

1310. Lam taqum lahu ba’dahā qa‘imatun. Tabari, Glossarium, s.v. qāma; Dozy, Supplément, II, 431.

1311. Tabari, Addenda et emendanda, p. DCCXLVI. See note 649.

1312. Fa-takhaffaf fi ṭā‘ifatin. Tabari, Addenda et emendanda, p. DCCXLVI, and Glossarium, s.v. khaffa.
are victorious against them? No, by God, we shall not do that!”
"Then we should go after him,” said Ibrāhīm. “Why,” they an-
swered, “when he is in our hands whenever we want him?”
Ibrāhīm said to Ḥakīm, “Now you have heard, so go back [con-
scious of] having done your duty.”

According to Ibrāhīm b. Salm—his brother—his father: When
we met for battle, our forces were lined up in one rank facing
them. Leaving the battle line, I said to Ibrāhīm: “If one section
of the line is routed, the rest will collapse, for they are not [properly]
deployed. Organize the men in squadrons; then if one squadron is
put to flight, another will stand firm.” But they cried out, “Only
the Islamic way of fighting,” thereby alluding to God’s saying,
“[they] fight in His way in a line.”

According to Yahyā b. Shukr, Muḥammad b. Sulaymān’s
mawla: Al-Maḍa’ said, “When we settled in Bāḵmārā, I went to
Ibrāhīm and said to him, ‘In the morning these people will greet
you with enough weapons and mounts to block your view of
the setting sun. Meanwhile, you have only naked [i.e., poorly
equipped] Başran forces with you. Let me make a night raid
against him so that I can really cut his forces to pieces.’ “How I
detest killing,” said Ibrāhīm. I exclaimed, ‘You want the sover-
eignty but you detest the killing!’

According to al-Ḥārith— Ibn Sa’d—Muḥammad b. ‘Umar:
When Ibrāhīm heard about his brother Muḥammad b. ‘Abdallāh’s
slaying, he set out against Abū Ja’far al-Manṣūr in al-Kūfah. Abū
Ja’far wrote to ʿĪsā b. Mūsā, informing him of that and ordering
him to report in person to him. Abū Ja’far’s messenger and letter
reached ʿĪsā after he had entered the state of consecration for the
Lesser Pilgrimage (ʿumrah). He abandoned the state of purifi-
cation, however, and presented himself to Abū Ja’far. The caliph
then dispatched ʿĪsā with commanders, troops, and weapons
against Ibrāhīm b. ‘Abdallāh. Meanwhile, Ibrāhīm advanced with

---

1313. In Ibn al-Athīr, Kāmil, V, 568, this is given as “We should form a line only
as the people of Islam did.”
1315. The ʿumrah is a series of prescribed ritual actions that can be performed
within the confines of Mecca at any time during the Muslim liturgical year. Ac-
cording to R. Paret (El’, s.v. ‘Umrah), entering the necessary state of ritual purity
is usually accomplished at Ji’rānah, Hudaybiyah, or Tan’im.
The Events of the Year 145

a large force of troops of unknown origin, larger than ‘Īsā b. Mūsā’s force. They met in Bākhamrā, which is situated about sixteen farsakhs from al-Kūfah, and there fought a hard-pitched battle. Ḥumayd b. Qaḥtabah, head of ‘Īsā b. Mūsā’s vanguard, was put to flight, as were the people with him. ‘Īsā b. Mūsā stood in their way, beseeching them in the name of God to maintain obedience, but they paid no attention to him and ran off in flight. Ḥumayd b. Qaḥtabah came running by, and ‘Īsā b. Mūsā said to him, “O Ḥumayd, return to God, to God and obedience!” Ḥumayd retorted, “There is no obedience in defeat” and took off. All the troops ran away, leaving ‘Īsā b. Mūsā quite alone before Ibrāhīm b. ‘Abdallāh’s army. But ‘Īsā b. Mūsā held his position without moving, although he commanded only 100 men drawn from his personal guard and retinue. Someone said to him, “May God prosper the Amir! Would that you abandoned this position until the troops come back to you. Then you could return to the charge with them.” ‘Īsā replied, “Never shall I leave this position of mine until I am killed or God is victorious by my hand. It will not be said, ‘He was routed.’ ”

According to ‘Abd al-Rahīm b. Ja’far b. Sulaymān b. ‘Alī—Ishaq b. ‘Isa b. ‘Alī—his father—‘Īsā b. Mūsā: As he was about to dispatch me against Ibrāhīm, the Commander of the Faithful said, “These wicked men, i.e., the astrologers, assert that you will meet the man and that you will have an inconclusive round when you encounter him. Then your associates will return to you, and outcome will be in your favor.” By God, it happened exactly as he said. What should occur but that we met in battle and we were routed. I found myself with not more than three or four supporters. One of my mawlās came up to me, grabbing the bridle of my mount, and said, “May I be made your ransom, why

---

1316. Ṭabari, Addenda et Emendanda, p. DCCXLVI, for this addition.
stay when your associates have already left?” “No, by God,” I responded, “may my family never look upon my face if I flee from their enemy!” By God, I could do no more than begin to say to those whom I recognized of the people passing me in flight. “Give my family my greetings and tell them, 'I can find no ransom to redeem you more precious to me than my own life. Freely have I spent it for your sakes.' ”

By God, that was the state we were in, what with the troops fleeing and paying no heed to anyone else. But the sons of Sulaymān, Ja'far and Muḥammad, held their ground against Ibrāhīm and attacked him from behind. Those of Ibrāhīm’s partisans who were on our heels did not realize what was going on until some of them looked back at the others and saw that fighting had erupted behind them. They wheeled around to face the battle, and we followed round right in their tracks. So it went. 

That day I heard 'Isā b. Mūsā say to my father, “By God, Abū al-'Abbās, were it not for Sulaymān’s sons, we would have been publicly disgraced on that day. It was part of God’s design that when our associates were put to flight on that day, a canal with steep embankments stood in their way, obstructing their rush. Finding no place to ford, they all had to turn back.

According to [i.e., on the authority of] Muḥammad b. Ishaq b. Mihrān: People from the Ṭalḥah family living in Bākhāmrā opened the irrigation dikes against Ibrāhīm and his followers, letting the water overflow so that the troops of his army became mired in the water.

Some maintain that Ibrāhīm was the one who released the water so that he would be fighting in only one direction. When they were routed, the water prevented his forces from running away. After his supporters were put to flight, Ibrāhīm stood firm, as did a group of his partisans who stood fighting in defense of him. The sources disagree about their actual numbers, some saying 500, some 400, while others say seventy.

According to ‘Umar—al-Ḥārith—Ibn Sa‘d—Muḥammad b. ‘Umar: As ‘Isā held his position, even though his followers had been put to flight, Ibrāhīm b. ‘Abdallāh approached at the head of his army, coming ever closer. The dust cloud of his army finally

---

1319. Fa-kānat iyyāhā. Tabari, Glossarium, s.v. iyyā
The Events of the Year 145

drew close enough for ‘Īsā and those with him to see it. While they were so disposed, a horseman suddenly approached and wheeled about, heading straight for Ibrāhim and not turning aside for anything. Lo and behold, it was Ḥumayd b. Qaḥtabah, who had altered his breastplate and wrapped his head with a yellow headcloth! So many warriors turned back to follow him that not a single person who had been routed failed to do so. Running back into battle, the troops mingled with each other and fought fiercely until several on each of the two sides were killed. Ḥumayd b. Qaḥtabah then started to send severed heads to ‘Īsā b. Mūsā. At one point, in the midst of crowd, clamor, and outcry, ‘Īsā was brought a head, and the shout went up, “It’s the head of Ibrāhim b. ‘Abdallāh!” ‘Īsā b. Mūsā called for Ibn Abī al-Karrām al-Ja’fārī and showed it to him, but he said that it was not Ibrāhim’s. The opposing forces began a battle that very day, and a stray arrow, shot by no one knows who, pierced Ibrāhim b. ‘Abdallāh’s throat and felled him. Falling back from its impact, he cried, “Help me down.” As they took him down from his mount he was saying, “‘God’s command is a fate foreordained’;⁴¹²¹ we had proposed one thing, but God willed otherwise.” He was set down on the ground, he being a [heavily built] man, and his associates and close companions gathered about him to guard him and fight in his defense. Ḥumayd b. Qaḥtabah saw their gathering round, but did not know who they were. He said to his followers, “Direct your best efforts at that group until you’ve displaced them and can tell what they’ve gathered around.” His forces pressed hard against them, fighting the most intense battle, until they had prised them apart from Ibrāhim, gained free access to him, and cut off his head. They brought it to ‘Īsā b. Mūsā and he showed it to Ibn Abī al-Karrām al-Ja’fārī. This time he said, “Yes, this is his head.” ‘Īsā set it on the ground and made a prostration [thanking God]. He then sent Ibrāhim’s head to Abū Ja’far al-Manṣūr. Ibrāhim was killed on Monday, 25 Dhū al-Qa’dah 145, being forty-eight years old at the time. The interval from the time he came out in revolt until he was killed was three months less five days.

⁴¹²¹ Qur’ān, 33:38.
According to 'Abd al-Hamid: He asked Abū Šalābah how Ibrāhīm was killed. Abū Šalābah responded, "I saw him come to a halt on his mount to watch Īsā's partisans, who had turned around and had put his enemies to flight.1321 Īsā had retreated on his mount while his soldiers were killing them. Ibrāhīm was wearing a shirt of mail, but because the heat troubled him, he undid the fastenings of his shirt and took off the mail to leave his chest free and to uncover his throat. A stray arrow came and struck him in the throat. I saw him grab on to his horse and wheel about until the Zaydis [i.e., the former supporters of the 'Alid claimant in al-Kūfah, Zayd b. 'Ali b. al-Ḥusayn] encircled him.

According to Ibrāhīm b. Muḥammad b. Abī al-Karrām—his father: When Īsā's associates were put to flight, Ibrāhīm's standard [-bearers] followed in their tracks. Ibrāhīm's herald shouted out, "Do not follow anyone in flight," so the standard [-bearers] turned about to go back. Seeing this, Īsā's associates thought that they were fleeing, so they turned in their tracks and the rout actually occurred.

A source: When news of the mêlée involving Īsā's forces reached Abū Ja'far, he decided to make a trip to al-Rayy.

According to Salm b. Farqad, Sulaymān b. Mujālid's chamberlain: When the opposing forces met, Īsā's associates suffered such a disgraceful rout that the leading contingents actually entered al-Kufah [i.e., they were driven back that far]. One of my Kūfān friends came to me and said, "Hey, fellow, by God, do you know that your associates have already entered al-Kufah? Here we have Abū Hurayrah's brother at so-and-so's house, and there's another one in the house of so-and-so. Look out for yourself, your family, and your possessions." I informed Sulaymān b. Mujālid of that, and he, in turn, informed Abū Ja'far. The caliph said, "Be sure not to disclose any of this or pay it any attention. I am not sure that what I dread won't take me by surprise, so prepare camels and mounts at every gate of the city. If we are assailed from one direction, we shall go by another." Salm was then asked, "Where does Abū Ja'far intend to go, should something take him unaware?" "He has decided to go to al-Rayy," replied Salm.

According to Salm b. Farqad: I heard that the astrologer Naybakht went to see Abū Ja'far and said, “O Commander of the Faithful, victory is yours. Ibrāhīm will be killed.” The caliph, however, would not believe him, so Naybakht said to him, “Imprison me near you, and if the affair does not go as I’ve told you, then kill me.” Being still in prison when news of Ibrāhīm’s defeat reached him, he quoted a verse of Mu‘aqqir b. Aws b. Ḥimār al-Bāriqī.¹³²²

She threw down her staff, feeling herself settled there at journey’s end, as the traveler feels cheered on [his] return.

Abū Ja'far allotted Naybakht 2,000 jarib¹³²³ by the Jawbar Canal.¹³²⁴

According to Abū Nu‘aym al-Fadll b. Dukayn: The morning after the night he had been brought Ibrāhīm’s head, i.e., Monday night, 25 Dhū al-Qa‘dah, Abū Ja’far ordered his head to be put on display in the market.

According to a source: When Abū Ja’far was brought Ibrāhīm’s head and it was placed before him, he wept until his tears dripped down on Ibrāhīm’s cheek. Then he said, “By God, how I hate to see this! Yet you put me to the test, as I did you.”

According to Śālih, al-Manṣūr’s mawld: When al-Manṣūr was brought the head of Ibrāhīm b. ‘Abdallah, he set it before him and held a general audience, allowing the people to enter. Upon entering, each person would offer his salutations, reach out a hand to Ibrāhīm, and make some derogatory statement about him, saying bad things about him in hopes of Abū Ja’far’s approval. Abū Ja’far kept silent, his color [constantly] changing until Ja’far b. Ḥanẓalah al-Bahrānī entered. The latter stopped before the caliph, made his salutations, and said, “May God enhance your reward, O Commander of the Faithful, in the matter of your

¹³²². Mu‘aqqir b. Aws was a jāhili poet and horseman who was allied to the Yamāmī tribe Numayr b. ‘Āmir. GAS, II, 218; Zirikli, A’lām, VII, 270.
¹³²³. The jarib was equivalent to about 1,600 square meters. Hinz, Islamische Masse und Gewichte, 65.
¹³²⁴. The Jawbar Canal was a branch canal of the Nahr Kūthā, one of the major waterways connecting the Tigris and Euphrates below al-Madā’in. Le Strange, Lands, 68. Yaqūt, Buldan, II, 177, V, 319, also mentions a Nahr Jūbarah in al-Baṣrah as a canal that flows into the Nahr al-lijānah.
cousin, and may He forgive him for ignoring your rightful claim." His complexion lightening, Abū Jaʿfar turned to him and said, "Abū Khālid, welcome, and make yourself at home here!" The people, realizing that this had made an impression on him, then entered and spoke as Jaʿfar b. Ḥanẓalah had.

In this year the Turks and the Khazars revolted at Bāb al-Abwāb\textsuperscript{1325} and killed a great many Muslims in Armenia.

In this year al-Sāri b. ‘Abbālāh b. al-Ḥārith b. al-‘Abbās b. ‘Abd al-Muṭṭalib led the people in the Pilgrimage. He was Abū Jaʿfar’s appointed governor of Mecca. The governor of Medina in this year was ‘Abdallāh b. al-Rabīʿ al-Ḥārithī, while the governor of al-Kūfah and of its administrative territory was ʿĪsā b. Mūsā. The governor of al- Başrah was Salm b. Qutaybah al-Bāhili, while ‘Abbad b. Manṣūr was charged with its judiciary. Yazīd b. Ḥātim was the governor of Egypt.

\textsuperscript{1325} Bāb al-Abwāb ("the Gate of Gates") was the Arab name for the Caspian port of Darband/Derbent. The "gates" are the openings from the Caucasus range into the eastern valleys. \textit{El²}, s.v. [D. M. Dunlop]; Yāqūt, \textit{Buldān}, I, 310-6; Le Strange, \textit{Lands}, 180, 184; Cornu, \textit{Répertoires}, 134.
Bibliography of Cited Works


Bibliography of Cited Works


<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Author</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Page Numbers</th>
<th>Publication Details</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>


Bibliography of Cited Works

Bibliography of Cited Works


Sourdél, Dominique. “Appels et programmes politico-religieux durant les premiers siècles de l’islam.” In Prédication et propagande


Wellhausen, J. *The Arab Kingdom and Its Fall*. Translated by Margaret Weir. Calcutta, 1927.


The index contains all proper names of persons, places, and tribal and other
groups, as well as topographical data, occurring in the foreword and the text (but
only occasionally in the footnotes), together with technical terms.

The definite article al-, the abbreviations b. (ibn, "son of") and bt. (bint,
"daughter of"), and everything in parentheses are disregarded for the purposes of
alphabetization. Where a name occurs in both the text and the footnotes on the
same page, only the page number is given.

A

Abān b. Ṣadaqah 254
Abarwiz b. al-Masmughān 65, 73
‘Abbād b. al-Awwām ‘Umar b.
‘Abdallāh b. al-Mundhir al-Kilābī 270
‘Abbād b. Kathīr 224
al-‘Abbās, family of 27, 179
al-‘Abbās b. ‘Abd al-Muṭṭalib 174–76, 181
al-‘Abbās b. ‘Abdallāh b. al-Ḥārith b.
al-‘Abbās 145–46, 217
al-‘Abbās 5–6, 46
‘Abbās b. Ḥasan b. Ḥasan b. Ḥasan
b. ‘Ali b. Abī Ṭālib 118, 131

‘Abdallāh b. al-‘Abbās 48–49, 54,
57, 81, 97, 250
al-‘Abbās b. al-Qāsim 178
al-‘Abbās b. Salm 265
al-‘Abbās b. Suṭyān b. Yaḥyā b. Ziyād
164, 257
‘Abbās b. ‘Uthmān b. Ḥayyān al-Murri 151, 206
‘Abd al-‘Azīz b. ‘Abd al-Rahmān 50
‘Abd al-‘Azīz b. ‘Abdallāh b. ‘Abdallāh
b. ‘Umar b. al-Khaṭṭāb 207, 225
‘Abd al-‘Azīz b. Abī Salamah b. ‘Ubayd-
allāh b. ‘Abdallāh b. ‘Umar 225
‘Abd al-‘Azīz b. Abī Thābit. See ‘Abd
al-‘Azīz b. ‘Imrān
‘Abd al-‘Azīz b. Ḥibrāhīm b. ‘Abdallāh
b. Muṭī 230–31
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Page</th>
<th>Index</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>306</td>
<td><code>Abd al-</code>Azīz b. `Imrān b. Abī Thābit al-Zuhri 86, 145, 151, 160, 184, 190, 204, 208, 210</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><code>Abd al-</code>Azīz b. Muḥammad b. `Ubayd al-Darāwārdi 159, 225</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>154</td>
<td><code>Abd al-</code>Azīz b. al-Muṭṭalib b. `Abdallāh al-Makhzūmī 105–6, 154, 188</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>91</td>
<td><code>Abd al-</code>Azīz b. Muhammad b. `Ubayd al-Darawardi 159, 225</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>117</td>
<td><code>Abd al-</code>Azīz b. <code>Abd al-Muttalib b. </code>Abdallah al-Makhzumi 105–6, 154, 188</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>91</td>
<td><code>Abd al-</code>Azīz b. Said 91, 117</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17</td>
<td><code>Abd al-</code>Azīz b. <code>Ali b. </code>Abdallāh al-Zubayr 55, 155</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>225</td>
<td><code>Abd al-Wāhid b. Abī </code>Awān 225</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>260</td>
<td>`Abd al-Wāhid b. Ziyād b. Labīd 260, 284</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>159</td>
<td><code>Abdallāh. See Abū Ja</code>far al-Mansūr</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>154</td>
<td><code>Abdallāh b. </code>Abd al-Muṭṭalib 170</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>154</td>
<td><code>Abdallāh b. </code>Abdallāh b. <code>Aṭā b. Ya</code>qūb 225</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>143</td>
<td><code>Abdallāh b. </code>Amir al-Aslami 103, 143, 212, 214</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>105–6</td>
<td><code>Abdallāh b. </code>Aṭā b. Ya`qūb 225</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>187</td>
<td><code>Abdallāh b. </code>Ayyāsh al-Mantūf al-Hamadānī 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>277</td>
<td>`Abdallāh b. Barqā 216</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>154</td>
<td>`Abdallāh b. Dāwūd b. Ḥasan b. Ḥasan 118, 138</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>104</td>
<td>`Abdallāh b. Dāwūd b. Ḥasan b. Ḥasan 118, 138</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>156</td>
<td><code>Abdallāh b. Ḥusayn b. </code>Abdallāh b. <code>Ubaydallāh b. </code>Abbās 208</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Index

'Abdallāh b. Ma'rūf 191
'Abdallāh b. Mu'āwiyah b. 'Abdallāh b. Ja'far 92, 161, 198
'Abdallāh b. Muḥammad. See Abū Ja'far al-Mansūr
'Abdallāh b. Muḥammad b. 'Abdallāh al-Ashtar 99
'Abdallāh b. Muḥammad b. 'Abdallāh b. Salm b. al-Bawwāb 184, 212, 214, 255
'Abdallāh b. Muḥammad b. 'Alī b. 'Abdallāh b. Ja'far 183
'Abdallāh b. Muḥammad b. Ḥakīm al-Ṭā'i 115
'Abdallāh b. Muḥammad b. 'Umar b. 'Alī 198
'Abdallāh b. Muṣ'ab b. Thābit b. 'Abdallāh b. al-Zubayr 220
'Abdallāh b. al-Rabī' b. 'Ubaydallāh b. 'Abdallāh b. 'Abd al-Madān al-Hārithi 92, 161, 231–37, 252, 255, 292
'Abdallāh b. Rāshid b. Yazid al-Akkār 102, 132, 186, 214, 267, 277
'Abdallāh al-Rāwandi 62 n. 285
'Abdallāh b. Sa'id 91
'Abdallāh b. Shaybān 93
'Abdallāh b. 'Umar b. Ḥabib 119, 160, 219
'Abdallāh b. 'Umar b. al-Qāsim b. 'Abdallāh al-'Umari 202, 214
'Abdallāh b. 'Uthmān 127
'Abdallāh b. Yahyā 109–10
'Abdallāh b. Yazid b. Hurmuz 216
'Abdās 256–57
'Abdawayh 102, 274
'Abiward 264
Abū al-'Abbās quarter 248
Abū al-'Abbās al-Saffāḥ xiii, 1–5, 8–9, 19–20, 36–37, 66, 69 n. 324, 86, 98, 262–63
Abū al-'Abbās al-Tūsī. See al-Faḍl b. Sulaymān Abū al-'Abbās
Abū 'Abd al-Rahmān al-Humānī 165
Abū 'Abdallāh. See al-'Ammī
Abū 'Aḥmad 'Abdallāh b. Rāshid 267
Abū 'Alī al-Qaddāh 267
Abū 'Amr, mu'addīb Muḥammad b. 'Abd al-Rahmān 192, 198
Abū 'Amr, a Syrian 184
Abū 'Amr al-Ghifārī 208, 217
Abū 'Amr al-Madīnī 148
Abū 'Aqīl Muḥammad b. 'Abdallāh b. Muḥammad b. 'Aqīl 189
Abū al-Asbāgh 9
Abū 'Āṣim al-Nabīl 92, 212, 224
Abū 'Awn Abū al-Malik b. Yazīd 134–35
Abū al-Bakhtārī 110–11
Abū Bakr al-Hudhāli 66–67
Abū al-Dawānīq, i.e., Abū Ja'far al-Mansūr xviii, 165 n. 800, 246
Abū Dāwūd Khālid b. Ibrāhīm 11, 29, 44, 47, 53, 57–60
Abū al-Faḍl. See Ibn Ma'qīl
Abū Farwāh 258, 260
Abū Farwāh quarter 248
Abū Ghānim al-Tā'ī. See 'Abd al-Hamīd b. Rib'i
Abū Ghassān Yazīd b. Ziyād. See Yazīd b. Ziyād
Abū Habbār al-Muzānī 92, 99–100, 103, 104, 226
Abū Ḥaṣāf al-Azdi 18, 22, 35–36, 41
Abū al-Ḥajjāj the camel driver 214
Abū al-Ḥajjāj al-Mīnqārī 210
Abū Ḥammād al-Abras 51, 271
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Page(s)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Abu Hanifah Harb b. Qays</td>
<td>33, 38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abu Hanifah al-Nu'man b. Thabit</td>
<td>245-47</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abu Harb b. Qays</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abu Hanifah al-Nu`man b. Thabit</td>
<td>245-47</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abu al-Hasan</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abu Hurayrah</td>
<td>290</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abi `Irān</td>
<td>267</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abu Ishaq</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abu Ishāq Khālid</td>
<td>11, 30, 34-35, 40-41</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abu Ja'far</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abu Ja'far Abdallāh</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abu Ja'far al-Manṣūr</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abu al-Nar</td>
<td>237</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abu Naṣr</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abu Malik, messenger of Abu Ja'far al-Manṣūr</td>
<td>28, 30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abu Marwān, mawlā of the Banū Sula'yim</td>
<td>261</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abu Maṣād al-Kalbī</td>
<td>253</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abu al-Mughirah</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abu al-Qālammas</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abu Qays</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abu Quays, Mount</td>
<td>112</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abu Rāfī</td>
<td>160</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abu al-Rizām</td>
<td>181-82</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abu Sa`dī</td>
<td>274</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abu Sa<code>id </code>Umayr b. Shuyaym</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abu Sahl Jawwād</td>
<td>265</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abu al-Saj al-Duba`ī</td>
<td>252</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abu Salāhāb</td>
<td>290</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abu Salamah b. Ubaydallāh</td>
<td>155</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abu al-Sāj al-Duba`ī</td>
<td>252</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abu Sa<code>id </code>Umayr b. Shuyaym</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abu <code>Umar al-Hawtī Hafṣ b. </code>Umar</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abu <code>Umar al-Hawdī Ḥafṣ b. </code>Umar</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abu <code>Ubaydah Ma</code>mar b. al-Muṭṭalib</td>
<td>252</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abu <code>Ubaydah Ma</code>mar b. al-Muṭṭalib</td>
<td>94, 128, 170, 176, 198-99, 211, 262</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abu <code>Ubaydah Ma</code>mar b. al-Muṭṭalib</td>
<td>155</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abu <code>Umar al-Ḥawdī Ḥafṣ b. </code>Umar</td>
<td>281</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abu <code>Umar al-Ḥawdī Ḥafṣ b. </code>Umar</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abu <code>Umar abū </code>Umar</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abu Yahyā</td>
<td>278</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abu Yahyā</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Name</td>
<td>Page Numbers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------------------</td>
<td>------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abu Ya`qub, <em>khatan</em> Malik b. al-Haytham</td>
<td>279</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abu Zayd. See `Umar b. Shabbah</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abu Zayd Ja<code>far b. Mu</code>ammad. See Ja<code>far b. Mu</code>ammad</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abu Zayd <code>Umar b. Shabbah. See </code>Umar b. Shabbah</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abu Zayd, spring of 222</td>
<td>Adam 63-64 n. 302, 112, 113, 128, 129, 258</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adharbayjan</td>
<td>19, 50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>Affan b. Muslim al-</code>Affar</td>
<td>283</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Afwallah b. Sufyin</td>
<td>260-61</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ahan 44</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ajb a. Zayt 203</td>
<td><em>ahl al-bayt</em> 214</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ahmad b. al-Harith 72</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ahmad b. Humayd b. Jabalah 247</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ahmad b. Thabit 250</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ahmad b. Zuhayr, i.e., Abu Bakr</td>
<td>Ahmad b. Abi Khayyamah Zuhayr b. Harb al-Nasawi 18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>al-Ahwaz 258, 262-63, 272-73, 278, 280, 282</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>A</code>ishah bt. Talib b. `Umar b.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aley a.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aleppo 12</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>Ali b. </code>Abd al-Hamid (or al-Humayd) 106</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>Ali b. </code>Abdallah b. al-`Abbas 54</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>Ali b. Abi </code>Ali, rawd 150, 186, 213</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>`Ali Abu al-Hasan al-Hadhdhah 203, 210, 265</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>`Ali b. Dauwd 276</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>`Ali b. Hasan (al-Agharr) 103, 136-37</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>Ali b. Husayn, i.e., Zayn al-</code>Abidin 172</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>Ali b. al-Ja</code>d al-Faqih 154, 265</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>`Ali b. Rabab b. Shabib 96-97</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>`Ali b. Raytah 74</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>Ali b. </code>Abd Manif 170</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>`Ali b. Zaid 216</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Allahu akbar 144, 147, 218-19, 236</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Amaj 183</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aminah bt. `Ali 38-39</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aminah bt. Khudayar 226</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aminah bt. Wahb b. `Abd Manaf 170</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>Amir b. Abi Mu</code>ammad 93</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>`Amir b. Isma'il al-Musli 218, 275-76</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>al-`Ammi 255-57</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>`Amr b. al-Mutawakkil 211</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>`Amr b. Shaddad 257, 273</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>`Amr b. Ubayd b. Bab 93-94</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>al-Anbar 2, 5, 7-8, 10, 19-21, 24, 27, 149, 254</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Anj 179, 183</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>al-Ansar 152-53, 183, 192, 235</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>Aqil b. Abi </code>Ali b. `Abd al-Muttaalib 176</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Armenia 13, 19, 21, 238, 243, 292</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Asad b. al-Marzuban 202, 232, 234</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
al-Åsbaghl b. Sufyân b. 'Åsim b. 'Abd al-'Azîz b. Marwân 236
al-Åshâ Maymûn b. Qays b. Jandal 280
Ashjâ' b. Rayth, alley of 210
al-Ashtâr 'Abdallâh b. Muhammad b. 'Abdallâh. See 'Abdallâh b. Muhammad b. 'Abdallâh al-Ashtar
'Åsim b. 'Amr, alley of 145
Ashlà' bt. Hasan b. 'Abdallâh b. 'Ubaydallâh b. 'Abd al-Mu'tsâlîb xx, 155, 208, 217
'Aţâ' b. 'Abdallâh b. 'Ata' b. Ya'qûb 225
al-'Aţiqâh 242, 246
al-A'wa$ 105, 108, 192, 194, 237
'Awn b. Abî 'Awîn 135–36
Aws b. Muhalhil al-Qutâ'i 283
Awâs 97
Ayyûb al-Qazza'â 94
Ayyûb b. Salamah al-Makhzûmî 127
Ayyûb b. 'Umar b. Abî 'Amr b. Nu'aym b. Mâhân 90, 97, 110, 157, 179, 189–90, 200, 213, 222, 228
al-Azd 225

B
Bab al-Abwâb 292
Bab al-Karkh 249
Bab Marwân b. al-Åhakâm 120
Bâbak b. Bahrâm b. Bâbak Canal 249
Badr 123, 128, 175–76, 201
Bâdurîyâ 242, 249
Bâhamshà 267, 268
Bâhilah 211, 215, 278
al-Bahtariyyâh 74, 79
Bâkand b. Işbahbadh al-Åsamm 80
Bâkhamrâ 272, 275, 282, 285–87, 288
Bakkâr b. Muslim al-'Uqaylî 14
Bakr b. 'Abdallâh b. 'Åsim 96
Bakr b. Kathîr 272
Balad 50–51
al-Balât 100, 130
Bamakah bt. 'Umar b. Salamah 282
Banâwâri 249
Banû al-'Abbâs 28, 97, 188
Banû 'Abd al-Dâr 182
Banû 'Abd Shams 224
Banû 'Abdallâh b. Mu'ayyî 181
Banû 'Adî b. Ka'b 181
Banû 'Amîr b. Lu'ayy 143, 162
Banû 'Amîr b. Sa'sa'ah 61
Banû al-'Amîm 235
Banû 'Amîr b. 'Awîf 152
Banû 'Aquîl, i.e., 'Aquîl b. Abî Tâlîb 261
Banû Asad 266
Banû Asghâ 114
Banû Bahdalâh b. 'Awîf 273
Banû Bâhz 201
Banû al-Bakkâ 131
Banû Bâkîr 191
Banû Dâbbâh 149
Banû Dârîm 137
Banû al-Dîl 206
Banû Dûbay'a'h 252
Banû Farwah 248
Banû Fazârâh 215
Banû Ghîfâr 200, 208
Banû Hasan. See Hasanîd
Banû Hâshîm 27, 30, 35, 63, 85–87, 101, 162, 168, 171, 175, 184, 235, 277, 280
Banû Hunâ'âh 89
Banû 'Ijl 213, 262
Banû Istrâ'il 113
Banû Jushâm 115
Banû Layth b. Bâkîr 253
Banû Mahûl 102
Banû Murrah b. 'Ubayd 93
Banû Nâ'ilah 181
Banû Numayr 209
Banû Nûtaylah 98, 132
Banû Qunîrûa 248
Banû Râsîb 92, 261
## Index

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Page Numbers</th>
<th>Entry</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>205, 227</td>
<td>Banū Sa'd</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>147-48, 200</td>
<td>Banū Salimah</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>191, 204, 206, 219</td>
<td>Banū Shujā'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>225</td>
<td>Banū Sibā'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>51, 191, 201, 261</td>
<td>Banū Sulaym</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>60</td>
<td>Banū Tamim</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>283</td>
<td>Banū Taymallāh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>208</td>
<td>Banū Tha'labah b. Sa'd</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>148</td>
<td>Banū Yarbū'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>261, 268-69, 271</td>
<td>Banū Yashkur, graveyard of</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>261</td>
<td>Banū Yashkur b. Bakr</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>268</td>
<td>Banū Zuhrah</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>248</td>
<td>Banū Zurārā</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>155, 199, 217, 233</td>
<td>Bāqī' al-Gharqad</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>240</td>
<td>Bārimmā</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>137, 285</td>
<td>Bashīr al-Rahbāl</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>72</td>
<td>Bashshār b. Burd</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>278</td>
<td>Bashshār b. Salm al-'Uqayli</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>183</td>
<td>Basqah Qudayd</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>195</td>
<td>Batḥā' Ibn Azhar</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>227</td>
<td>Baṭṭār al-Kahlah</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>179-80</td>
<td>Baṭṭār al-Idām</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>233, 237</td>
<td>Baṭṭār al-Nakhl</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19</td>
<td>Bayt al-Bayḍā’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>218</td>
<td>Bayt Rümān</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>179</td>
<td>Bīr Maymūn</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>241</td>
<td>Bishr b. Maymūn al-Sharawī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>282</td>
<td>Bishr b. Salm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>231-35</td>
<td>Blacks, i.e., black men</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>81</td>
<td>Byzantine frontier(s)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8, 49</td>
<td>Byzantines</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25, 48, 69, 243-44</td>
<td>Byzantium</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>511</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Caliph al-Amin. See Muḥammad b. Hārūn al-Rashid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>238, 243</td>
<td>China</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Commander of the Faithful. See Abū Ja'far al-Mansūr</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>180</td>
<td>Companions (of the Prophet Muḥammad)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>48, 55</td>
<td>Constantine Copronymous</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>268</td>
<td>Dafīf b. Rāshid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>145, 151</td>
<td>al-Ḍahhāk b. 'Uthmān b. 'Abdallāh b. Khālid b. Ḥizām</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>71</td>
<td>Dahī, pl. duʿāt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>157, 65</td>
<td>n. 303-4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>75</td>
<td>Damascus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>145</td>
<td>Dār 'Ābd al-'Azīz b. Marwān</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>160</td>
<td>Dār 'Abdallāh b. Ja'far</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>146</td>
<td>Dār 'Abdallāh b. Muḥī'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>147</td>
<td>Dār 'Āṭikah bt. Yazid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>146</td>
<td>Dār Banū Azhar</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>130, 147, 150, 177, 189, 206</td>
<td>Dār Ibn Hishām</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>205</td>
<td>Dār Ibn Mas'ūd</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>181</td>
<td>dār al-imārah</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>101, 106, 110-11, 119, 124, 139, 143-45, 151, 178, 184, 204, 232-33</td>
<td>Dār Marwān (b. al-Ḥakam)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>146</td>
<td>Dār Sa'd</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>248</td>
<td>Dār Sa'id al-Khaṭīb</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>218</td>
<td>Dār 'Umar b. 'Abd al-Ṣā'īz</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>147</td>
<td>Dār Uways</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>233</td>
<td>Dār Yazid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>273</td>
<td>Dārābjīrds</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>248</td>
<td>Darb al-Aqfās</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>54</td>
<td>Darb al-Ḥadath</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>248</td>
<td>Darb al-Nūrah</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Dasht Arbuk 259, 272

dawlah 15

Dawmat al-jandal 177

Dāwūd b. Ḥasan b. Ḥasan b. ʿAli 118, 139

Dāwūd b. Jaʿfār b. Sulaymān 283

Dāwūd b. Karrāz 201

Dāwūd b. Sulaymān b. Ḥāṣṣ al-ʿAskari 267

al-Daylam 73, 82–84

Dhū al-Ābar 103

Dhū al-Feqār 210–11

Dhū Ṭuwā 180

Dhubāb 198, 218

dihqān[s] 242, 248–49

Domes of Aws [qibāb Aws] 283

Dujayl River 258–59

Dulṣik 5, 8

Dunbāwand 65, 72

Egypt 6, 23–24, 47, 49 n. 221, 53, 75–76, 81, 83, 119–20, 141, 190, 243, 250, 292

Euphrates 61, 238, 241, 243–44, 246

Euphrates district 80

Exilarch [irāʾ al-jālūt] 113

Gabriel [angel] 63

al-Ghābah 114

al-Ghādir al-Mudhik 108, 194

Ghālib al-Hamadānī 131

al-Ghamr b. Ḥamzah b. Abī Ramlah 181

al-Ghars 222

Ghatafin 192

Ghazwān 267

Ghifār 191

Great Bridge 93

Green Dome [al-qubbah al-khadra] 152

Hābīb b. ʿAbdallāh b. Rughbān 82

Hābīb b. Marzūq 164

Hābīb b. Suwayd al-Asādī 14
Index

Hadya 233
Has b. 'Umar, kātib Ziyād b.
'Usaydallāh 91
Has b. 'Umar Abu 'Umar al-Hawdi 269
Has b. 'Umar b. Has b. 'Umar b. 'Abd al-Rahmān b. 'Abd al-Rahman b. al-Harith 273-74
al-Hājiḍ b. Arṭah 245
al-Hājiḍ b. Qutaybah b. Muslim 280
al-Hājiḍ b. Yūsfūl al-Thaqafi 93, 257-58
Hājīm 133
al-Ḥakam b. 'Abbālāh b. al-Mughirah b. Mawhāb 236
al-Ḥakam b. Abi Ghaylān al-Yashkuri 273-74
al-Ḥakam b. Sadaqaḥ b. Nizar 165
Ḥakim, a man from al-Baṣrah 226-27
Ḥakim b. 'Abb al-Karim 285-86
Hamadān 42-43, 45, 137
Hāmān 167
Ḥammād al-Turk (Turk) 244, 246, 248, 250
Ḥammādah bt. Muʿāwiyyah b. 'Abbālāh xx, 156
Ḥamzah b. 'Abb al-Muṭṭalib 174, 210
Ḥamzah b. 'Abbālāh b. Muḥammad b. 'Ali 218, 224
Ḥamzah b. Mālik b. al-Haytham 212
al-Ḥaramayn 250
Ḥarb, guard of Abū Jaʿfar al-Mansūr 39
Ḥarb b. 'Abbālāh al-Rāwandi 268
Harb b. 'Abbālāh al-Rawandi 268
al-Harsh b. Muḥammad al-Dhuḥli 60
al-Hārith, astrologer 163
al-Hārith b. 'Āmīr b. 'Abb al-Rahmān b. al-Hārith b. al-Hārith b. Hishām 125
al-Hārith b. Ṣaʿīd 252
al-Hārith b. Ḣaṣāq, 94, 99, 102, 104-7, 111, 114, 118, 122, 125, 142-43, 154, 162, 176-77, 185, 187-88, 192-93, 197, 204-6, 210, 217, 231-35, 237, 269, 286, 288
al-Hārith b. Muḥammad b. Abi Usāmah 138
al-Harrāḥ 116, 214
Harrān 6, 9-10, 37
Ḥārūn b. Ḥumayd al-İyādī 273
Ḥārūn al-Rashīd 67 n. 318, 71, 211-12
Ḥārūn b. Saʿd al-'Jili 219, 274-76
al-Ḥasan b. 'Ali b. Abī Ṭalib 168, 171, 173
al-Ḥasan b. 'Ali b. Ḥusayn b. 'Ali b. Abī Ṭalib 189, 201
al-Ḥasan b. 'Ali b. Ḥusayn b. 'Ali b. Ḥusayn b. 'Ali 144
al-Ḥasan b. 'Amr b. Shaddād 257
al-Ḥasan al-Baṣrī 224-25
Ḥasan b. Ḥasan b. Ḥasan b. 'Ali 118, 120, 131, 141
al-Ḥasan b. Ibrāhīm b. 'Abbālāh al-Ḥasan 276
Ḥasan b. Jaʿfar b. Ḥasan b. Ḥasan 118
al-Ḥasan b. Muḥammad b. 'Abbālāh 148
al-Ḥasan b. Qaḥṭab b. Shabīb al-Ṭāʾi 10, 13-14, 16, 19, 21, 55
al-Ḥasan b. Ṣallīb b. Ḥāy y 133
Ḥasanids 91, 96, 107, 117, 120, 122-25, 127, 131, 133-34, 136-37, 139, 142, 221-22
Ḥāshim b. 'Abb Ṭanāf 168, 171
Hashsh Ṭalḥah 146
Ḥātim b. Abī Sulaymān 31
Ḥawshab 98
Hayfā 194
al-Haytham b. 'Adi al-Ṭāʾi 2, 11-12, 240, 247
al-Haytham b. Muʿāwiyyah al-ʿAtkī 63, 75, 81, 83
al-Haytham b. Shuʿbāh 64, 202
Ḥayyāsh b. Ḥabīb 9, 22
Index

Hazārmand 199, 202–3. See also 'Umar b. Hafs
al-Hazīn al-Dīlī 95
Ḥazzāh 51
Ḥijāz 173, 191, 239, 253
al-Himmān 80
Ḥims 75
al-Hind 71, 75, 78, 121, 243
Hind bt. Abū 'Ubaydah b. 'Abdallāh xx, 119, 121, 130
al-Hirah 7, 60
Hishām b. 'Amr al-Taghlibī 15–16
Hishām b. Ibrāhīm b. Hishām b. Rāshid 137, 222
Hishām b. 'Umārah b. al-Walid b. 'Adī al-Khiyār 207
al-Hiyār 253
Hubābah bt. 'Āmir b. 'Abdallāh b. 'Āmir b. Bishr b. 'Āmir Mula'ib al-Asinnah 131
Hudhali. See Abū Bakr al-Hudhali
Hukkākāh 95
Ḥulwān 24, 27–28, 35, 285
Humayd, mawla Muḥammad b. Abī al-'Abbās 213
al-Humayra' 222
 Hunayn 201
 Hunayn b. 'Abdallāh 190
 Huraym 285
 Husayn b. 'Ali b. Husayn b. 'Ali 144, 168, 174
al-Husayn b. Muṣ'ab 235
al-Husayn b. Ṣāḥhr al-Uwaysī 179
al-Husayn b. Thawlā' 272
Husayn b. Yazīd 108, 216
Husaynids 120

I

Ibn 'Abbās, i.e., 'Abdallāh b. al-'Abbās 162

Ibn 'Abd al-'Azīz 237
Ibn Abī al-'Adal. See al-Sāri b. 'Abdallāh
Ibn Abī 'Āsiyah 107
Ibn Abī Farwah 157
Ibn Abī Ḥarb 163, 165
Ibn Abī al-Karrām al-Ja'fārī. See Muḥammad b. 'Abdallāh b. Abī al-Karrām
Ibn Abī Laylā. See Muḥammad b. 'Abd al-Raḥmān b. Abī Laylā
Ibn Abī Mula'yka b. 156
Ibn Abī Musāwir b. 'Abdallāh b. Musāwir 181
Ibn Abī al-Ṣa'bah, baths of 199
Ibn Abī Sufyān al-‘Ammī 255
Ibn Abī Thābit. See 'Abd al-'Azīz b. Imrān
Ibn Abrūd 125
Ibn Aflāh, house of 199
Ibn 'Afwallāh b. Sufyān 261
Ibn 'A'shah. See 'Ubaydallāh b. 'Umar
Ibn Ajlān. See Muhammad b. Ajlān
Ibn al-‘Aṣamm 194
Ibn ‘Ayyūsh 240
Ibn al-Bawwāb. See 'Abdallāh b. Muḥammad b. 'Abdallāh b. Salm
Ibn Dabbāh 108
Ibn Farās 179
Ibn Harmah. See Ibrāhīm b. 'Ali
Ibn Hayyān. See Riyāḥ b. 'Uthmān
Ibn Hubayn, alley of 147
Ibn Hubayrah. See Yazīd b. 'Umar
Ibn Hurmuz. See 'Abdallāh b. Yazīd
Ibn al-Huṣayn. See Muḥammad b. al-Huṣayn
Ibn Ja'ḏah. See Sa'id b. 'Amr
Ibn Jashib al-Lihbī 92
Ibn Jīdh al-Ṭī'ān 251
Ibn Jurayj 182
Ibn Kuḍayr 153–54, 205–9, 218, 220, 226
Ibn Khuzaymah. See Khāzīm
Ibn Mā’īz al-Asadī 267
Ibn Ma’qīl 266
Ibn Marjānah. See 'Ubaydallāh b. Ziyād
Index

Ibn Mu‘awiyah. See `Abdallāh b. Mu‘awiyah
Ibn al-Muqla’ī. See `Abdallāh b. Mu‘āqab
Ibn al-Muqaffa. See `Abdallāh b. Mu‘āqab
Ibn Muslim. See `Uqbah 144, 150–51, 206
Ibn al-Qasri. See Muhammad b. Khālid b. ‘Abdallāh
Ibn Qudayd b. Naṣr 253
Ibn Sa’d. See Muhammad b. Sa’d
Ibn Sallāmah. See Abū Ja’far al-Mansūr
Ibn Sanūṭi. See ‘Amr b. ‘Uthmān
Ibn Sibā‘ 225
Ibn Surāqah al-Azdi 16, 181
Ibn Zamāḥ. See Muhammad b. al-Islām
Ibrāhīm b. ‘Abbās b. Muḥammad 74
Ibrāhīm b. ‘Abdallāh b. ‘Aṭā‘ b. Ya‘qūb 225
Ibrāhīm b. Abī Ishaq al-Absī 192, 198
Ibrāhīm b. Abī Ishaq al-Absī 192, 198
Ibrāhīm b. ‘Arif 42
Ibrāhīm b. Ghāṭafānī. See Ibrāhīm b. Abī Ishaq
Ibrāhīm b. ‘Iṣā b. al-Mansūr 244, 248
Ibrāhīm b. Ja’far b. Muṣ’ab 196
Ibrāhīm b. Khālid 123
Ibrāhīm b. al-Mahdī 80
Ibrāhīm b. Muḥammad b. ‘Abdallāh al-Ja’farī 142–43
Ibrāhīm b. Muḥammad the Prophet 171
Ibrāhīm b. ‘Abbās b. Muḥammad 74
Ibrāhīm b. Abī Ishaq al-Absī 192, 198
Ibrāhīm b. ‘Arif 42
Ibrāhīm b. Ghāṭafānī. See Ibrāhīm b. Abī Ishaq
Ibrāhīm b. ‘Iṣā b. al-Mansūr 244, 248
Ibrāhīm b. Ja’far b. Muṣ’ab 196
Ibrāhīm b. Khālid 123
Ibrāhīm b. al-Mahdī 80
Ibrāhīm b. Muḥammad b. ‘Abdallāh al-Ja’farī 142–43
Index

316

al-Jabal 239, 245, 253
Jabal Juhaynah 200
Jābir b. Anas al-Riyāḥī 191–92
Jābir b. Hammād 268
Jābirat 113
Ja’far b. ‘Abdallāh b. ‘Ata’ b. Ya’qūb 225
Ja’far b. ‘Abdallāh b. Yazīd b. Rūkānāh 67, 148
Ja’far b. Abī Jā’far 66
Ja’far b. Abī Tālib 174
Ja’far b. Ḥanzalah al-Bahrānī 40, 55, 186, 262–63, 291–92
Ja’far Harbor 250
Ja’far b. Hasan b. Ḥasan b. ‘Ali 138
Ja’far b. Ishāq b. ‘Alī b. ‘Abdallāh 224
Ja’far b. Muḥammad b. ‘Alī b. Ḥusayn [Ja’far al-Ṣādiq] 124, 144, 172, 188, 218, 222
Ja’far b. Rabi’ah al-‘Āmirī 280–81
Ja’far al-Ṣādiq. See Ja’far b.
Muḥammad
al-Jāhiliyyah 168, 175
Jahm b. ‘Uthmān 147, 201
Jahwar b. Marrār al-‘Ijli 17, 44–45, 49–50
Jamil, mawla of Muḥammad b. Abī al-‘Abbās 265
al-Jār 222–23
al-Jarbā bt. Qasāmah b. Zuhayr 95
jarīb 291
Jarir 25
Jarjaraya 238
al-Jarrāh b. ‘Umar 132
Jawbar Canal 291
Jawwād b. Ghalīb b. Mūsā 213, 262, 265
Jayhān 55
al-Jazīrah 5, 9, 19, 24, 45–47, 81, 84–85, 238, 243, 250, 268
Jerusalem (Bayt al-Muqaddas) 60–61
Jews 218
al-Jibāl 44, 239, 241
jibāyah 234
Jibra’il b. Yaḥyā al-Khūrāsānī 71
jihād 83
Index

Jilān 73
Jubayr b. ‘Abdallāh b. Ya‘qūb b. ‘Atā’ al-Sulāmī 143
Juhaynah 103, 104, 114, 139, 143, 191, 200, 204, 207
al-Junayd b. Khālid b. Huraym al-Taghlibī 60
Junbūdī 145
al-Jurf 194, 197, 217
Jurz 128
Juwayriyyah b. Asmā’ 123

al-Ka’bah 152
Kalwādī 243
Kardām of Khurāsān 274
Karkhāthā 284
Karzam al-Sadūsī 261, 269
Kāsākas or Kashākash. See Muḥammad b. ‘Ammār Kaskar 31
Kathīr b. Ḥuṣayn al-‘Abdī 186, 199, 217, 231–32
Kathīr b. al-Nāḍr b. Kathīr 255
Kathīr b. al-Ṣalt 229
al-Kaththā 259
Khādiyah bt. Khuwaylid 95, 168
Khaffān 266
Khālid b. Asīd b. Abī al-‘Īs, i.e., Khālid b. Asīd b. Umayyah b. ‘Abd Shams 279
Khālid b. Asīd al-Bāḥilī 285
Khālid b. Ḥassān Abū ‘Aṣākir 102
Khālid b. Kathīr 60
Khālid b. Khidāsh b. ‘Ajlān 268
Khālid b. Nahīk 256
Khālid b. Khayyāt 72
Khāqān b. Zayd 132
Khārījīx 4v, 45–46
Khārījīte. See Mulabbid
Kharnābān 80

Khashram 204
al-Khaṭṭābiyyah 248
Khażārs 292
Khażīm b. Khuzaymah al-Tamīmī 14, 50–52, 64, 66, 70, 72–73, 78–79, 80, 85, 278
Khīdāsh 268
Khītāq 67
Khubayb b. Thābit b. ‘Abdallāh b. al-Zubayr 155
Khufāf b. Manṣūr al-Jurjānī 9, 57
Khufāf al-Marwārūdī. See Khufāf b. Manṣūr al-Khuld 241, 246, 250
Khuraybat al-Brāh 283
Khuzā’ah 42, 183, 225
Kindah 258
Kirmān 253
Kisrā (Anūshirwān or Aparwīz) 249
Kulthūm al-Marrā’ī 88
Kulthum bt. Wābī 155
Kuṣṭāh 59

L

Lubābah bt. ‘Ali b. ‘Abdallāh xx, 54
Lubābah bt. al-Ḥārith b. Ḥazn 95
Lūnān al-Ṭabarī 45

M

Ma’bad b. al-Khalīl al-Muzānī 60
Mabhūt 107
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Index</th>
<th>Page Numbers</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>al-Ma'dā' b. al-Qāsim al-Taghlibi al-Jazari</td>
<td>261, 272, 286</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>al-Ma'dā'īn</td>
<td>24, 27, 32, 35, 239, 254,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>257, 280</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>al-Ma'dā'īnī. See 'Alī b. Muḥammad b. Abī Sayf</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>al-Madḥād 143, 147–48, 150</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Madinat Ibn Hubayrah 237–38, 267</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mafāzah 45</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mā'hān b. Bakht 196, 209</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>al-Mahdi. See Muḥammad al-Mahdi</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>al-Mahdi, i.e., Muḥammad b. 'Abbālāh b. Ḥasan 167</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maḥmūd b. Ma'mar b. Abī al-Shadā'īd al-Fazārī 159, 215</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Makhlād b. Yahyā b. Ḥādir b. al-Muhājir al-Bāḥili 209</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Malaytah 48–49, 54–55, 71</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mālik b. Anas 121–22, 156, 216</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mālik b. al-Haytham al-Khuṣā'ī 10, 22, 28, 35, 41–43, 64, 279</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ma'n b. Zā'idah al-Shaybānī 63, 65–68</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>al-Manṣūr. See Abū Ja'far al-Manṣūr</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manṣūr b. Ja'wanah b. al-Ḥārith</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>al-'Amīrī 61</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manṣūr b. Jumhūr b. Ḥasan b. 'Amr al-Kalbī 274</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manṣūr b. al-Mahdi. See Manṣūr b. Muḥammad</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manṣūr b. Muḥammad b. 'Abbālāh b. Muḥammad b. 'Alī 74, 79</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>maqsūrah 120</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ma'rūf 277</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Marw 59</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Marw al-Rūdh 50, 70</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>al-Marwah 102</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Marwān Gate 148</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Marwān b. Muḥammad, i.e., Marwān II 8, 16, 113, 161–62, 169 n. 823,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>186–87</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Marwānīdīs 86</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Marzūq, mawlā of Abū Ja'far al-Manṣūr 17, 23, 35, 67–68, 72, 79, 157</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>al-Maṣmughān 65, 72–74, 80</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Masruqān Canal 259</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>al-Maṣṣīṣah 71</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mas'ūd al-Rahbāl 203, 210</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>al-Maṣūdī b. 'Abd al-Rahmān b.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'Abbālāh b. 'Utbah b. 'Abbālāh b. Mas'ūd. See 'Abd al-Rahmān</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>al-Maṣūdī</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mas'ūr 237</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mawāt 36</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>al-Mawṣīl 5, 13, 21, 43, 45–46, 50–51, 84, 238, 243, 245, 254, 267–68</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mayān 220</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Medina 5–6, 46, 52–53, 58, 60, 74–75, 81, 85, 88, 91, 94, 100, 102, 104–</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Messenger Ahmad. See Muḥammad (the Prophet)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Messenger of God. See Muḥammad (the Prophet)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mil, pl. amylā 123, 195, 272</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>milḥafah, pl. malābīf 19</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Minā 128</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>minbar xviii, 149, 152, 157, 163, 235</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Minnah bt. Abī al-Minhāl 252</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Miqlās, i.e., Abū Ja'far al-Manṣūr 239–41, 244–45</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mirbad 226</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mishrāh 95</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Miskīn b. 'Amr 135</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Miskīn b. Ḥabīb b. Muḥammad 206</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Miskīn b. Hilāl 179, 182</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Miskīn b. Nāfī 179</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Misma' b. 'Abd al-Malīk. See Abū al-'Askar</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Index

Moses 167
Mosque of the Mawlaš 266
Mu‘ādh b. Mu‘ādh b. Naṣr b. Ḥassān
b. al-Ḥārith al-‘Anbari 270
Mu‘ammār 264
Mu‘aqiq b. Aws b. Himār al-
Bāriqi 291
Abi Tālib 156
Mu‘āwiyah b. Abi Sufyān b. Harb 173
Mu‘āwiyah b. Hishām al-Qaṣṣār al-
Aṣzd 270
al-Mubārakāh 247
Mudallāh (Mudillāh), i.e., ‘Abdallāh
b. al-Ḥasan b. ‘Alī b. Abī Tālib
136, 220
al-Mughirah b. al-Faz‘ 261, 272–
74, 78
Muhājarūn 153, 192
al-Muhārīl b. Ṣafwān 46
Muḥammad (the Prophet), 26–29,
126, 132–133, 143 n. 669, 159,
162–63, 166, 168, 170–72,
175–76, 180, 190–92, 194–95,
199, 201, 208, 210–11, 220–21,
225, 235
Muḥammad, the Bukhārī gate-
keeper 38
Muḥammad b. ‘Abbād b. Ḥabīb al-
Muhallabī 89, 96
Muḥammad b. ‘Abd al-‘Azīz b. ‘Umar
al-Zuhrī 107, 144, 154, 161, 217,
234, 335
Muḥammad b. ‘Abd al-Rahmān b. Abī
Laylā 6
Muḥammad b. ‘Abd al-Rahmān b.
Sulaymān 193
Muḥammad b. ‘Abd al-Wāḥid b.
‘Abdallāh b. Abī Farwah 207
Muḥammad b. ‘Abdallāh b. Abī al-
Karrām al-Ja‘fārī 135–36, 187–88,
194, 215, 217–19, 231, 275, 289
Muḥammad b. ‘Abdallāh b. ‘Amr b.
Ṣa‘īd b. al-‘Āṣ b. Umayyāh 224
Muḥammad b. ‘Abdallāh b. ‘Amr b.
‘Uthmān xvi, 123, 125–29, 137–
28, 134, 135, 139–41
Muḥammad b. ‘Abbād b. ‘Anbāsah
Abū Jabraḥ 179
Muḥammad b. ‘Abdallāh b. ‘Aqīl 199
Muḥammad b. ‘Abdallāh b. Hasan
xv–xix, 85–94, 97, 99–105, 107–11,
113–21, 125, 130, 134–35, 137–
39, 141–43, 145, 147–67, 176–79,
181–226, 228–29, 231–32, 234–35,
246–47, 250–52, 261–63, 269–70,
275–76, 278, 280–81, 286
Muḥammad b. ‘Abdallāh al-‘Uthmānī.
See Muḥammad b. ‘Abdallāh b.
‘Amr b. ‘Uthmān
Muḥammad b. Abī al-‘Abbās
‘Abdallāh b. Muḥammad 187,
199, 201, 213, 265
Muḥammad b. Abī Ḥarb 128, 134–35
Muḥammad b. Abī Ja‘far. See
Muḥammad al-Mahdī
Muḥammad b. ‘Ajlān 190, 216, 224–25
Muḥammad b. ‘Alī b. al-Ḥusayn
(Muḥammad al-Bāqīrī) 172
Muḥammad b. ‘Ammār 236
Nahshal 148
Muḥammad b. al-Asḥāth al-Khuzā‘ī
49, 75, 81, 277
Muḥammad b. ‘Aṭiyyah 192
Muḥammad b. Baṣhīr 165
Muḥammad b. Ḥaṣ al-Dimashqī 263
Muḥammad b. Hārūn al-Rashīd 248
Muḥammad b. al-Ḥasan b. Zabālāh
al-Makhzūmī 116, 122, 124–25,
133, 159, 192, 202, 205, 214, 216,
219, 235
Muḥammad b. Ḥāshim b. al-Barīd 127
Muḥammad b. al-Hudhayl 93
Muḥammad b. al-Ḥusayn al-‘Abdī 2–
3, 258–59, 272–73
Muḥammad b. Ibrāhīm b. Ḥasan b.
Ḥasan 118, 133
Muḥammad b. Ibrāhīm b. Muḥam-
dāb b. ‘Alī b. ‘Abdallāh b.
‘Abbās 71
Muḥammad b. ‘Imrān b. Ibrāhīm b.
Muḥammad b. Tālāh 121–22,
145, 234–36
Muḥammad b. Isḥāq b. Mihrān 288
Muḥammad b. Ismā‘īl b. Ja‘far 86–88, 130, 137, 156, 158, 191, 195, 208, 210
Muḥammad b. Ja‘far b. Ibrāhim 135, 223
Muḥammad b. Khalid al-Murabba‘ī 272
Muḥammad al-Mahdi 69–70, 72–73, 76, 84–85, 98, 220, 222, 228, 249, 277–78
Muḥammad b. Mā‘īn 157
Muḥammad b. al-Mansūr. See Muḥammad al-Mahdi
Muḥammad b. Ma‘rūf b. Suwayd 110, 238, 253, 255, 271, 277
Muḥammad b. Marwān b. Abī Salīḥ 152
Muḥammad b. Mis‘ār b. al-ʿAlā 260
Muḥammad b. Mūsā b. al-Furāt 248–49
Muḥammad b. Sa‘d 138, 185, 187, 204–5, 231, 269, 286, 288
Muḥammad b. Sa‘īd al-Nāfi‘ 199
Muḥammad b. Śalīḥ b. Mu‘āwiya h 179
Muḥammad b. Śalīḥ b. al-Naṭṭāh 244
Muḥammad b. ‘Umar b. ‘Ali 199
Muḥammad b. ‘Urwah b. Hishām b. ‘Urwah 228
Muḥammad b. ‘Uthmān Abū Ḥarmalāh 99
Muḥammad b. Wahb al-Sulami 87
Muḥammad b. Yazīd b. ‘Imrān al-DAQUBI 263–64, 271
Muḥammad b. Zayd 197–98, 204, 217
Muḥārīb b. Naṣr 269
Muḥriz b. Ibrāhim al-Jūbānī 18
Mujālid b. Yazīd b. ‘Imrān al-DAQUBI 264, 271
Mujāshī b. Ḥurayth al-Anṣārī 60
al-Mujashshir b. Muzāḥīm 70
Mukhāriq b. Ghīfār 9
al-Mukharrim 242
Mulabbid b. Ḥarmalāh al-Shaybānī 45–46, 50–52
al-Muqāṭil al-ʿAkkī b. Ḥākim 9–12
al-Murt 226
Mūsā b. ‘Abd al-ʿAzīz b. ‘Umar b. ʿAbd al-Raḥmān b. ‘Awf 90, 100, 109
Mūsā b. Ka‘b 75, 77
Mūsā b. Maymūn 13
Mūsā b. Muḥammad al-Hādī ilā al-Haqq 211
Mūsā b. Sa‘īd b. ʿAbd al-Raḥmān al-Jumāhī 98, 152
Mūsā b. ʿUmar b. Mūsā b. ʿAbdallāh b. Khāzīm 260
Index

Muṣʿab b. 'Uthmān b. Muṣʿab b. 'Urwaḥ b. al-Zubayr 125, 192, 197, 205, 220
al-Musawwar b. 'Abd al-Malik 234, 236
Muslim(s) 72, 149, 230
Muslim al-Khaṣi 264
Muslim b. al-Mughirah 18–19, 21
Muṭṭahhar b. al-Hārith 253–54
Muṭṭahhar b. Juwayriyyah al-Sadūsī 271
Mutawakkil b. Abī al-Fabwāh 207
Muslim b. al-Mughirah 18–19, 21
Mulahhar b. al-Hirīth 253–54
Mutawakkil b. Abī al-Fabwāh 207

N
al-Nadhir b. Yazīd 151–52
al-Naḍr b. Iṣhāq b. 'Abdallāh b. Khāzīm 260
Naḥī b. Iblīs 261
Naḥī b. Thābit b. 'Abdallāh b. al-Zubayr 178
Nahr al- Başriyyīn 283
Nahr Būq 243
al-Nāʿīmah b. Abī al-Shadaʾiđ 215
al-Najaf 132, 218
naqīb, pl. nuqqāb 9 n. 53, 33
n. 157, 38, 70 n. 333, 75 n. 362, 150 n. 714
Naṣīḥīn 12–13
Naṣīr b. Farqād 269
Naṣr b. Qādim 102
Nawfāl b. al-Furāt 75–76, 81, 83
Naybahkt 267, 291
Naysābūr 44, 70

Nayzak 20, 29–30
al-Nīl 254, 275
Nizār 46
al-Nuʿmān Abū al-Sařī 18
Numaylah b. Murrah al-‘Abshāmi 227, 260–61, 272, 276, 282

Old Bridge [al-qanṭarāh al-‘atiqah] 250, 255

P
Patricius 241
Persian 50
Pharaoh 152, 167
Pilgrimage (al-ḥajj) 6, 19–20, 46–47, 52, 57, 60, 75, 81, 83, 85–86, 88, 90–91, 94, 96–97, 99, 121, 123, 128, 139, 253, 292
Prophet Muhammad. See Muhammad (the Prophet)

Q
al-Qadisiyyah 101, 266
al-Qudūm 194
Qaḥtabah b. Shabīb b. Khālid b. Maʿdān al-Ṭāʾī 11, 265
qāmah 247
al-Qaʿqāʾ b. Dirār 65, 267
al-Qaʿqāʾ b. Khulayd al-ʿAbsī 253–54
Qārah 179
Qarīt b. 'Abdallāh b. Abī Bakr b. Kilāb 193
Qarmāsīn 84
qaṣabah 247
al-Qāṣīm b. Muḥammad b. 'Abdallāh b. 'Amr b. 'Uthmān b. ʿAffān 87
al-Qāsim b. Wā'il 202
Qaṣr ibn Hubayrah 134, 252
Qaṣr Naṣif 133
Qaṣr al-Salām 240
Qaṣr Sulaymān 197
al-Qāṣirī. See Muḥammad b. Khālid b. ʿAbdallāh
Qatārī b. al-Fujā'ah 258
qatī'ah and iqṭā' 249–50
Qays b. ʿAyānī n. 235, 108, 129, 191
qiblah 80, 168
Qinnasrin 75, 254
qubbah 236
Qudāmah b. Muḥammad 216
Qudāmah b. Mūsā 120, 237
Qudayd 183
Qūhistān 60
Qūmis 44–45
Qūrān 26, 195, 199; passages cited:
2:154 55; 2:156 4, 103; 3:26 189;
5:33–34 166; 7:128 241; 8:41 23
n. 116; 20:12 180 n. 881; 26:214
170; 26:227 171; 28:1–6 167;
28:56 170; 33:38 289; 33:40 172;
44:47 67; 48:1 149; 79:16 180;
111 178
Qurashi(s). See Quraysh
Qurayyah b. ʿAbd al-Rahmān b. Abī
Bakr al-Ṣiddīqī 96
Quraysh 144, 149, 180–82, 189, 206,
230, 234–37, 250
al-Qutāmī 284
Qutham b. al-ʿAbbās b. ʿUbaydallāh b. ʿAbbās 66, 83
Qutrabbul 242
R
al-Rabadhah 122–25, 127, 129, 131,
139, 142
al-Raʾibī b. Yūnūs Abū Faḍl 35, 65,
98, 101, 127, 162–63, 219, 249–50, 256
Raʾibīḥah b. ʿAbdallāh b. ʿAtāʾ b. Yaʿqūb 225
Rabīʿah b. Mukaddam 251
Rabībūh b. Abī Shākir 206
Radwān 114–15
al-Raʾfiqah 244–45
Raḥīb al-Bīṭriq 241
Raḥbat al-Qaḍāʾ 146–47
Rām Hūmūz 273
Ramaḍān 56, 80
Ramaqah 233
al-Raquqah 11, 61, 238, 244
Rašīd b. Ḥafṣ 151
ratīl, pl. arṭāl 190
Rāwandiyyah xiv, 43, 62–68, 73, 238
Rawḥ b. Ḥātim b. Qaḥṣāh 78–80
Rawḥ b. Thaqaf. See al-ʿAmmī
Rayṣānāh 278–79
Rayṭah b. Abī al-ʿAbbās xx, 85
al-Rayy 29, 44–45, 49, 69–70, 72, 164,
277–78, 290
Riyāh b. Mālik b. ʿUṣayyah b. Khufāf 191
Riyāb b. ʿUthmān b. Ḥayyān al-Murri
xv, xxi, 85, 109–14, 116–23, 128–30,
138–39, 141–46, 150–53, 157,
205–6, 231
Rizām b. Muslim, mawālā of Khālid b.
ʿAbdallāh al-Qasrī 66, 111–12,
151–52, 176–78, 233
al-Ruḥbān 193
Rūm. See Byzantium
al-Rūmiyyah 26, 30
Ruqayyah b. Muḥammad b.
ʿAbdallāh b. ʿAmr 128–29
al-Ruṣāfah (behind al-Kūfah)
238, 264
al-Ruṣāfah of (the Umayyad caliph)
Hishām 13, 17–18
al-Rūyān 73
S
Sābāt 239
ʿAbdallāh b. al-Ḥakam b. Sinān
al-Hakami 147, 156, 158, 192,
201, 225, 229
Index 323

Sa'd b. Abi Waqqas 173
Sa'd b. Mas'ud 204
Šadaqah b. Bakkār 274–75
šadaqât 90
al-Sāfā 102
al-Saffāh. See Abū al-'Abbās al-Saffāh
šahābah 40 n. 176
Sahl b. 'Aqīl b. Ismā'īl 163, 262–63, 265, 270
Sa'id b. 'Amīr 123
Sa'id b. 'Amr b. Jahdah b. Hubayrah
al-Makhzūmī 161–62, 187
Sa'id al-Barbari 13
Sa'id b. Dinār 163
Sa'id b. Huraym 88, 276, 284
Sa'id b. Nashīrah 120
Sa'id b. Nūh b. Mujālid al-Duba'ī 252, 264
Sa'id b. Salm b. Qutaybah 278
Sa'id b. Yahyā Abū Sufyān al-Himyarī 154
śā'ifah, pl. sawā'if 5 n. 24
Ṣal 197, 203, 206–8, 218
Salamah (Maslamah) b. Muḥārib b. Salm b. Ziyād 18
Salamah b. Sa'id b. Jābir 31–32, 80
sālāt 7 n. 39, 26 n. 132
sālāt al-istisqā' 175 n. 863
Sāliḥ, mawlā of Abū Ja'far al-Mansūr 291
Sāliḥ, sāḥib al-muṣallā 73, 97
Sāliḥ b. 'Ali b. 'Abdallāh b. 'Abbās 6, 47, 49, 53–54, 75
Sāliḥ b. al-Haytham 21
Sāliḥ b. Mu'āwiyyah b. 'Abdallāh b. Ja'far 161, 223
Sāliḥ b. Šubayḥ 46
Sāliḥ b. 'Abdallāh b. 'Abbās 38–39
Salm b. Abī Salm 250
Salm b. Abī Wāṣil 274
Salm b. Fārāq 263, 265, 290–91
Salm b. Qutaybah b. Muslim al-Bāhili 164, 277–78, 285, 292
Ṣan'ā' 186
Ṣarāt Canal 238–39, 243–44, 246, 255
al-Sāri b. Yahyā b. Iyās 245
Sāriyah 72
Satan 25, 28
Sawād al-Kūfah 53, 83, 243, 280
sawīq 195
Sawwār b. 'Abdallāh 53, 58, 75, 81, 83, 141
Saybah 182
al-Sayyālah 91
Seal of the Prophets. See Muḥammad (the Prophet)
al-Sha'bānī, 107, 136
Shabīb b. Wāj al-Marwārdī 33–34, 37, 39
al-Shāḥ Jurd River 259
Shahrazūr 42
Shaklah 80
Sharāf 266
Sharafāniyyah 248
sharīf 208
Shaybah b. Rabi'ah 176
shi'ah 4, 69, 89, 102–3, 141
Shu'ayb al-Sammān 267
Shu'āb 103
al-Shuqrah 106, 108
shūrā 173 nn. 846–47
shūrāh 9 n. 49, 65 n. 305, 70 n. 333, 75 n. 362
Sinān b. Mukhayyās Abū Hurāsah al-Qushayrī 278
al-Sīnd 77–78, 89, 94, 252–53, 278
al-Sīndi, mawlā of Abū Ja'far al-Mansūr 89–90, 96
Spain 55
Ṣufayyāh 3
Sufyān b. Ḥayyān b. Mūsā. See al-'Ammi
Sufyān b. Mu'āwiyyah 56, 58, 75, 81, 83, 141, 162, 257, 262, 264, 268–72
Sulaym 191
Sulaymān b. 'Abd al-Malik 194
Index

Sulaymān b. ‘Abdallāh b. Abi Sabrah 143, 235
Sulaymān b. ‘Abdallāh b. Hasan 223
Sulaymān b. Abī Shaykh (or Shāh) 273-76, 284
Sulaymān b. Fulayh b. Sulaymān 233
Sulaymān b. Kathir al-Khuza‘ī 38
Sulaymān b. Muḥammad al-Sāri 92
Sulaymān b. Mu‘ājīlīd 238-41, 245-46, 265, 290
Sunbādī 44-46, 49, 73
Sunnah 195, 199
Sūq al-Baqar (Cattle Market) 246
Surāqah 181
ṣutrah 59
Suwayqah 221-22
Syria 5, 9, 13-14, 21, 23, 52, 61, 67, 118, 158, 162, 164, 174, 176-78, 194, 238, 243, 245, 253, 258, 263
Syrian Gate 248

T

Ṭabaq Canal 249
Ṭabaristān xx, 45, 72-74, 80
al-Ṭā‘īf 53, 58, 74-75, 81, 83, 181
Ṭalhah b. Ishqāq b. Muḥammad b. al-Asba‘ath 7
Ṭalhah b. ‘Ubaydallāh 173, 196
Ṭalib b. Abi Ṭalīb b. ‘Abd al-Muṭṭalib 176
Tall Muḥammad 9
Tamarrā Canal 243
Tamīm 200
tanāsukh al-arwāh 62 n. 285
tannūr 197
al-Ṭāq 73
Ṭaraf al-Madinah 106, 108
Ṭasnim b. al-Hawārī 164
Ṭaym 282
Ṭaymā‘ 177

Trayyī 95, 232, 234, 262
Thaniyyat al-Wadā‘ 146, 155, 197, 199-200, 204-6, 208, 218
Tigris 36, 51, 238-39, 241, 243-44, 246, 250, 257
al-Ṭu‘afāwah 261
al-Ṭuhawī 261, 274, 282
Turākhudā 9
Turks 69, 292
Ṭūs 211

U

‘Ubaydallāh b. ‘Amr b. Abi Dhu‘ayb 143
‘Ubaydallāh b. Marwān b. Muḥammad 162
‘Ubaydallāh b. Muḥammad b. Haš al-Taymi 94, 137, 252, 257
‘Ubaydallāh b. Muḥammad b. Šafwān al-Jumahi 188, 217
‘Ubaydallāh b. Umar b. Haš b. ‘Āsim 225
‘Ubaydallāh b. Yaḥyā b. Ḫudayn al-Raṣāṣhī 261, 271
‘Ubaydallāh b. Ziyād b. Abi Sufyān 174
al-Ubullah 80
al-‘Udhayb 266
Umar. See Umar b. Shabbah
Umar, shaykh al-Anṣār 200
Umar b. ‘Abd al-Ghaffār b. ‘Amr al-Fuqaymi 274
Umar b. ‘Abdallāh al-Judhāmi 112
Umar b. ‘Ālā‘ 72-73
Umar b. ‘Amīr al-Sulāmī 47
Umar b. Haš b. Abi Sufrāh al-‘Atākī 78, 89, 252, 263, 268
Umar b. Idrīs 255
Umar b. al-Khaṭṭāb 175, 203
Umar b. Māḥān 278
Umar b. Muḥammad b. Umar b. ‘Ali 120, 189, 199
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Pages</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Umar b. Râshid</td>
<td>150, 179, 183, 232-33, 235, 237</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Umar b. Salamah al-Hujaymi</td>
<td>260, 281</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>Uthman b. </code>Abdallâh b. `Abd al-Rahmân al-Azdi</td>
<td>11-12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>Uthman b. al-Mundhir b. Muş</code>ab b. `Urwa b. al-Zubayr</td>
<td>208</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>`Uthman b. Nahîk</td>
<td>33-34, 36-37, 39, 63-64</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>Uthman b. Sa</code>îd b. Nâfî`</td>
<td>199</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>Uthman b. </code>Umârah b. `Hûraym</td>
<td>251</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>`Uthman b. Zayd</td>
<td>233</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>al-<code>Uthmâni. See Muḥammad b. </code>Abdallâh b. <code>Amr b. </code>Uthman</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Uways b. Abî Sarî</td>
<td>162, 179</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>Uyaynah b. Müsâ b. Ka</code>b</td>
<td>75, 77-78</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**W**

Wâdi al-Qûrâ | 186 |
Wâdi al-Sibâ' | 266 |
al-Walîd b. Hîshâm b. Qâdhîm or al-Qâdhîmî | 3, 8, 95, 127, 134 |
al-Walîd b. Yazîd (al-Walîd II) | 110-11 |
Wandâhurmuz b. al-Fârkhân | 45 |
al-Wâqîdî. See Muḥammad b. `Umar al-Wâqîdî |
Wâqisah | 266 |
al-Wardâniyyah | 248 |
waṣî | 167 |
Wâṣî | 84, 218, 243, 245, 254, 273-76, 280, 282 |
Wâthiq | 180, 233, 235, 237 |
wilãyâh | 167, 171-72 |

**Y**

Yadi` | 183 |
Yahyâ b. `Amr al-Ḥumâni | 261 |
Yahyâ b. Budayl b. Yahyâ b. Budayl | 262 |
Yahyâ b. Khâlid b. Barmak | 88 |
Yahyâ b. Maymûn | 266 |
Yahyâ b. Muslim b. `Urwa b. Barmak | 19 |
Yahyâ b. Shukr | 286 |
Yahyâ b. Zayd b. `Alî | 174 |
Yahyâ b. Ziyâd b. Ḥassûn al-Nabâṭî | 253, 257 |
al-Yamâmah | 83 |
Yanbu` | 114, 219 |
Yaqtîn b. Müsâ al-Abzârî | 23-24 |
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Index</th>
<th>Page(s)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Ya<code>qūb b. ‘Abdallāh b. ‘Aṭā’ b. Ya</code>qūb</td>
<td>225</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ya`qūb b. Dāwūd</td>
<td>228</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ya`qūb b. al-Faḍl b. ‘Abd al-Rahmān b. ‘Abdāb</td>
<td>273</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ya`qūb b. al-Qāsim b. Muḥammad</td>
<td>120, 131, 150, 155, 181, 186, 213</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ya`qūb b. Sulaymān</td>
<td>248</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ya`qul</td>
<td>233, 235, 237</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yazīd b. Ḥātim al-Muhallabī</td>
<td>45, 83, 141, 268, 292</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yazīd b. ʿImrān</td>
<td>264</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yazīd b. ʿUmar b. Hubayrah al-Fazārī</td>
<td>67, 169</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yazīd b. Usayd al-Sulami</td>
<td>20, 37, 109</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yazīd b. Yazīd b. ʿImrān al-Ḍuḥaʿi</td>
<td>271</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yazīd b. Ziyād Abū Ghassān</td>
<td>5, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yemen</td>
<td>68, 71, 158, 253</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yūnus al-Jarmī</td>
<td>281</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yūnus b. Najḍah</td>
<td>261, 264</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yūsuf b. Qutaybah b. Muslim</td>
<td>27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Z</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zāb</td>
<td>24, 161, 243</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>al-Zaʿfarānī</td>
<td>93</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>